



NGŨ PHÁP
TIẾNG ANH

NGŨ PHÁP CHUYÊN SÂU BỒI DƯỠNG HỌC SINH GIỎI

SACHHOC.COM



SACHHOC.COM

**NGŨ PHÁP CHUYÊN SÂU
BỒI DƯỠNG HỌC SINH GIỎI
MÔN TIẾNG ANH**

LỜI NÓI ĐẦU

Tài liệu không trình bày lại kiến thức cơ bản mà tập trung vào việc nêu lên các phần kiến thức nâng cao và BT ứng dụng liên quan tới 20 chuyên đề chính, tập trung nhiều vào các vấn đề hay và khó thường gặp trong các đề thi. Các câu hỏi hay và khó đều có đáp án, giải thích chi tiết và đặc biệt là có ghi chú nguồn gốc của tài liệu tham khảo của mỗi câu ở phần đáp án.

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 1: Modal Verbs

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 2: Reducing a clause

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 3: Passive Voice

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 4: Subjunctives and Unreal Tenses

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 5: Clauses of Concession and Reason

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 6: Tenses

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 7: Conditions

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 8: Comparisons

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 9: Styles

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 10: Noun Clauses

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 11 : V.ing/ Infinitives

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 12: Paired Conjunctions

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 13: Relative Clauses

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 14: Inversions

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 15: So ... that/ Such ... that

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 16: Cleft Sentences

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 17: Phrasal Verbs

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 18: Idioms

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 19: Reported Speech

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 20: Others

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 1: MODAL VERBS

I. Some Common Modal Verbs

1. Must/ Have to

- **Must:** phải => diễn tả sự cần thiết, bắt buộc (mang tính cá nhân); chắc hẳn => diễn tả sự suy luận logic ở ht

E.g. - She's a really nice person. You must meet her. (= I say this is necessary)

Cô ấy là một người thật sự tốt. Anh phải gặp cô ấy. (= tôi nói điều đó là cần thiết)

- I haven't phoned Ann for ages. I must phone her tonight.

Đã lâu rồi tôi không gọi điện thoại cho Ann. Tôi phải gọi cho cô ấy tối nay.

- You must be worried that she is so late coming home.

Chắc hẳn bạn phải lo lắng lắm vì cô ấy về nhà trễ thế này.

- The grass is wet. It must be raining.

- You must be hungry. You haven't eaten anything all day.

(Opposite: - You can't be hungry. You've just eaten.)

- **Have to:** phải => diễn tả sự bắt buộc không mang tính chất cá nhân, thường nói về quy định, luật lệ, hoàn cảnh khách quan. *Have to* không phải là trợ động từ nhưng có nghĩa giống như trợ động từ *Must*.

E.g. - You can't turn right here. You have to turn left. (because of the traffic system)

Anh không thể rẽ phải ở đây. Anh phải rẽ trái. (do luật giao thông)

- My eye sight isn't very good. I have to wear glasses for reading.

Thị lực của tôi không được tốt. Tôi phải đeo kính để đọc sách. (do hoàn cảnh thực tế)

- George can't come out with us this evening. He has to work.

George không thể đi với chúng ta tối nay. Anh ấy phải làm việc.

- *Mustn't* và *don't have to* là hoàn toàn khác nhau.

+ **Mustn't do St:** không được (phép) làm gì

E.g. - You must keep it a secret. You mustn't tell anyone. (=don't tell anyone)

Bạn phải giữ điều đó bí mật nhé. Bạn không được nói với bất cứ ai.

+ **Don't have to do St:** không cần thiết phải làm điều đó (nhưng có thể làm nếu bạn muốn).

E.g. - You can tell me if you want but you don't have to tell me (= you don't need to tell me)

Bạn có thể kể với tôi nếu bạn muốn nhưng bạn không bắt buộc phải nói với tôi. (= bạn không cần phải nói với tôi)

I'm not working tomorrow, so I don't have to get up early.

Sáng mai tôi không làm việc, vì vậy tôi không phải dậy sớm.

2. Need (cần)

- Need: được sử dụng như một động từ thường

+ **Need to do St:** nếu chủ ngữ là một vật thể sống => cần phải ...

E.g. - He will need to drive home alone tonight.

- John needs to paint his house.

+ **Need doing St/ Need to be done:** nếu chủ ngữ không phải là vật thể sống
(= Want/Require + V.ing => nhưng ít dùng)

E.g. - The grass needs cutting. (= The grass needs to be cut.)
- The television needs repairing. (The television needs to be repaired.)
- Your essays need rewriting. (Your essays need to be rewritten.)
- Need: được sử dụng như một trợ động từ trong thể phủ định, nghi vấn ở thời hiện tại (không có s ở ngôi 3 số ít)

E.g. - We needn't reserve seats – There will be plenty of rooms.

- **Needn't** là hình thức phủ định của Must (vì Mustn't có nghĩa là không được phép)

E.g. You needn't apply for a visa to visit France if you hold a EU passport, but if you are not an EU citizen, you mustn't unless you have a visa.

3. Can: Có thể => chỉ khả năng của con người, gợi ý, ...

E.g. - I can swim.

- Can I help you?

4. Could: Có thể (chỉ khả năng của con người trong quá khứ, hỏi đường, yêu cầu lịch sự ...)

E.g. - When I was young, I could swim very well.

- Could you tell me the way to the nearest post office, please?

- Could you close the windows, please?

5. May: Có thể => chỉ khả năng của sự việc, xin phép, cho phép, ...

E.g. - May I go out?

- China may become a major economic power.

(TQ có thể trở thành một cường quốc về kinh tế.)

6. Might: Có thể => chỉ khả năng của sự việc, ...

E.g. - We had better phone tomorrow, they might be eating their dinner now.

7. Should/Ought to/ Had better/ Be(ht) supposed to: nên => chỉ sự khuyên bảo ...

E.g. - I think we should check everything again.

*. Should: ngoài ra should còn dùng để diễn tả điều gì đó ở hiện tại không như mong đợi.

E.g. - The price on this packet is wrong. It says 65 cents but It should be 50.

(giá ghi trên gói hàng này không đúng Nó ghi 65 xu nhưng đáng lẽ chỉ là 50 xu thôi).

- The train should be here now. (Đáng lẽ giờ này tàu phải đến đây rồi.)

*. If... should: nếu mà ... => ít chắc chắn

E.g. - If you should see Tom this evening, can you tell him to phone me?

(Nếu tối nay gặp bạn Tom, bạn có thể bảo anh ta gọi điện thoại cho tôi được không?).

Câu này cũng tương tự như câu "If you see Tom "(Nếu bạn gặp Tom) (không có should). Với should người nói ít chắc chắn (less certain) hơn:

- If it should rain, can you bring in the washing from the garden?

(Nếu trời mưa, đem đồ đang phơi ngoài vườn vào nhé?)

8. May as well/Might as well: Thôi thì ...: Diễn tả một việc gì đó nên làm vì không còn gì khác tốt hơn thế

E.g. - You'll have to wait an hour for the next bus, so you might as well walk.

(Bạn phải đợi một tiếng mới có chuyến xe buýt kế tiếp, thôi thì bạn đi bộ cho rồi).

- We may as well go to the party. We're nothing else to do.

(Thôi thì chúng ta đi dự tiệc vậy. Chúng ta không còn việc gì khác để làm cả).

- "Shall we have dinner now?" "We might as well".

(Chúng ta sẽ ăn tối bây giờ chứ? "Cũng được thôi")

9. Would like: muốn => diễn tả lời mời hoặc mong muốn

- E.g. - Would you like to dance with me?
- I would like to visit Thailand.

II. Modal Verbs in the Past

1. Must have + V(p2): chắc chắn là đã, chắc hẳn là đã, chắc chắn phải => suy luận về quá khứ mà người nói biết chắc chắn 100%.

- E.g. - It must have rained heavily last night. Everything is wet.
- Hoa should have arrived by now, she must have missed the bus.
- Jane did very well on the exam. She must have studied hard.
- I didn't hear you knock, I must have been gardening behind the house.

2. Should(n't)/Ought(n't) to + have + V(p2): Lẽ ra (không) nên => Diễn tả điều gì đó nên làm trong qk nhưng đã không làm => thường thể hiện sự nuối tiếc, ân hận của người nói

- E.g. - He failed his exams. He should have studied harder.
- You oughtn't have bought a second-hand car. It cost you a lot of money to have it repaired.

3. Can't + have + V(p2): Chắc chắn không thể ... => Diễn tả điều gì đó không thể xảy ra vì người nói biết chắc chắn.

- E.g. - It can't have been John you saw yesterday. He came to Paris last week.

4. Couldn't + have + V(p2): Lẽ ra có/không thể ... => Diễn tả khả năng của sự việc trong quá khứ nhưng không thực hiện được, hoặc sự việc có thể đã xảy ra trong qk nhưng người nói không chắc chắn lắm.

- E.g. - David could have won the race if he had tried. (Lẽ ra David có thể thắng cuộc ...)
- It could have been Sue, I suppose. (Đó có thể là Sue, tôi nghĩ thế => không chắc chắn)
- Why did you stay at a hotel when you went to New York? You could have stayed with Barbara. (= you had the opportunity to stay with her but you didn't)

(Tại sao bạn lại ở khách sạn khi bạn đến New York? Bạn có thể ở với Barbara cơ mà. (=bạn đã có cơ hội ở với cô ấy nhưng bạn không thực hiện)

- Jack fell off a ladder yesterday but he's all right. He's lucky - he could have hurt himself badly. (but he didn't hurt himself)

(Ngày hôm qua Jack đã ngã xuống từ một cái thang nhưng anh ấy không hề gì. Anh ấy thật may mắn - anh ấy lẽ ra đã bị thương rất nặng. (nhưng anh ấy đã không bị thương gì hết)

- The situation was bad but it could have been worse. Tình hình là xấu nhưng nó đã có thể tồi tệ hơn nhiều.

- The cause of death could have been bacteria.

5. May/Might + have + V(p2): Có thể đã ...: Diễn tả khả năng của sự việc trong quá khứ nhưng không chắc chắn lắm.

- E.g. - It may have rained last night, but I'm not sure.
- I didn't hear the telephone ring, I might have been sleeping at that time. (*compare past continuous*)

- Ben might have gone to the movies yesterday.

6. Needn't + have + V(p2): lẽ ra không cần ... => Diễn tả điều gì đó không cần phải làm trong quá khứ nhưng đã làm vì không biết trước. Bây giờ mới biết là điều đó không cần thiết.

E.g. - It didn't rain. He needn't have brought the umbrella. (He brought it. He didn't know whether it rained or not.)

*. **Needn't have done St** (lẽ ra không cần phải: vì không biết trước nên đã thực hiện) and **Didn't need to do St** (không cần thiết phải: biết trước sự việc ngay từ đầu và đã không thực hiện...)

E.g. - I didn't get up early, so I didn't.

PRACITCE ON MODAL VERBS IN THE PRESENT

1. I advise you to put your money in the bank.

=> You'd _____

2. Excuse me! I'd like some information about the English summer course, please.

=> Could you _____

3. John offered to carry Jane's case for her.

=> "Would you like _____"

4. The motor in this machine needs cleaning once a week. (**has**)

=> The motor in this machine _____ once a week.

5. I'd like to invite you to lunch.

=> Will you _____ ?

6. It's possible Louise is waiting for us at the airport.

=> Louise may _____

7. It is not necessary for anyone to know who paid the ransom to the kidnappers.

=> No one need _____

8. It may be necessary for us to cancel our holiday because my mother is ill.

=> We may _____

9. He is very likely to come. (**probability**)

=> _____

10. It'd be a good idea for you to come with us next Sunday. **ought**

=> Next Sunday _____ with us.

11. Photography is not allowed in the museums. **photographs**

=> You _____ in the museum.

12. There's no need for you to do any work if you don't feel like it. **have**

=> If you don't feel like it _____ do any work.

13. It isn't always necessary to be a member of the club. **need**

=> You _____ be a member of the club.

14. She was not certain about the trip. **decide**

=> She _____ about the trip.

15. A heavy shower prevented them from finishing their game of tennis.

=> They were _____

16. He couldn't swim until he was in his twenties. **ABLE**

=> He _____ until he was in his twenties.

17. Perhaps he's working late. **may**

=> He *may be working* late.

18. Mother told Tom that he had to go to bed early. **must**

=> 'You to _____ bed early,' Mother told Tom.

19. They will expect you to wear a suit for the interview. **HAVE**

=> You _____ a suit for the interview.

20. I'd see a doctor if I were you. **OUGHT**

=> You _____ a doctor.

21. Could you speak English when you were younger? **ABLE**

=> When you were younger, _____ speak English?

22. I think it's time the children went to bed now. **HAD**

=> I think the children _____ to bed now.

23. I am sure Maria finds reading interesting because she has lots of books. **MUST**
=> Maria _____ reading because she has lots of books.
24. Do you happen to know the time of the next train to London? **COULD**
=> I wonder _____ me the time of the next train to London?
25. I think Roman needs to see a doctor. His cough is terrible. **ought**
=> With that terrible cough, Roman _____ a doctor.
26. "Why don't you take a day off?" asked Magda. **should**
=> Magda suggested _____ a day off.
27. George knew how to ride a bicycle when he was five.
=> George was _____
28. I wanted to go to the party, but it was snowing hard.
=> I couldn't _____
(Note: *If it hadn't been snowing hard, I could have gone to the party.*)
29. If I were you, I wouldn't tell anybody about the discovery.
=> You had _____
30. Jerry had terrible problems with solving the riddle. (**hardly**)
=> Jerry could _____
31. Isn't it high time you greased the hinges? (**need**)
=> _____
32. You should take an umbrella with you. **BETTER**
=> You _____ an umbrella with you.
33. It's forbidden to take pictures. (**not**)
=> You _____ pictures.
34. It isn't necessary to feed the cats. I've already fed them. (**have**)
=> You _____ the cats.
35. It's prohibited to take pets into the museum. (**not**)
=> You _____ into the museum.
36. It isn't necessary to change the sheets. I'll do it tomorrow. (**need**)
=> You _____ the sheets.
37. Students aren't allowed to leave the dormitory after 11 p.m. (**not**)
=> Students _____ after 11 p.m.
38. Kindergarden students needn't wear school uniforms. (**have**)
=> Kindergarden students _____ school uniforms.

PRACTICE ON MODAL VERBS IN THE PAST

1. I'm sure it was Tom who cleared everything up.
=> Tom must _____
2. I'm sure he didn't know that his brother was seriously ill.

=> He couldn't possibly _____

3. It was careless of you to leave the windows open last night.

=> You should not _____

4. I'm sure she didn't do it on purpose.

=> She can't _____

5. Diane was supposed to write to her parents last week. (**ought**)

=> Diane _____

6. Maybe Mathew forgot all about it.

=> Mathew might _____

7. I had the chance to do a parachute jump, but I was too scared.

=> I could _____

8. I'm absolutely sure that they weren't playing in this weather.

=> They can't _____

9. It wasn't necessary for you to go to so much trouble on my behalf.

=> You needn't _____

10. Jean's boss was extremely kind to her.

=> Jean's boss couldn't _____

11. Our worrying so much was a waste of time.

=> We needn't _____

12. It is just not possible for the cat to have opened the fridge!

=> The cat _____

13. It would have been possible for Helen to give us a lift.

=> Helen _____

14. School uniform wasn't compulsory at my school.

=> We _____

15. His efforts to find a solution didn't deserve such savage criticism.

=> He shouldn't _____

16. Perhaps I didn't get a better job because I didn't study hard enough.

=> I might _____

17. Martin needn't have paid for all our tickets.

=> It _____

18. It's impossible for them to have found him in that jungle.

=> He _____

19. It was wrong of you to scare your mother like that.

=> You oughtn't _____

20. I'm afraid there may be something missing from your report. (**OVERLOOKED**)

=> _____

21. I think it was a mistake to lend your car to Joe. (**SHOULD**)

=> I don't think _____ your car to Joe.

22. It was impossible to predict all the problems that we faced when we built our own house. (**PREDICTED**)

=> Nobody could _____ face so many problems when we built our own house.

23. You couldn't have seen Mary in the park.

- => It _____
24. He must have spent a small fortune renovating that told house.
=> It must _____
25. It's possible that the building was burgled after midnight. **may**
=> The building _____ after midnight.
26. It wasn't necessary to meet me at the airport yesterday. **needn't**
=> You _____ me at the airport yesterday.
27. It was unkind of you to talk to her like that. **not**
=> You _____ to her like that.
28. Perhaps he hasn't received the doctor's results yet. **may**
=> He _____ the doctor's results yet.
29. It is likely that they have already left. **may**
=> They _____ left.
30. I'm sure he took the cheque-book with him. **must**
=> He _____ the cheque-book with him.
31. It's possible that she didn't understand what I had said. **might**
=> She _____ what I had said.
32. She is certain to have heard about it on the news. **must**
=> She _____ about it on the news.
33. You can't vote unless you are over eighteen. **must**
=> You _____ to vote.
34. I doubt very much that you saw Carla at the party as she's in Scotland at the moment. **can't**
=> You _____ Carla at the party as she's in Scotland at the moment.
35. It was wrong of you to steal those apples from Mrs Brown's garden. **should**
=> You _____ those apples from Mrs Brown's garden.
36. The thief ran right past you so I'm sure you saw his face. **Must**
=> The thief ran right past you so _____ his face.
37. It's possible that they didn't get the message in time. **might**
=> They _____ the message in time.
38. I went to the office then remembered it was my day off. **HAVE**
=> I _____ to the office as it was my day off.
39. Perhaps we missed the correct turning. **MIGHT**
=> We _____ the correct turning.
40. We got a table at the restaurant without a reservation. **NEED**
=> We _____ book a table at the restaurant.
41. You were expected to answer all the questions on the exam paper. **ANSWERED**
=> You _____ all the questions on the examination paper.
42. I'm sure it was Ana I saw in town as I recognised her coat. **MUST**
=> It _____ Ana I saw in town as I recognised her coat.
43. I positively know they haven't accepted the raise.
=> They can't _____
44. Maybe John has not remembered about tonight's party. **COULD**
=> I suppose John _____ about tonight's party.

45. We booked seats but it was not necessary because there was plenty of room. **BOOKED**
=> We _____ seats because there was plenty of room.
46. Marcin didn't come to the meeting yesterday. Perhaps he was ill. **might**
=> Marcin _____ yesterday.
47. I took a jumper but it wasn't necessary. **taken**
=> I _____ a jumper.
48. I'm sure he was at home last night. **must**
=> He _____ at home last night.
49. Maurice didn't come to the meeting yesterday. Perhaps he was ill. **might**
=> Maurice _____ yesterday.
50. I took a sweater but it wasn't necessary. **taken**
=> I _____ a sweater.

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 2: CÁC VẤN ĐỀ RÚT GỌN MỆNH ĐỀ

PHẦN A - CÁC DẠNG RÚT GỌN MỆNH ĐỀ

A - RÚT GỌN MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ

Mệnh đề quan hệ có thể được rút gọn thành 6 dạng: Hiện tại phân từ (Present Participle), Quá khứ phân từ (Past Participle), Động từ nguyên thể (To Infinitive), Cụm đồng cách danh từ (Noun Phrase), Cụm giới từ (Preposition Phrase), và Tính từ ghép (Compound Adjective).

1. Rút gọn mệnh đề quan hệ dưới dạng phân từ hiện tại (Present Participle - V.ing)

Khi động từ (V) trong mệnh đề quan hệ ở thể chủ động, ta rút gọn bằng cách bỏ bỏ đại từ quan hệ và chuyển chuyển động từ về dạng V.ing.

Ví dụ: - You should take care of the things *which belong to you*.

=> You should take care of the things *belonging to you*.

- The fans *who want to meet their idol* are waiting at the station.

=> The fans *wanting to meet their idol* are waiting at the station.

Nếu động từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ ở thì tiếp diễn thì bỏ đại từ quan hệ và động từ To be, giữ nguyên V.ing.

Ví dụ: - The man *who is giving a speech on the stage* is our new teacher.

=> The man *giving a speech on the stage* is our new teacher.

- The doctors *who are working in this hospital* are from England.

=> The doctors *working in this hospital* are from England.

2. Rút gọn mệnh đề quan hệ thành cụm quá khứ phân từ (Past Participle - thường được viết dưới dạng: V3/Vp2/Vpp/V.ed)

Khi động từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ ở dạng bị động, ta rút gọn bằng cách bỏ đại từ quan hệ và động từ "To be", giữ lại quá khứ phân từ.

Ví dụ: - The picture *which was stolen* last month has just been found.

=> The picture *stolen* last month has just been found.

- The boy *who was punished* by his father cried bitterly.

=> The boy *punished* by his father cried bitterly.

3. Rút gọn mệnh đề quan hệ thành cụm động từ nguyên thể (To Infinitive)

Ta thường sử dụng động từ nguyên thể **to infinitive** để rút gọn một mệnh đề quan hệ khi chúng đứng sau cụm danh từ có số thứ tự, hình thức so sánh hơn nhất, hoặc khi mệnh đề quan hệ đó được dùng để chỉ mục đích, nghĩa vụ dù cho động từ ở mệnh đề ở dạng chủ động hay bị động.

a. Rút gọn về dạng động từ nguyên thể "To Infinitive"

Ta rút gọn mệnh đề quan hệ về dạng To Infinitive khi trước nó là cụm danh từ bắt đầu bằng số thứ tự, hay hình thức so sánh hơn nhất của tính từ

Ví dụ: - Tom was *the last men that left* the party.

=> Tom was *the last men to leave* the party.

- Minh was *the most intelligent person that could answer* the question.

=> Minh was *the most intelligent person to answer* the question.

Ta rút gọn mệnh đề quan hệ về dạng To Infinitive khi mệnh đề quan hệ theo sau chỉ mục đích, nghĩa vụ - thường có các động từ want, need, và các động từ khuyết thiếu khác như *can, could, have to, must, should, ...*

Ví dụ: - He bought some books *which he could read* during his vacation.

=> He bought some books *to read* during his vacation.

- I have many homework *that I must do*.

=> I have many homework *to do*.

*. GHI NHỚ:

Khi rút gọn mệnh đề về dạng To Infinitive này có hai điểm cần nhớ sau đây:

(1) - Nếu chủ từ hai mệnh đề khác nhau thì thêm cụm "**for somebody**" trước To Infinitive.

Ví dụ: - We have some picture books *that the children can read*.

=> We have some picture books *for the children to read*.

Tuy nhiên nếu chủ từ đó là các từ có nghĩa chung chung như everyone, people, ... thì có thể bỏ đi

Ví dụ: - Studying abroad is the wonderful thing that they must think about.

=> Studying abroad is the wonderful thing *to think about*.

Nếu trước đại từ quan hệ có giới từ thì phải đưa về cuối câu.

(*đây là lỗi dễ sai nhất khi làm bài*).

Ví dụ: - We have a peg **on which** we can hang our coat.

=> We have a peg *to hang our coat on*.

- He wants to buy a big garden **in which** his children can play.

=> He wants to buy a big garden *for his children to play in*

b. Rút gọn về dạng nguyên thể bị động “To Be + V.p2”

Ta rút gọn mệnh đề quan hệ về dạng To Be + V.p2 khi trước nó là cụm danh từ bắt đầu bằng số thứ tự, hình thức so sánh hơn nhất của tính từ và động từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ ở dạng bị động.

Ví dụ: - That was *the fifth man who was killed* in this month.

=> That was *the fifth man to be killed* in this month

- There are six letters *which have to be written* today.

=> There are six letters *to be written* today.

4. Rút gọn mệnh đề quan hệ bằng cách sử dụng cụm đồng cách danh từ

Ta có thể rút gọn mệnh đề quan hệ về dạng cụm đồng cách danh từ khi mệnh đề quan hệ có cấu trúc sau đây:

... N + Who/That/Which + V + N/N.P ... (trong đó: N - danh từ; N.P - cụm danh từ)

Ví dụ:

- Bangkok, *which is the capital of Thailand*, is very beautiful.

=> Bangkok, *the capital of Thailand*, is very beautiful.

- My uncle, *who is an engineer*, lives in Hochiminh city.

=> My uncle, *an engineer*, lives in HCM city.

- Football, *which is a popular sport*, is very good for health.

=> Football, *a popular sport*, is very good for health.

5. Rút gọn mệnh đề quan hệ bằng cách sử dụng cụm giới từ

Ngoài ra, ta còn có thể rút gọn mệnh đề quan hệ về dạng cụm giới từ khi mệnh đề quan hệ có cấu trúc sau đây: ... N + **Who/That/Which** + V + **Prep.Phrase** (cụm giới từ)

Ví dụ: - The students *who study in this school* have to wear uniforms.

=> The students *in this school* have to wear uniforms.

- The workers *who work in that company* are on strike now.

=> The workers *in that company* are on strike now.

- Do you like *the book which is on the table*?

=> Do you like *the book on the table*?

- The bag *which is on the table* is Mr Spring's. => The bag *on the table* is Mr Spring's.

6. Rút gọn mệnh đề quan hệ bằng cách sử dụng cụm tính từ ghép

Đây là dạng khá hay của phần rút gọn mệnh đề quan hệ mà ít ai để ý đến.

Cách làm dạng này như sau: tìm trong mệnh đề một số đếm và danh từ đi sau nó, sau đó ta để chúng kế nhau và thêm dấu gạch nối ở giữa.

Đem tính từ ghép đó ra trước danh từ đứng trước **who, which,...** các phần còn lại bỏ hết.

Lưu ý:

- Danh từ ở phần tính từ ghép không được để ở dạng số nhiều (thêm S/ES).
- Chỉ dùng được dạng này khi mệnh đề tính từ có số đếm
- Dùng gạch nối ngăn cách giữa số đếm và danh từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ.

Ví dụ:- I have a car *which has four seats* => I have *a four-seat car*.

- I had a holiday *which lasted two days*. => I had *a two-day holiday*.

***. PHƯƠNG PHÁP KHI LÀM BÀI RÚT GỌN MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ**

Khi làm bài tập rút gọn mệnh đề quan hệ, nếu ta biết cách làm thì gần như không khi nào làm sai cả. Nhưng nếu ta chưa “thấm nhuần” kiến thức và phương pháp làm bài thì vẫn sẽ còn gặp nhiều khó khăn. Dưới đây tôi xin gợi ý phương pháp làm bài tập rút gọn mệnh đề quan hệ với ba bước cơ bản sau:

Bước 1: Tìm mệnh đề quan hệ

Bước này tương đối dễ vì mệnh đề tính từ thường bắt đầu bằng WHO, WHICH, THAT ...

Bước 2: Xét dạng của mệnh đề quan hệ

Bước này rất quan trọng vì ta phải xét xem mệnh đề quan hệ đó có dạng nào để áp dụng công thức cho phù hợp. Riêng bước này khi học thì ta học từ dễ đến khó nhưng khi làm bài thì ngược lại phải suy luận từ khó đến dễ và phải theo thứ tự nếu không sẽ làm sai.

Ví dụ: This is the first man *who was arrested by police yesterday*.

Mới nhìn ta thấy đây là câu bị động, nếu vội vàng thì sẽ dễ dàng biến nó thành:

This is the first man arrested by police yesterday (**sai**)

Thật ra **đáp án** là: This is the first man *to be arrested by police yesterday*.

Do đó ta cần hết sức chú ý tới **các bước xét hình thức mệnh đề quan hệ:**

B1. Nhìn xem mệnh đề quan hệ đó có công thức:

Who/Which/That + BE + CỤM DANH TỪ/GIỚI TỪ hoặc có số đếm hay không?

Nếu có áp dụng công thức 4, 5 hoặc 6.

B2. Nếu không có công thức đó thì xem nhìn phía trước **who, which ...** có các dấu hiệu **first, only ...v.v** không, hoặc xem mệnh đề quan hệ có các động từ khuyết thiếu **can/could/must, ...** hay không. Nếu có thì áp dụng công thức 3 (To Infinitive hay To be + Vp2), lưu ý thêm là phải xem hai chủ ngữ có khác nhau không để dùng “**for somebody**”, và xem có phải chuyển giới từ ra sau hay không.

B3. Nếu không có hai trường hợp trên mới xét xem câu đó chủ động hay bị động mà dùng V.ing hay V.p2 ...

Bước 3: Rút gọn mệnh đề

Sau khi đã thực hiện xong hai bước trên, ta tiến hành rút gọn từ mệnh đề xuống cụm từ theo công thức tương ứng và chú ý dấu phẩy (,) nếu có.

Chúng ta cùng quan sát và phân tích phương pháp làm bài qua hai ví dụ về rút gọn mệnh đề quan hệ dưới đây:

Ví dụ 1: - The last student that was interviewed was Tom.

Bước 1: Xác định mệnh đề quan hệ: phần được in nghiêng

- The last student *that was interviewed* was Tom.

Bước 2: Xét dạng mệnh đề quan hệ:

Theo phân tích ở trên, phần mệnh đề quan hệ không có cấu trúc:

Who/Which/That + BE + CỤM DANH TỪ/GIỚI TỪ do đó bỏ qua công thức 4, 5.

Thay vào đó, ta thấy trước mệnh đề quan hệ có cụm từ **the last student...**, do vậy ta sẽ áp dụng công thức 3 (Rút gọn về dạng To Infinitive hoặc To be + Vp2). Ở đây vì động từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ ở dạng bị động nên ta sẽ rút gọn về dạng nguyên thể bị động **To be + Vp2**. Sau khi bỏ đại từ quan hệ và chuyển đổi động từ ta sẽ được kết quả rút gọn là: “*to be interviewed*”

Bước 3: Rút gọn mệnh đề:

Sau khi thực hiện các bước trên, ta được đáp án hoàn chỉnh là:

=> The last student *to be interviewed* was Tom.

Ví dụ 2:

- The floor is dusty but I haven't got a brush with which I can sweep it.

Bước 1: Xác định mệnh đề quan hệ: phần được in nghiêng

- The floor is dusty but I haven't got a brush *with which I can sweep it*.

Bước 2: Xét dạng mệnh đề quan hệ:

Tương tự theo phân tích ở trên, ta thấy mệnh đề quan hệ không có cấu trúc: Who/Which/That + BE + CỤM DANH TỪ/GIỚI TỪ do đó bỏ qua công thức 4 và 5. Đồng thời, trước mệnh đề quan hệ không có các cụm từ *the last*, *the second*, Tuy nhiên trong mệnh đề quan hệ có động từ khuyết thiếu **can** và ở dạng chủ động do vậy ta sẽ áp dụng công thức 3.a (Rút gọn về dạng To Infinitive). Chủ ngữ của hai mệnh đề là **I** nên ta bỏ phần “**for Sb**”. Nhưng lưu ý thêm là trong câu này có giới từ **with** đứng trước đại từ quan hệ nên ta phải chuyển giới từ đó về cuối câu sau khi rút gọn.

Bước 3: Rút gọn mệnh đề:

Sau khi thực hiện các bước trên, ta được đáp án hoàn chỉnh là:

=> The floor is dusty but I haven't got a brush *to sweep it with*.

B. RÚT GỌN MỆNH ĐỀ TRẠNG NGỮ

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ hay còn gọi là mệnh đề trạng từ là mệnh đề nối nhau bằng các liên từ như **when, because, although**, ... Điều kiện quan trọng nhất để có thể rút gọn loại mệnh đề này là hai chủ ngữ của hai mệnh đề phải giống nhau - đều chỉ một đối tượng. Các loại mệnh đề trạng ngữ thường được rút gọn thành 4 dạng cơ bản là: dạng Hiện tại phân từ (Present Participle), dạng Quá khứ phân từ (Past Participle) và dạng Phân từ hoàn thành (Perfect Participle), cụm danh từ (Noun Phrase).

Quy tắc chung khi rút gọn các loại mệnh đề trạng ngữ: (1) bỏ liên từ (hoặc chuyển về dạng giới từ: *although* chuyển thành *despite* hoặc *in spite of*; *because* chuyển thành *because of*, ...); (2) nếu động từ ở dạng chủ động thì rút về dạng V.ing; (3) nếu động từ ở dạng bị động thì rút gọn về dạng (Being) Vp2 hoặc Not being + Vp2 tùy từng tình huống cụ thể. Chúng ta cùng nghiên cứu các nội dung liên quan đến vấn đề này ở bốn loại mệnh đề thường gặp như sau.

1. Rút gọn mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian (Adverbial Clauses of Time)

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian thường bắt đầu bằng các liên từ: **when, while, as, after, before, since**, ...

Ta rút gọn mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian khi muốn diễn tả một hành động đang diễn ra khi có một hành động khác xen vào.

Ví dụ: - Walking down the street on Saturday, I saw Simon.

(Phần đã được rút gọn trong ví dụ này: *As/ When/ While I was ...*)

Hoặc khi muốn diễn tả các hành động song song xảy ra cùng thời điểm.

Ví dụ: - Raising their glasses, they wished Darren a happy birthday.

- We sat in front of T.V, *watching* football.

Hoặc khi muốn diễn tả một chuỗi các hành động xảy ra nối tiếp nhau trong khoảng thời gian rất ngắn.

Ví dụ: - Closing all the windows and the door carefully, she went to bed.

- Seeing an accident ahead, I stopped my car.

Ta cũng rút gọn về dạng Having + Vp2 nếu muốn nhấn mạnh hành động ở mệnh đề trạng ngữ diễn ra và kết thúc trước hành động ở mệnh đề chính.

Ví dụ: - Having finished all my exercises, I went to bed.

- Having spent my money on a car, I couldn't afford a holiday.

- Having read the book the boy came out of the room

- Having studied for the exam, Mike went to play football.

Một số ví dụ khác về rút gọn mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian:

- Having retired, he found himself with time on his hands.

- Before being shown around, we were welcomed by the principal.

- Wear protective gloves *when using* this equipment.

- After finishing his speech, he took a sip of water.

- On arriving, you will find someone waiting for you.

- While traveling to work, she usually reads a novel.

- She has been much happier *since changing* schools.

2. Rút gọn mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ nguyên nhân, kết quả (Adverbial Clauses of Reason and Result) Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ nguyên nhân, kết quả thường bắt đầu bằng các liên từ:

because, since, as a result, ...

Ví dụ: - Not understanding Tom's question, I was unable to give him an answer.

(= *Because/ Since I didn't understand...*)

- Having spent my money on a car, I couldn't afford a holiday.

(= *Because/ Since I had spent ...*)

Một số ví dụ khác:

- Not having had any breakfast, I was very hungry.

- She became a local celebrity *as a result of having appeared* once on television.

- Having taken the wrong train, I found myself in Bath, not Bristol.

(= *Because I had taken the wrong train, I found myself in Bath, ...*)

3. Rút gọn mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự tương phản (Adverbial Clauses of Concession)

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự tương phản thường bắt đầu bằng các liên từ: ***although, though, even though, much as, ...***, khi rút gọn các liên từ này thường được thay thế bằng các giới từ: ***in spite of, despite, regardless of, ...***

Ví dụ: - We intend to go *though we had been advised* against it.

=> We intend to go *despite having been advised* against it.

- *Although he worked hard, he could not earn any money.*

=> *In spite of working hard, he could not earn any money.*

4. Rút gọn mệnh đề điều kiện (Conditional Clauses)

Mệnh đề điều kiện là mệnh đề dùng để diễn tả điều kiện của một hành động, một sự việc nếu được đáp ứng. Mệnh đề điều kiện thường bắt đầu bằng liên từ **If**. Hãy quan sát các ví dụ sau đây:

- *Used sparingly, this face cream should last you until Christmas.*

(*If it is used sparingly, this face cream should last you until Christmas*)

- *Washed at the wrong temperature, clothes can shrink*

(*If they are washed at the wrong temperature, clothes can shrink*)

- *Without wearing your glasses, you cannot see anything.*

(*If you don't wear your glasses, you cannot see anything.*)

- *But for your help, we would not have finished this project.*

(*If you hadn't helped us, we would not have finished this project.*)

*. MỘT SỐ ĐIỂM CẦN LƯU Ý KHI RÚT GỌN MỆNH ĐỀ TRẠNG NGỮ

1) - Các cấp độ rút gọn

Việc rút gọn mệnh đề có thể diễn ra ở nhiều mức (cấp độ) khác nhau tùy vào loại mệnh đề, từng liên từ, và tùy vào từng tình huống. Hãy quan sát hai ví dụ dưới đây.

Ví dụ 1: Hãy tìm một lỗi sai trong các phần được gạch chân trong câu sau đây và sửa lại cho đúng để câu trở nên hoàn chỉnh:

A child of noble birth, his name was famous among the children in that school.

(Đề tuyển sinh đại học năm 2008)

Để làm được câu này ta cần hiểu rõ cụm danh từ đầu câu chính là dạng rút gọn từ mệnh đề trạng từ. Câu gốc lúc chưa rút gọn : *As he was a child of noble birth, his name was famous among the children in that school.*

Rút gọn cấp độ 1: => *As being a child of noble birth, ...* (bỏ chủ từ, động từ thêm ING)

Rút gọn cấp độ 2: => *As a child of noble birth,...*(bỏ luôn động từ "to be" vì mang nghĩa "là")

Rút gọn cấp độ 3: => *A child of noble birth, ...* (bỏ luôn cả liên từ)

Hiểu được tới đây rồi cũng chưa làm được bài mà phải thuộc lòng nguyên tắc khi rút gọn: chủ ngữ 2 mệnh đề phải giống nhau

Rõ ràng sau khi "phục hồi" lại câu gốc lúc chưa rút gọn ta sẽ thấy chủ từ 2 mệnh đề khác nhau:

=> As **he** was a child of noble birth, **his name** was famous...

Do đó ta phải sửa một trong hai chủ ngữ đó, mà người ta chỉ gạch chủ ngữ mệnh đề sau nên ta chọn, **his name** và sửa thành **he**.

Ví dụ 2: Rút gọn mệnh đề trạng ngữ trong câu sau đây:

- *When he was attacked by a big dog, he ran away.*

Cấp độ 1: bỏ chủ ngữ => *When being attacked by a big dog, he ran away.*

Cấp độ 2: bỏ chủ ngữ và to be => *When attacked by a big dog, he ran away.*

Cấp độ 3: bỏ chủ ngữ, bỏ to be và cả liên từ => *Attacked by a big dog, he ran away.*

2)- Chủ ngữ của hai mệnh đề

Nếu chủ ngữ của hai mệnh đề khác nhau, phải giữ nguyên chủ ngữ (nếu chủ ngữ là danh từ hoặc cụm danh từ) hoặc chuyển thành dạng đại từ tân ngữ hoặc tính từ sở hữu (đối với chủ ngữ là đại từ), trường hợp này thường áp dụng đối với mệnh đề nguyên nhân và mệnh đề nhượng bộ. Hãy quan sát 2 ví dụ dưới đây:

Ví dụ 1: Hãy chia động từ trong ngoặc để hoàn thành câu dưới đây:

The weather (be) perfect, we decided to go for a swim.

Phân tích kỹ ta có thể thấy rằng về đầu là dạng rút gọn của mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ nguyên nhân.

Câu gốc chưa rút gọn sẽ là: *Because the weather was perfect, we decided to go for a swim.*

Rút gọn cấp độ 1: chuyển liên từ *because* thành giới từ *because of*, chuyển *to be* thành dạng *V.ing*, ta có: => *Because of the weather being perfect, we decided to go for a swim.*

Rút gọn cấp độ 2: bỏ liên từ *because*, chuyển “*to be*” thành dạng *V.ing*, vì hai chủ ngữ khác nhau nên không thể bỏ đi được. Kết quả sẽ là:

=> *The weather **being** perfect, we decided to go for a swim.*

Ví dụ 2: Rút gọn mệnh đề nguyên nhân trong câu sau:

Because she is old, she retires.

Đối với câu này, ta có thể rút gọn như sau:

Cấp độ 1: Chuyển liên từ *because* thành giới từ *because of*, chuyển *she* thành *her* và chuyển *to be* về dạng *V.ing*, ta có: => *Because of her being old, she retires.*

Cấp độ 2: Chuyển liên từ *because* thành giới từ *because of*, bỏ chủ ngữ *she* và chuyển *to be* về dạng *V.ing*, ta có: => *Because of being old, she retires.*

Cấp độ 3: Bỏ liên từ *because*, bỏ chủ ngữ *she* và chuyển *to be* về dạng *V.ing*, ta có:

=> *Being old, she retires.*

Lưu ý: Một cách khác rất phổ biến khi viết lại câu này là chuyển tính từ *old* thành danh từ *age* đứng sau tính từ sở hữu *her* và đặt sau giới từ *because of*:

=> *Because of her age, she retires.*

C. MỘT SỐ DẠNG RÚT GỌN KHÁC

Bên trên là các mẫu rút gọn thông dụng mà ta thường gặp trong chương trình học phổ thông. Ngoài ra ta còn gặp một số dạng đặc biệt khác nữa mà ta thường không hay để ý, đôi khi không hiểu nó được rút gọn thế nào, từ đâu. Hãy quan sát các trường hợp sau.

1. Hoán đổi mệnh đề khi rút gọn.

Theo nguyên tắc chung thì khi rút gọn mệnh đề quan hệ sẽ giữ nguyên vị trí, tuy nhiên mẫu này lại ngoại lệ. Ta cùng xem ví dụ để hiểu luôn cách dùng.

- *She, who had not seen me since 1990, couldn't recognize me at first*

=> *She couldn't recognize me at first, not having seen me since 1990.*

Hoặc: => *Not having seen me since 1990, she couldn't recognize me at first.*

2. Dùng các giới từ để thay thế động từ trong mệnh đề.

Trong một số trường hợp, ta có thể dùng các giới từ WITH, WITHOUT, IN, OF để thay thế cho động từ trong mệnh đề.

a. Dùng WITH, WITHOUT

Hai giới từ này dùng trong các mệnh đề quan hệ mô tả bộ phận thân thể, một số câu có động từ HAVE (có), CARRY hoặc THERE BE (có).

Ví dụ - *A girl who had big eyes helped me.*

=> A girl *with big eyes* helped me.

- A robber *who was carrying a gun* threatened to shoot them.

=> A robber *with a gun* threatened to shoot them.

- The pot *in which there is no food* is thrown away by him.

=> The pot *without food in it* is thrown away by him.

b. Dùng IN: Khi mệnh đề quan hệ diễn tả trang phục trên người như quần áo, mũ, giày dép, ..

Ví dụ: - The woman *who is wearing a red dress* is my aunt.

=> The woman *in a red dress* is my aunt.

- The man *who is wearing dark glasses* lives next door.

=> The man *in dark glasses* lives next door.

c. Dùng OF: Thường khi nói về năng lực, tuổi tác..

Ví dụ: - A man *who was 90 years old* saved the children.

=> A man *of 90 years old* saved the children.

(hoặc: A 90-year old man saved the children.)

3. Một số dạng rút gọn đặc biệt khác

a. Rút gọn “đại từ + to be”

Ví dụ:

- I'll go *if (it is) necessary*.

- *If (it is) not well managed*, irrigation can be harmful

- She worked extremely hard *though (she was) still rather poor in health*.

- We'll send an engineer over to meet you *as soon as (it is) possible*.

- *Unless (I am) compelled to stay in by bad weather*, I go for a walk every day.

- *Though (he was) very tired*, he did not give up.

- *Once (it is) seen*, the picture can never be forgotten.

- *(It's)* all right.

- *(I am)* sorry I'm late.

- *(When one is)* out of sight, *(one is)* out of mind.

b. Rút gọn “to be”

Ví dụ:

- In our country everybody is an ordinary worker no matter what his position *(is)*.

- She pledged to complete her father's unfinished task, whatever the task *(is)*.

- I refuse, however favorable the conditions *(are)*, to work there

c. Rút gọn động từ

Ví dụ:

- You could have come and *(you could have)* told me

- Jean hasn't been told, but I have *(been told)*.

- John has written a poem and Bob *(has written)* a short stor

d. Lược bỏ bổ ngữ

Ví dụ: - I am tired. Are you? (= *Are you tired?*)

- Is this your pen? - Yes, it is. (= *It is my pen*)

e. Lược bỏ tân ngữ

Ví dụ:

- Tell me the truth! - Yes, but I will tell you *(the truth)* this evening.

f. Lược bỏ mệnh đề

Ví dụ: - She is more beautiful than I thought (*she was*)

- It's cold in December in England, but (*it's cold*) in July in New Zealand

PHẦN B - BÀI TẬP ỨNG DỤNG

EXERCISE 1: Choose the best answer to complete the following sentences

1) _____, I saw an old friend of mine.

- a. While I walking home from work
- b. While walking home from work
- c. While walked home from work
- d. While walking home work

2) _____, I brushed my teech.

- a. Before I leave my house
- b. Before I leaving my house
- c. Before leaving my house
- d. Before my house I leaving

3) I fell asleep_____.

- a. while I watch TV
- b. while watching TV
- c. while watched TV
- d. during I was watching TV

4) _____, a mild earthquake shook the classroom.

- a. While the teacher lecturing about adverb clauses
- b. While the teacher was lecturing about adverb clauses
- c. While lecturing about adverb clauses
- d. While lectured about adverb clauses

5) _____, a dog chased us down the street.

- a. While running
- b. While we were running
- c. We were running while
- d. While running we were

6) _____, Vanessa has made many friends.

- a. Since coming back to her home village
- b. Since come back to her home village
- c. Since she coming back to her home village
- d. Since comes back to her home village

7) _____, we saw many deer.

- a. While we hiking through the woods yesterday

- b. While hiking through the woods yesterday
 c. During hiking through the woods yesterday
 d. Hike through the woods yesterday
- 8) _____, she was not hired for the job.
 a. Lacked the necessary qualifications b. When lacking the necessary qualifications
 c. Lacking the necessary qualifications d. Because lacking the necessary qualifications
- 9) _____, Martha was watching her favorite TV program.
 a. While Dave talking to his friend b. While Dave was talked to his friend
 c. While Dave was talking to his friend d. Dave was talking to his friend
- 10) _____, I need to finish all of my business dealing with my clients.
 a. Before leaving for Ha Noi to visit my brother and his family
 b. Before leaving for Ha Noi visiting my brother and his family
 c. Before left for Ha Noi to visit my brother and his family
 d. Before I leaving for Ha Noi to visit my brother and his family
- 11) _____, Tracy discovered a new type of virus.
 a. While worked on the computer b. While she working on the computer
 c. Working on the computer while she d. While working on the computer
- 12) ____, Hans has been offered a job as a finance manager of a company in Berlin.
 a. Since he finishing his MBA studies b. Since finishing his MBA studies
 c. Since finished his MBA studies d. Since he finish his MBA studies
- 13) Lee always watches TV _____.
 a. after finished his homework b. after he finished his homework
 c. after finishing his homework d. after he finishing his homework
- 14) _____, she took the bus to school every morning.
 a. Because unable to buy a bicycle b. Because to be unable to buy a bicycle
 c. Because to unable buy a bicycle d. Because she unable to buy a bicycle
- 15) _____, I discovered that my stereo had been stolen.
 a. On that looking into my car b. When I look into my car
 c. Looking into my car when I d. On looking into my car
- 16) We should participate in the movements _____ the natural environment.
 a. organizing to conserve b. organized conserving
 c. which organize to conserve d. organized to conserve
- 17) Rubber _____ from vulcanized silicones with a high molecular weight is difficult to distinguish from natural rubber.
 a. is produced b. producing c. that produces d. produced
- 18) Florida, _____ the Sunshine State, attracts many tourists every year.
 a. is b. known as c. is known as d. that is known as
- 19) While _____ to help Tim with his math, I got impatient because he wouldn't pay attention to what I was saying.
 a. I am trying b. having tried c. I try d. trying
- 20) Lightweight luggage enables you to manage easily even when fully _____.
 a. loaded b. crowded c. carried d. packed

1. (Feel) _____ hungry, he went into the kitchen and opened the fridge.
2. (Whistle) _____ to himself, he walked down the road.
3. In spite of (miss) _____ the train , we arrived on time.

4. They found the money _____ (lye) on the ground.
5. He was trapped in a (burn) _____ house.
6. She admitted (kill) _____ her husband.
7. I regret (write) _____ her that letter.
8. I enjoy (play) _____ tennis with my friends.
9. (Tell) _____ me that she would never speak to me again, she picked up her stuff and stormed out of the house.
10. - Will you enter for the next eloquence contest?
- (Win) _____ twice , I don't want to try again.

EXERCISE 4: Reduce the following relative clauses

1. The boy who is playing the piano is Ben.
2. Animals that are born in a zoo generally adjust to captivity better than those that are captured in the wild.
3. The fence which surrounds our house is made of wood.
4. We have an apartment which overlooks the park.
5. The ideas which are presented in that book are interesting.
6. Few tourists ever see a jaguar, which is a spotted wild cat that is native to tropical America.
7. They work in a hospital which was sponsored by the government.
8. John was the last man who reached the top of the mountain.
9. The first person that we must see is Mr. Smith.
10. This is the second person who was killed in that way.
11. The last person who leaves the room must turn off the lights.
12. The first person who catches the ball will be the winner.
13. The man who is in the house is my father.
14. The books that are on the desk are mine.
15. We had a river in which we could swim.
16. Here are some accounts that you must check.
17. The mistakes which you have to correct are very important.
18. We visited Hanoi, which is the capital of Viet Nam.
19. My father, who is a pilot, often goes abroad.
20. I was awakened by the sound of a laughter which came from the room which was next to mine.
21. The man who is standing behind that counter can give you more information.
22. Luggage which is left unattended will be taken away by the police.
23. Who's that pretty woman who is speaking to the teacher?
24. Letters which are posted before twelve noon will usually be delivered by the next day.
25. Are those your clothes that are hanging over the balcony?
26. The man who was accused of stealing the money refused to answer the police's enquiries.
27. The nurse who is looking after my grandmother is very kind to her.
28. All the rubbish that is floating in this canal is a real danger to health.
29. Ham which is made in the traditional way costs more, but tastes better.

30. Pauline has a very strange painting of a woman who is holding a small dog.

EXERCISE 5: Rewrite the following sentences using a Perfect Participle phrase to reduce the *italic* part as following.

E.g. - We *switched off the lights* before we went to bed.

-> *Having switched off the lights*, we went to bed.

1. *The boy asked his mother's permission* and then went out to play.

2. *As he had drunk too much*, he didn't drive home himself.

3. *We have done two tests today*, so we are exhausted.

4. *She filled the washing machine* and switched it on.

5. *She had been to disco the night before* and she overslept in the morning.

6. *We had worked in the garden all day* and were sunburned in the evening.

7. *She had not slept for two days* and therefore she wasn't able to concentrate

8. *Since I had not seen him for ages*, I didn't recognize him.

9. *I had not ridden a horse for a long time* and I found it very difficult to keep in the saddle.

10. *Zoe had practiced a lot*, so she was sure of her winning in the competition.

EXERCISE 6: Rewrite the sentences so that the meaning stays the same as the given one.

1. Entering the room, I was surprised at what I saw.

-> When

2. The volunteers couldn't mow the old lady's lawns because of the rain.

-> The rain prevented

3. David did his homework and then went to bed.

-> After having

4. I told him off. Then I realized I was wrong.

-> After

5. I worked very hard for the exam. Then I passed it.

-> Before.....

6. First I considered what to study. Then I decided to major in Maths.

-> After.....

7. She wrote a letter. Then she went to bed.

-> After.....

8. She went out for a walk. Then she had a fatal accident.

-> Before.....

9. She decided to go away. First she faced the matter.

-> After.....

10. We read the book, then we wrote the assignment.

-> Before.....

EXERCISE 7: Reduce the relative clause in the following sentences

1) I've just bought a house which has five storeys.

2) Have you ever seen a cow which has six legs?

3) The girl who is ten years old is my sister.

4) Give me the note which costs ten dollars.

5) Vietnamese students have a summer holiday which lasts 3 months .

- 6) We have two breaks which last 30 minutes.
- 7) That is a car which has three wheels.
- 8) The man who has one leg looks at me angrily.
- 9) The snake which has two heads is not found.
- 10) Mikoon is a monster which has 6 heads.

EXERCISE 8: Combine the following pairs of sentences using a Compound Adjective.

- 1) I live in a house. It has 8 doors.
- 2) My house is very nice .It has 5 storeys.
- 3) I like my friend's cell phone . It has two numbers.
- 4) The fans are very interesting .They have 3 speeds.
- 5) Do you want to take part in the trip ? It will last 5 days.
- 6) With a capacity of 10 horse power , this machine is good for you work shop.
- 7) I have just attended a wedding . There were 30 tables in this wedding.
- 8) I buy a house .It has 11 rooms.

EX 9: Advanced Practice: REWRITE THE FOLLOWING SENTENCES

1. As there are no more questions, I think we can end the meeting.
=> There
2. It was a nice party when you take everything into consideration.
=> All things
3. Julia won't speak to the boy first as she is too shy.
=> Being
4. Mother left the room rather quickly because she didn't want to wake us up.
=> Not
5. If the weather is fine, we may go camping at the weekend. **(permitting)**
=>
6. Having replaced the flat tyre with a new one, we went on driving to the countryside.
=> After we
7. Bob feels uneasy whenever he has to dine with his superiors.
=> Having to
8. When we came back home we realized it had been broken into.
=> On
9. After I had introduced my guests to each other I made a long speech on the current changes in the computer technologies.
=> Having
10. Jane was the first girl who joined our association. **(to)**
=> Jane
11. A train leaves at 8 o'clock every morning.
=> There is
12. The town centre features an old hospital, imaginatively converted into flats. **(been)**
=>
13. A person who serves in a shop is called a shop assistant.

=> The person

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 3: KIẾN THỨC NÂNG CAO VỀ CÁC DẠNG BỊ ĐỘNG

I. OVERVIEW (KHÁI QUÁT)

I.1. Form of The Passive: BE(tense or form) + Vp2

*. Trong công thức trên BE được chia ở thì hoặc dạng thích hợp. Vp2 là hình thức qkpt của ngoại động từ (V buộc phải có O mới đầy đủ ý nghĩa)

E.g. - A small sum of money **was stolen** from the cash box.

- They **ought to have been punished** more severely.

(Lẽ ra họ nên bị phạt nghiêm khắc hơn)

- **Having been beaten** in the semi-final, she flew home the next day.

(Sau khi bị đánh bại trong ...,)

*. Trong văn nói, đôi khi GET có thể được dùng thay cho BE trong câu bị động

E.g. They **got told off** for making so much noise.

*. Tuy nhiên, GET + -ED thường được sử dụng hơn với nghĩa chủ động: **get dressed** (ăn mặc đẹp, ăn diện), **get married** (kết hôn, lập gia đình)

I.2. Reasons For Using The Passive

- **Nhấn mạnh**: Trong T.A, chủ đề/ chủ ngữ thường đứng đầu câu, thông tin mới về chủ ngữ thường ở cuối. Trong một câu chủ động **tác nhân (agent** - người/vật thực hiện hành động) thường đứng đầu và làm S trong câu:

Subject (Agent) + Action + Result

E.g. Olympiakos scored the first goal. (Câu này chủ yếu nói về Olympiakos hơn là nói về việc ghi bàn thắng)

Trong câu BD, kết quả hay đối tượng chịu tác động của hành động đứng đầu câu và làm S:

Subject (Result) + Action + Agent

E.g. - The first goal was scored by Olympiakos.

- England have been beaten by Germany in a penalty shoot-out.

(Báo chí Anh sẽ dùng câu này khi viết)

=> Germany have beaten England in a penalty shoot-out.

(Báo chí Đức sẽ dùng câu này khi viết)

- Tác nhân thực hiện hành động không rõ, không quan trọng, chung chung: không dùng By + O

E.g. - I was born in 1982.

- Coffee will be made available after the meal.

***. Chú ý:**

- Không phải tất cả các dạng BE + Vp2 cũng đều là Bị động. Vp2 có thể là tính từ

E.g. - I **was worried** we would be late because of the traffic.

- He **is interested in** cinema industry.

- Cấu trúc bị động có dạng: Be + Being + Vp2 hay Been + Being + Vp2 thường không được sử dụng, đặc biệt trong văn viết. (Đó là lý do tại sao các thì hoàn thành tiếp diễn ít khi được dùng trong câu bị động)

E.g. - Tránh dùng: The road will have been being repaired for months.

Mà nên dùng:

- Chỉ ngoại động từ (V buộc phải có tân ngữ) mới được dùng trong cấu trúc BD, các nội động từ (V không có tân ngữ - bản thân chúng đã đầy đủ ý nghĩa: run, walk, die, sleep, cry, ...) không được dùng trong câu BD:

E.g. Ta không nói: The tiger **was died out** early this century. mà nói: The tiger **died out** early this century.

Notes: Quy tắc chuyển câu từ chủ động sang bị động

- QT1: Xác định chính xác chủ ngữ, động từ, tân ngữ và thì của câu chủ động

- QT2: Chuyển tân ngữ của câu CD thành chủ ngữ câu BD, chủ ngữ câu CD thành tân ngữ trong câu BD đặt sau "BY" (By + O đứng sau trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn và trước trạng từ thời gian nếu có)

- QT3: Thêm To Be (phù hợp với thì/ cấu trúc của động từ trong câu chủ động) và chuyển V chính sang dạng Vp2

E.g. She arranges the books on the shelves every weekend. => The books are arranged on the shelves (by her) every weekend.

II. INFINITIVES AND -ING FORM PASSIVES

I.1. Infinitives Passives: To BE + Vp2/ To Have been + Vp2

E.g. - There's so much **to do**. => There's so much **to be done**.

- I've **to write** this essay before Friday. => This essay **has to be written** before Friday.

- I'm **going to do** it by then. => It's **going to be done** by then.

- The children would prefer history **to be taught** in a more practical way.

- People say that Columbus **found** America in 1942.

=> America **is said to have been found** in 1942.

- My new car was **to have been delivered** today but there was a problem with the paintwork.

(Be + to V: dự định, phải)

- They wanted you to tell me story again. => They wanted the story to be told again.

- It is embarrassing to be watched by lotf of people At home.

- I want these dishes to have been washed when I come back.

I.2. Make/See/Hear/Help Sb + do St => To BE + Made/Seen/Heard/Help + to do St

- E.g. - I **heard him shout** at his brother. => He **was heard to shout** at his brother.
 - They've **made him promise** not to come before 6.
 => He's **been made to promise** not to come before 6.

I.3. Let/Allow: **Let Sb do St => Sb + be + allowed to do St**

E.g. My parents **let me do** what I wanted.

=> I **was allowed to do** what I wanted. (không dùng ... was let to do ...)

I.4. Passive –ING Forms: **Being + Vp2/ Having Been + Vp2**

Dạng BD với ĐDT (Being + Vp2) và ĐDT Hoàn thành (Having Been + Vp2) thường được sử dụng dụng sau các V, cấu trúc theo sau bởi V.ing hoặc trong mệnh đề rút gọn với nghĩa VÌ/ KHI/SAU KHI

- E.g. - I love **being given** flowers.
 - She recalled **having been taken** there when she was young.
 - Avoid being disturbed, she works in a quiet room.
 - That company tried to prevent the book from being published.
 - I am annoyed at having been made fun of.
 - She forgot having been given a big sum of money that day.
 - **Being paid** monthly, I find annual bills hard to pay.
 (Vì được trả từng tháng, tôi thấy các hóa đơn theo năm rất khó thanh toán)
 - **Having been stung** by bees, she has no love of insects.
 (Sau khi bị ong cắn, cô ấy không còn thích côn trùng nữa)

III. STRUCTURES WITH **GET** AND **HAVE** (CÁC CẤU TRÚC VỚI **GET**, **HAVE**)

I.1. Causatives (Thể truyền khiến):

Ta có thể dùng GET và HAVE ở cả cấu trúc chủ động và bị động.

- Cấu trúc chủ động có nghĩa là GÂY RA/ RA LỆNH CHO AI LÀM GÌ và có dạng:

GET Sb to do St ⇔ HAVE Sb do St

E.g. - I'll **get** the waiter **to bring** you the menu ⇔ I'll **have** the waiter **bring** you the menu.

- Cấu trúc bị động có nghĩa là THU XẾP ĐỀ CHO/NHỜ AI LÀM GÌ và có dạng:

GET St done St ⇔ HAVE St done

- E.g. - I'll **have/get** my hair **cut** tomorrow.
 - I **had to get/have** my jacket **cleaned** after the party.
 - I must go and **get/have** my photo **taken** for my new passport.
 - I'll **get/have** those copies **made** for you immediately.
 - She's **getting/having** her teeth **fixed**.

I.2. GET + -ED: Active and Passive

- Đôi khi ta có thể dùng GET thay cho BE trong câu bị động trong văn phong thân mật

E.g. - They **got punished** by the Principal for making so much noise.

(Họ bị thầy Hiệu trưởng phạt vì làm ồn)

- Lucky Paul **got promoted/elected/chosen/appointed** yesterday.

(Lucky Paul được thăng chức/ lựa chọn/ bổ nhiệm hôm qua.)

- Poor Vassili – His dog **got run over** last night.

(Tôi nghiệp Vassili – Con chó của cậu ta bị xe cán tới qua)

- **GET + Vp2** có thể có nghĩa chủ động trong một số cụm từ: **get dressed** (ăn mặc đẹp), **get married, get used to, get involved** (dính líu)

- E.g. - I **got dressed** as quickly as I could.
 - I have to **get the children dressed** early every morning.
 (Tôi phải mặc quần áo cho bọn trẻ ...)
 - Don't **get** your family **involved** in the business.
 (Đừng để gđ bạn dính líu vào việc này)

I.3. Things that happen to you (Những điều xảy đến với bạn)

- Ta sử dụng cấu trúc **HAVE St done** để miêu tả những gì xảy ra với chúng ta, thường là những điều không may. Chủ ngữ là người trải nghiệm những gì xảy ra.

- E.g. - I've **had** my car **stolen**. (= My car **was stolen**: Tôi bị mất xe.)
 - He's **had** his application for citizenship **turned down**. (= His application for citizenship **has been turned down**: Đơn xin nhập quốc tịch của anh ta đã bị từ chối.)
 - My mother has **had** her letter **published** in the Times. (= My mother's letter **has been published** in the Times: Thư của mẹ tôi đã được đưa lên tờ THỜI BÁO.)
 - Trong văn nói đôi khi ta có thể dùng GET thay cho HAVE:
 E.g. - She's **got** another letter **published** in The Times.

IV. PHRASAL VERBS/ VERB + PREPOSITION (cụm động từ; động từ + giới từ)

- Cụm động từ là những động từ luôn theo sau bởi 1 trạng từ, 1 giới từ hay 1 trạng từ và 1 giới từ: **run over** (chận, cán, đè, chạy qua), **come into** (thừa hưởng), **put up with** (chịu đựng), ...

- E.g. - My friend's cat **was run over** by an ambulance.
 - I **came into** the money when my father died.
 - You'll have to **put up with** them for a little longer.
 - Cụm động từ có thể là ngoại động từ (phải có Tân ngữ mới đầy đủ ý nghĩa) hoặc nội động từ (không cần O)
 E.g. - When you get to the next crossroads, **turn off**. (Khi bạn đến ngã tư tới, hãy rẽ đường khác
 - nội V)
 - Would you **turn off** the radio, please? (Bạn vui lòng tắt đài đi được không? - ngoại V)

V. SPECIAL STRUCTURES (CÁC CẤU TRÚC ĐẶC BIỆT)

1. Verbs with 2 Objects: bring, buy, give, offer, teach, send, sell, tell

- E.g. I gave Tom the notes. => **Tom** was given the notes. / **The** notes were given to Tom
 - “**To**” thường đứng sau các V: *bring, hand, give, offer, pass, pay, sell, send, teach, tell, ...*
 - “**For**” thường đi sau: *buy, make, cook, ...*
 E.g. - She cooked this soup for her daughter. => This soup was cooked for her daughter.
 - The letter was sent to my best friend. => My friend was sent the letter.

2. By/ With?

- By O: giới thiệu **tác nhân** thực hiện hành động
 - With + N: giới thiệu **công cụ** thực hiện
 E.g. - He was attacked by a strange man. / He was attacked with a sharp knife.

3. Need + V.ing = Need + to be Vp2: Cần được

- E.g. - I need to cut my hair = My hairs needs cutting/ My hair needs to be cut.

4. Verbs of Ideas: acknowledge, believe, claim, consider, estimate, expect, prove, report, say, think,...

S + V + that clause => It + be + V2 + that clause/ S' + be + Vp2 + to Infinitive

E.g. People said that she was nice to her friends.

=> It was said that she was nice to her friends.

=> She was said to be nice to her friends.

Phương pháp chuyển sang dạng: It + be + Vp2 + that clause: Đặt It làm S giả, Chia V tương thuật (say, think, ...) ở thể bị động tương ứng với thì câu gốc rồi viết lại mở "that"

Phương pháp chuyển sang dạng: S' + be + Vp2 + To Infinitive: Lấy S mở sau làm S', Chia V tương thuật (say, think, ...) ở thể bị động tương ứng với thì câu gốc, chuyển V ở mở sau thành To Infinitive và viết lại phía sau V đó.

***. Chú ý khi dùng phương pháp 2:** Nếu V2 xảy ra trước V1 thì cần đưa V2 về dạng nguyên thể hoàn thành (to have Vp2)

E.g. They believe he killed his wife. => He is believed to have killed his wife.

They thought that Mary had gone away. → Mary was thought to have gone away.

- **Khi V2 ở thì tiếp diễn:** They thought that he was cleaning the house. => He was thought to be cleaning the house.

5. Passive Voice With Imperatives (Bị động với câu mệnh lệnh)

E.g. Write your name on the board! => Let your name be written on the board.

Phương pháp làm bài: Thêm Let (câu mlkđ) /Don't Let (câu mlpđ) vào đầu câu, đặt O câu chủ động sau Let, thêm Be (không chia) sau O, chuyển V thành Vp2, rồi viết các phần còn lại (nếu có).

6. Other Structures

***. It is Sb's duty to do St => Sb + be + supposed to do St**

E.g. It is your duty to do this homework. => You are supposed to do this homework.

***. It is impossible to do St => St can't be done.**

E.g. It is impossible to repair this computer. => This computer can't be repaired.

***. S + recommend/suggest + V.ing + O => S + recommend/suggest + that + S + (should) be + Vp2.**

E.g. They recommend building a house. => They recommend that a house (should) be built.

***. No one/ Nobody, Nothing, ...**

Ex: - No one can answer this question. → (P) This question can't be answered.

- (A) They haven't done anything. → Nothing has been done.

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 4: ACTIVE AND PASSIVE TRANSFORMATION (1)

Passive Structures

I. Aims

- To understand some Unreal structures after like **Would rather, Would sooner and Would prefer ...** and do sentence related transformation exercises.

Basic Form of The Passive: **BE(tense or form) + V(p2)**

1. Be(tense) + V(p2)

Tenses in the Passive Voice: **Present Simple, Past Simple, Present Continuous, Past Continuous, Present Perfect, Past Perfect, Simple Future, Future Perfect, Modal Verbs, Perfect Modal Verbs, Near Future**

E.g. - I'd rather/ I'd s

1. 'New World' Advertising is considering your application. **is**

=> Your application 'New World' Advertising.

(Your application **is being considered by** 'New World' Advertising.)

2. The examiner tells candidates the regulations at the beginning of the exam. **TOLD**

=> At the beginning of the exam candidates the regulations. (**are told about/ are told**)

3. We haven't arranged a date for the wedding yet. **BEEN**

=> A date for the wedding yet.

(**has not been arranged/hasn't been arranged/has not been set**)

4. They will have given him the news by now. **TOLD**

=> He the news by now.

(**will have been told/ 'll have been told**)

5. A lot of effort has been put in the work by the little girl.

=> The little _____ (**The little girl has put a lot of effort in the work.**)

2. V + To Be + V(p2)

E.g. - There's so much **to do**. => There's so much **to be done**.

- They wanted you to tell me story again. => They wanted the story to be told again.

II. Practice: V + To Be + Vp2

1. Rich families tend to send their children to private schools. => Children of ...

(Children of rich families are often sent to private schools/ tend to be sent to private schools.)

(DHDL Phuong Dong – Khoi D 97-98, P.110)

2. She expected us to offer her the job.

=> She

(She **expected to be offered the job.**) (Phan Vien Bao Chi va Tuyen Truyen – P.308)

3. His passport was nowhere to be found.

=> No one

(No one **knew where to find his passport.**) (DHDL Dong Do – 2001-2002, P. 157)

4. Your hair needs combing properly.

- => Your hair needs
(Your hair needs **to be combed properly.**) (CHUYÊN ĐỀ KTDN TP. Ho Chi Minh – 2001-2002)
5. We expect the government to propose changes to the taxation system.
=> Changes to the taxation system(**are expected to be proposed by the government.**)
6. He promised not to report me to the police.
=> I (**was promised not to be reported to the police.**)
7. The travel agent is going to send us the tickets when they arrive.
=> I've arranged(for the tickets to be sent to us (by the travel agent) when they arrive.)
(BD HSG TA 11 – P.130)
8. They told Nick not to go to the city centre on New Year's Eve. (**WARNED**)
=> Nick from the city centre on New Year's Eve.
(Nick **was warned to stay away/ keep away** from the city centre on New Year's Eve. (CAE4) - **Stay away from St = Keep away from St:** tránh xa, không đến gần ...)
9. We certainly don't want any repetition of such a ridiculous spectacle ever again. (**repeated**)
=> **We certainly don't want such a ridiculous spectacle to be repeated ever again.**
10. The plan was originally to complete the building by June. (**due**)
=> **The building was originally due to be completed by June.**
- 3. V + Being + V(p2)**
E.g.
1. They always make fun of me and I hate it.
=> I (I hate being made fun of.) (DH Ngoai Thuong – 2001-2002, P.72)
2. I remember them taking me to the zoo.
=> I (DH Ngoai Thuong – 2001-2002, P.72)
3. She always keeps me waiting. I hate it.
=> I (I hate being kept waiting.) (CHUYÊN ĐỀ KTDN TP. Ho Chi Minh – 2001-2002)
4. Joe doesn't like it when people treat him like a child. => Joe resents ...
(**being treated like a child/ people treating him like a child.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.27)
- **resent (doing) St:** bực tức, ghét, phẫn nộ ...
5. I dislike it when people criticize me unfairly.
=> I object (**to being criticized unfairly.**) (**to people criticizing me unfairly**
=> **acceptable**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.153) **before it.**
6. He didn't remember that he had been ordered to appear before the judge.
=> He had no recollection of.....(**being ordered to appear before the judge.**)
7. She vaguely remembers that she was knocked down by a motorbike.
=> She has vague memories of(**being knocked down by a motorbike.**)
8. It's never very nice when people laugh at you.
=> Being (**laughed at is never very nice.**)
9. Stewart was criticized for his extravagance and was more careful after that.
=> Having...(b**een criticized for his extravagance, Stewart was more careful (afterwards).**
10. I really wish I hadn't been pushed into giving a speech.
=> I really regret **being pushed (or: having been pushed) into giving a speech.**

11. Because I was told it was quicker, I naturally took the mountain road.

=> Having (**been told it was quicker, I naturally took the mountain road.**

12. I can't tell you what it feels like because nobody's ever given me \$100.000.

=> Never (**having been given \$100.00 (before), I can't tell you what it feels like.**

4. Imperatives in the Passive Voice (phụ thuộc nghĩa của câu gốc)

Phương pháp làm bài cơ bản:

Thêm **Let** (câu mlkđ) /**Don't Let** (câu mlpđ) vào đầu câu, đặt **O** câu chủ động sau **Let**, thêm **Be** (không chia) sau **O**, chuyển **V** thành **Vp2**, rồi viết các phần còn lại (nếu có).

E.g. Write your name on the board! => Let your name be written on the board.

Tuy nhiên khi gặp từng tình huống cụ thể phải dựa vào nghĩa, từ gợi ý để tìm ra cấu trúc phù hợp

Một số ví dụ tham khảo:

E.g.

1. Don't touch this switch. => This

(This switch mustn't be touched. (Phan Vien Bao Chi và Tuyen Truyen – P.308) - warning

2. Don't let the others see you. => Don't ...

(Don't **let yourself be seen by the others.**) (CHUYÊN ĐỀ SP TP.HCM – P.338)

3. Turn off all switches before leaving the workshop.

=> All (All the switches must be turned off before leaving the workshop.

(DHDL Dong Do – 2001-2002, P. 153)

4. "Enter by this door." A notice said. => You

(You are allowed to enter by this door. (CHUYÊN ĐỀ KTDN TP. Ho Chi Minh – 2001-2002, P. 220)

5. Please do not smoke in this area of the restaurants. => Customers are

(not allowed to smoke in this area of the restaurants.)(DHSPQuy Nhơn-Khoi D 97-98, P.243)

5. Modal Verbs in the Passive Voice

E.g.

1. Governments should preserve all the world's languages. **OUGHT**

=> All the world's languages governments. (**ought to be preserved by**)

2. It will be necessary to send this letter first class. **HAVE**

=> This letter first class. (**will have to be sent**)

3. You can't park here. It's a restricted area. => No

(No parking is permitted here./No cars are allowed to park here.)(DH Th.Nguyen 2001-2002)

PRACTICE: The Passive Voice with Modal Verbs

1. They ought to have taught this to the students at the very beginning. => This
(This ought to have been taught to the students at the very beginning/ The students ought to have been taught this at the very beginning.) (DHDL Thang Long – Khoi D 97-98, P.114)
2. You must not smoke in here => Smoking
(Smoking is not allowed in here) (DHDL Thang Long – Khoi D 97-98, P.119)
4. Cyclists are not allowed to ride on the station platform. (**must**)
=> Bicycles on the station platform.
(**must not be ridden**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.56)
7. We shall have to tow the car to the garage. => The car
(**The car will have to be towed to the garage.**) (BTTH 12 – P.170)
8. They ought to have reported the accident to the police. => The
(**The accident ought to have been reported to the police.**) (BTTH 12 – P.170)
9. You must take notice of the school rules. (**ignored**) =>
(**The school rules must not be ignored.**)
(**take notice of St:** chú ý, để ý ⇔ **pay attention to St** ⇔ Keep an eye on St/Sb – ignore St: phớt lờ) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.130)
11. You should wash your shirt right now before that stain dries. (**NEEDS**)
=>
Your shirt needs washing right now before the stain dries. (BD HSG TA 12 – P.139)
12. Peter's hair really ought to be cut. (**needs**) =>
(**Peter's hair really needs to be cut/ cutting.**)
13. Cyclists are not allowed to ride on the station platform. (**must**)
=> Bicycles (BTTH 10 – P.118)
14. You mustn't move this man, he is too ill. You'll have to leave him here.
=> This man
(This man **mustn't be moved, he is too ill. He will have to be left here.**
(Phan Vien Bao Chi va TT – P.308)
15. Steve definitely didn't write that essay. **WRITTEN**
=> That essay by Steve.
(**can't have been written/won't have been written/ cannot have been written/will not have been written**) => Passive + Inference of the Past
16. Loans must be repaid in full. **BACK**
=> You all the money.
(**must pay back** (Passive to active + phrasal verb)
17. I'm sorry but you must not smoke here. **FORBIDDEN** => I'm afraid here.
(**smoking is forbidden/ smoking's forbidden** (Noun to verb + verb change)
18. I suppose the authorities have killed the dog.
=> The dog
(**The dog might / must have been killed by the authorities.**)
19. The students will finish their English course at the end of June. **HAVE**

=> The English course the beginning of July. (**will have finished by**)

22. We have a six o'clock deadline for this work. => This work

(This work **must be finished before/ no later than 6 o'clock.**)

(DH Thai Nguyen – 2001-2002, P.85)

24. It is necessary to do all of this photocopying before lunchtime. (BTTA 12 – P.157)

=> All of this photocopying

(**has to be done before lunchtime./ needs doing/ needs to be done before lunch time.**)

25. It is necessary to extend the college to accommodate the growing number of students.

(BTTA 12 – P.157)

=> The college has

(to be extended to accommodate the growing number of students.)

26. Is leaving everything here really necessary? **left**

=> Does everything here?

(Does everything **really have to be left** here?)

27. I'm afraid you can't smoke in here. **ALLOWED** => You in here.

(are not allowed to smoke/'re not allowed to smoke/aren't allowed to smoke)

9. It is thought that one in every five people cannot control how much they spend. (**unable**)

=> One in every five people is thought their spending under control.

(One in every five people is thought **to be unable to keep** their spending under control.) (CAE-1)

cannot + V = to be unable to + V to control st = to keep st under control

10. My passport needs renewing because I'm going abroad this summer. (**get**)

=> I need because I'm going abroad this summer.

(I need **to get my passport renewed** because I'm going abroad this summer.) (CAE-1)

get/have st done get sb to do st have sb do st (CAE-1)

13. There are various ways of avoiding insect bites. (**prevented**)

=> Insect bites can various ways.

(Insect bites can **be prevented in** various ways. (CAE-1))

17. This form must be completed before you leave. **fill**

=> You this form before you leave.

(You **__must/arerequired to/are expected to/have to fill in__** this form before you leave.)

37. Somebody should tell him. **told**

=> He needs by someone. (He needs **to be told** by someone.)

60. I can assure you I will arrange everything in time. => You ...

(You **can be assured that everything will be arranged in time.**) (CHUYÊN ĐỀ SP TP.HCM – P.338)

70. We couldn't make the machine work.

=> The machine (**couldn't be made to work.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.140)

6. It + be ...

Basic Form with verbs of ideas (say, think, believe, consider, report, know, expect, claim, announce, allege,...): People say that .../ It is said that ...

Form 1:

S1 + V1 + (that) + S2 + V2 + O ⇔ It + be + V1(p2) + that + S2 + V2 + O (1)

(BE chia theo thì của V1)

- E.g. - People say that Henry eats 20 eggs a day. => It ...
- They expect that the strike will begin tomorrow. => It ...

Form 2:

S1 + V1 + (that) + S2 + V2 + O ⇔ S2 + be + V1(p2) + To V2(inf) + O (2)

(=> V1-HTĐ – V2-HTĐ/TLĐ, V1-QKĐ – V2-QKĐ)

(BE chia theo thì của V1)

- People said that he was very rich. => He ...
- People say that health is more precious than gold. => Health
- People believe that knowledge is the key to open all things. => Knowledge..

Form 3:

S1 + V1 + (that) + S2 + V2 + O ⇔ S2 + be + V1(p2) + To Have + V2(p2) + O (3)

(=> V1-HTĐ – V2-QKĐ/HTHT, V1-QKĐ – V2-QKHT/QKĐ*)

(BE chia theo thì của V1)

- E.g. - They **know** that the prisoner **escaped** from the jail. =>
- People **believed** that he **has stolen** money. =>
- They **reported** that the president **had suffered** a heart attack. =>

- E.g. - People *believed* that he **was waiting** for his friend.
=> He *was believed to have been waiting* for his friend.

PRACTICE: It + be ...

1. It was clear that the architects had planned the city very well. => It was clear that ...
(It was clear that the city had been planned very well by the architects.) (DHDL Thang Long – Khoi D 97-98, P.114)

2. It is impossible to do this. => This ...
(=> This **is impossible to be done.**) (DH Ngoai Thuong – 2001-2002, P.72)
=> It + be + adj + to do St ⇔ St + be + adj + to be done

3. It's thought that the accident was caused by human error.
=> The accident is ...

(thought to have been caused by human error.) (HV Ngan Hang Phan Vien TP. HCM – 2001-2002, P. 108)

4. We expected that the report will be published shortly. => The report ...
(was reported to be published shortly) (BT TA 11 – P.172)

5. It is believed that the man was killed by terrorists. => The man ...
(is believed to have been killed by terrorists.) (BT TA 11 – P.211)

6. People think that the company is planning a new advertising campaign.
=> The company ...

(is thought to be planning a new advertising campaign.) (BT TA 11 – P.211)

7. It was reported that the President had suffered a heart attack.
=> The President ... **(was reported to have suffered a heart attack.)** (BT TA 11 – P.211)

8. It is alleged that the man was driving at 110 miles an hour. => The man ...
(is alleged to have been driving at 110 miles an hour.) (BT TA 11 – P.211)

9. It is said that there is a secret tunnel between them. => There
(is said to be a secret tunnel between them) (BT TA 11 – P.211)
10. People have acknowledged that under-funding contributed to the problem.
=> Under-funding
(has been acknowledged to have contributed to the problem. (BT TA 11 – P.211)
11. People say he was once in the French Foreign Legion.
=> He ... **(is said to have been once in the French Foreign Legion.)** (BT TA 12 – P.220)
12. It's common knowledge that he has been in prison several times.
=> He is known
(passive + style: It's common knowledge that ... = It's known that ... = People know that ...) (De TSDH 2002)
13. There had been allegations of drug-taking by members of the team. => It
(have been alleged that members of the team had took/took drugs.
=> **lệch thì**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.118)
14. Everyone's saying the government is about to resign. (**rumoured**) =>
(It is (being) rumoured that the government is about to resign. (BD HSG TA 11 – P.167)
15. She passed the word around that she was looking for a flat. (**known**) =>
(She let it be known that she was looking for a flat.)
(Cô ấy nói với mọi người/ cho mọi người biết là ... (BD HSG TA 11 – P.167)
16. There had been allegations of drug-taking by members of the team. => It
(had been alleged that members of the team had taken/took drugs.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.167)
- allege (v): lý luận, viện cứ, cho rằng - allegation: lý luận, lý lẽ, ...
17. People say that the president wanted to be a film star. => The president is ...
(said to have wanted to be a film star.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.72)
18. The thinking is that he has been targeted to succeed the president. => He is ...
(thought to have been targeted to succeed the president.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.84)
19. Some people say that Siolkovsky invented the space rocket. (**CREDITED**) => ...
Siolkovsky is credited with inventing/ having invented the space rocket. (BD HSG TA 12
- **Credit Sb with (doing) St:** Tin rằng ai đó đã làm được điều gì. => thường được sử dụng trong câu bị động.
=> **Siolkovsky is credited with the invention of the space rocket.** => passive + style
=> **Siolkovsky is credited with being the inventor of the space rocket.** => passive + style
20. Experts think that all dogs evolved from wolves. => All dogs are ...
(thought to have evolved from wolves.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.165)
21. It is said that he escaped to a neutral country. => He ...
(is said to have escaped to a neutral country.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.180)
22. People believe that Leonardo da Vinci foresaw the invention of aircraft. (**BELIEVED**)
=> The invention of aircraft foreseen by Leonardo da Vinci.
(The invention of aircraft **is believed to have been** foreseen by Leonardo da Vinci. (CAE-3)
23. The managing director expects an overwhelming vote of confidence in the board.
=> The managing director believes

(The managing director believes that there will be an overwhelming vote of confidence in the board.)

24. Protective clothing must be worn when working in this area. => It ...

(It is forbidden to work in this area without (wearing) protective clothing.)

25. We did not think it was advisable to cancel the order. => It ...

(It was not thought advisable to cancel the order.)

26. They believe the students were educated in England. **believed**

=> The students educated in England.

(The students **are believed to have been** educated in England.)

27. They think the owner of the house is abroad. => The owner ...

(The owner of the house is thought to be abroad)

28. People say Greek is a difficult language to learn. **said**

=> Greek difficult language to learn.

(Greek **is said to be a** difficult language to learn.)

29. It's been reported that the chancellor is very satisfied with his visit to Japan.

=> The chancellor ...

(The chancellor **has been reported to be very satisfied with his visit to Japan.**)

30. Nobody knows what caused the collapse of the building. => It's ...

(It's **unknown/ uncertain what caused the collapse of the building.**)

31. It is feared this mammal species will be extinct by the year of 2020. => This mammal species is ...

(This mammal species is **feared to be extinct by the year of 2020.**)

33. They say that the political situation in this region is changing.

=> The political situation ...

(The political situation **in this region is said to be changing.**)

34. Experts estimate that most people now have access to the Internet. **IS**

=> most people now have access to the Internet.

(It is estimated/ It's estimated/ It is estimated by experts/ It's estimated by experts)

35. Most people think one of the fiercest zoo lions has bitten the dog.

=> The dog is (The dog is thought to have been bitten by one of the fiercest zoo lions.)

36. People say that this novel was written by a very young author. => This novel ... (BTTA 10 – P.77)

37. The man claimed that he had been nowhere near the factory at the time of the break-in. (**to**)

=> The man claimed not near the factory at the time of the break-in.

(The man claimed not **to have been (anywhere)** near the factory at the time of the break-in. (CAE-1)

38. They say that caviare tastes nice. **supposed** => Caviarenice.

(Caviare **is supposed to taste** nice.)

39. People say that the pyramids are worth visiting. **supposed**

=> The pyramids worth visiting.

(The pyramids ... **are supposed to be** worth visiting.)

40. Many people believe that Stonehenge was built as some kind of time-keeping device.

=> Stonehenge

(is believed by many people to have been built as some kind of time-keeping device.)

(26-Gram and Vocab Advanced and Proficiency)

41. It is often said that Shakespeare never revised anything he wrote.

=> Shakespeare ... **is often said never to have revised anything he wrote.** (26-Gram and Vocab Advanced and Proficiency)

42. There were once thought to be canals on Mars. => **It was once thought that there were canals on Mars.** (26-Gram and Vocab Advanced and Proficiency)

43. From what we understand, there was an attack last night in the vicinity of the beach.

=> There is ... **understood/thought to have been an attack last night in the vicinity of the beach.** (26-Gram and Vocab Advanced and Proficiency)

44. It's a widespread assumption that George was wrongly accused.

=> George ... **is widely assumed to have been wrongly accused.** (26-Gram and Vocab Advanced and Proficiency)

7. Have St done ...

E.g.

Form 1: S + have (tense) + St + V(p₂) + (by Sb) ⇔ S + get (tense) + St + V(p₂) (by Sb)

=> Passive

Form 1: S + have (tense) + Sb + V(bare) ⇔ S + get (tense) + Sb + V(to infinitive)=> Active

1. Mr. Pike mended the washing machine for me. => I had ...

(I had **the washing machine mended by Mr.Pike./ I had Mr. Pike mend the washing machine.**)

(Hoc Vien Bao Chi va Tuyen Truyen – Khoi D 97-98, P.312)

2. They are going to repair my car tomorrow. => I ... (BT TA 10 – P.143)

PRACTICE: Have St done

1. He's getting someone to mend the window. => He is having ...

2. The mechanic serviced my car last week. => I ...

3. The builder is going to mend my roof tomorrow. => I ...

(I am going to have/get my roof mended by the builder tomorrow/ I am going to have the builder mend my roof tomorrow./ I am going to get the builder to mend my roof tomorrow.) (DH Da Nang – 2001-2002, P.42)

4. Our house is going to be painted by a local firm. => We are ...

(DH Hue – 2001-2002, P.56)

5. Why don't you get someone to post this letter for me? => Why don't ...

(Why don't you get this letter posted for me?) (DH Ngoai Thuong – 2001-2002, P.72)

6. Jane's car was repaired yesterday. => Jane ...

(DHDL Dong Do – 2001-2002, P.176)

7. I haven't been to a hairdresser's for a long time. => I haven't

(I haven't **had my hair cut for a long time.**) (BTTH TA10 – P. 94)

8. It's time someone repaired your motorbike. => It's time you

(**It's time you had your motorbike repaired.**) (BTTH TA10 – P. 94) => Passive + Subjunctive

9. Could you deliver the goods to my house? (**delivered**) => ...

(**Could I have the goods delivered to my house?** (BTTH 11 – P.19)

10. They are going to rebuild our kitchen next week. => We...

(**We are going to have our kitchen rebuilt next week.**) (BTTH 12 – P.57)

11. I took my car to the garage last Saturday and they repaired it.

=> I had ...

(**my car repaired by the garage last Saturday./ the garage repaired my car last Saturday.**)

(BD HSG TA 11 – P.79)

12. A member of your family can collect your certificate. **have**

=> You by a member of your family.

(You **can have your certificate collected** by a member of your family.)

13. The hurricane blew the roof off the house. => The house ...

(**had the roof/its roof blown off by/because of/ as a result of the hurricane**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.153)

14. They mark our written work in Cambridge. **marked**

=> We in Cambridge.

(We **have our written work marked** in Cambridge.)

15. After the storm the repairs to my house cost me £200. **have**

=> It cost me £200 after the storm. (..... **to have my house repaired**)

16. During the Speaking exam, the examiner fills in your mark sheet. **have**

=> You in by the examiner during the Speaking exam.

(You **have your mark sheet filled** in by the examiner during the Speaking exam.)

17. He arranged for them to send him the book by post. **had**

=> He to him by post. (He **had the book sent** to him by post.)

18. My watch needs to be mended before I take the exam. **must**

=> I before I take the exam.

(I **must have my watch mended** before I take the exam.)

19. We are hiring a specialist to redecorate the flat. (**having**)

(We are having the flat redecorated by a specialist.)

20. Let's ask somebody to take a photo for us. **(have)** => Let's ...

(Let's **have a photo taken/ somebody take a photo for us.**)

21. They are going to do up my room. **have**

=> I'm going to decorated. (I'm going to ... **have my room** decorated.)

22. That's the garage where I left my car last week. **repaired**

=> That's where I went last week.

(to get my car repaired/to get the car repaired/to have the car repaired/to have my car repaired)

23. Can it be true that you're really going to deliver my sofa today?

=> Can it be true that I'm **really going to have/get my sofa delivered today?**

24. One of the others agreed to post my letters for me.

=> I got **one of the others to post my letters for me.**

(or: my letters posted by one of the others)

25. My dentist is supposed to be capping my two front teeth this morning.

=> I'm **supposed to be having my two front teeth capped this morning,**

26. My car really needs servicing.

=> I really **need to (must/have) get/have my car serviced.**

26. Why did you let them go without signing the receipt? => Why didn't you ... **get them to sign the receipt (or: get the receipt signed) before you let them go? (or: before they left?)**

27. The whole of my sister's class spent last weekend redecorating her flat. **(had)**

=> **My sister had her flat redecorated by the whole of her class last weekend.**

28. I can't say I enjoy the teacher reading out my work in front of the class. **(having)**

=> **I can't say I enjoy having my work read out in front of the class.**

29. It's quite simple for a locksmith to copy one or more of your keys. **(copied)**

=> **It's quite simple to have/get one or more of your keys copied (by a locksmith)**

8. Be + Under/On + N: đang được ... : Đây là dạng khá đặc biệt khi chuyển từ câu chủ động sang câu bị động ở các thì tiếp diễn, đặc biệt là các thì ít được sử dụng ở dạng bị động như: HTHTTD, QKHTTD, TLTD, TLHTTD

E.g. - They will have been repairing the road for months. **(under)**

=> ... **(The road will have been under repair for months.)**

*. Some common phrases: **Under construction** (xây), **Under renovation** (cải tạo, phục hồi, trùng tu), **Under review** (xem xét), **Under management** (quản lý), **On trial** (thử nghiệm),...

PRACTICE: Under + N

1. Our new offices are still under construction. => Our new offices are still ...

- be under construction = be in the course of construction: đang được xây dựng (BTTH TA 10 – P.145)

2. They have been renovating the church for over 3 months. **(renovation)**

=> ...- **be under renovation**: đang được phục hồi, cải tạo (BD HSG TA 11 – P.142)

3. The government have been reviewing their immigration policy for some time.

=> The government's

(immigration policy has been under review for some time.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.142)

- Be under review: đang được xem xét lại

- Keep St under review: xem xét cái gì ...

4. A new flu vaccine has been on trial since the beginning of the year.

=> They

(has been trying out/ testing a new flu vaccine since the beginning of the year. (BD HSG TA 11 – P.142)

- Be on trial: đang được thử nghiệm

5. Apparently, the restaurant in town has been bought out by someone else. **UNDER**

=> I hear the restaurant in town

(is under new management/'s under new management)

6. You led me to believe the job was mine if I wanted it. **IMPRESSION**

=> I that the job was mine if I wanted it.

(I WAS UNDER THE IMPRESSION) => Active

9. The Passive Voice with Phrasal Verbs and Idioms

E.g.

1. Thieves have burgled our house. **INTO** => Our house

(has been broken into/'s been broken into (Passive + phrasal verb ⇔ antonym)

2. It happened while they were showing off their collection. **was**

=> It happened while off.

(It happened while **their collection was being shown** off.)

PRACTICE: Phrasal Verbs and Idioms

1. They are letting David out of hospital next week. **(released)**

=> David hospital next week.

(is being released from/ will be released from) (BTTH TA 10 – P.130) => **Phrasal Verbs**

2. His charming manners deceived several people, including me. **(taken)**

=> **(Several people were taken in by his charming manners, including me.)**

- charming (a): duyên dáng, quyến rũ

=> **Phrasal Verbs**

- deceive (v): đánh lừa, lừa gạt

- **take in** (phr.v): tiếp nhận (công việc, con nuôi), thu nhỏ lại (quần áo), hiểu/đánh giá đúng (tình hình), lừa gạt

3. What exactly am I supposed to have done wrong? (**stand**)

=> ... (What exactly do I stand accused of?) => **Phrasal Verbs**

- **Stand accused of doing St = be accused of doing St**: bị buộc tội

(Chính xác là mọi người nghĩ tôi đã làm sai điều gì. => Chính xác là tôi bị buộc tội về điều gì?)

(BD HSG TA 11 – P.156)

4. My little tent looked very small against the mountains. (**DWARFED**)

=> ... **My little tent was dwarfed by the mountains.** (BD HSG TA 12 – P.139)

- **Dwarf** (v): làm nhỏ lại, làm cho lùn tịt

5. A short meeting of the cast will take place after today's rehearsal. (**by**)

=> Today's rehearsal a short meeting of the cast.

(Today's rehearsal **will be followed by** a short meeting of the cast. (CAE-1))

6. The company has a good reputation in the local area. (**highly**)

=> The company of in the local area.

(The company **is highly thought/spoken** of in the local area. (CAE-1))

7. They put Roger in charge of health and safety at the factory. (**MADE**)

=> Roger for health and safety in the factory.

(Roger **was made responsible** for health and safety in the factory. (CAE – 3))

8. Flooding after a heavy storm was responsible for the damage to the bridge. (**CAUSED**)

=> The damage to the bridge after a heavy storm.

(The damage to the bridge **was caused by (the) flooding** after a heavy storm. (CAE – 4))

9. Apparently, they're planning on rerouting the traffic to reduce congestion. **DRAWN**

=> Plans reroute the traffic to reduce congestion.

(**are being drawn up to**) => **plan to do St = plan on doing St = draw up to do St**

10. I wasn't expecting my colleagues to organise a farewell party on my last day at the company.

TAKEN

=> I when my colleagues organised a farewell party on my last day.

(**was taken by surprise/ was taken aback**)

11. His boss turned down his request for a long leave. => His request ...

(His request **for a long leave was turned down by his boss.**) (DHDL Thang Long – Khoi D 97-98, P.114)

12. Since the advertisement, we've had more applications than we can deal with. (**swamped**)

=> ... (**Since the advertisement, we've been swamped with applications.**)

13. The Minister's response really took the interviewer by surprise. (**aback**)

=> **The interview was really taken aback by the Minister's response.**

14. The rain forced the protest march to be cancelled. (**rained**) => **The protest march was rained off. (put off)**

15. There is someone in the office twenty-four hours a day. (**staffed**)

=> **The office is staffed twenty-four hours a day. (bố trí, cung cấp cán bộ nhân viên)**

16. Each new generation is told the secret recipe. (**down**)

=> **The secret recipe** (công thức, bí quyết) **is handed down from generation to generation.** (truyền, chuyển giao)

17. The Trade Centre towers over the surrounding buildings. (**dwarfed**)

=> **The surrounding buildings are dwarfed by the Trade Centre.**

18. The Government's fiscal policy came in for sharp criticism in the press. (**pilloried**)

=> **The government's fiscal policy was pilloried in/by the press.** (bêu riếu)

19. You cannot easily put all this information under one heading. (**subsumed**)

=> **All this information cannot easily be subsumed under one heading.** (gộp vào)

20. The sports centre presents a certificate of attendance to every student when they leave.

=> **All students at the sports centre are presented with a certificate of attendance when they leave.**

(Trung tâm thể thao tặng một giấy chứng nhận tham gia cho mỗi sinh viên khi họ ra về => Tất cả sinh viên đều được tặng (Be presented with St) giấy chứng nhận tham gia khi học ra về)

- **Present St to Sb** (Tặng cái gì cho ai) ⇔ **Be Presented with St** (Ai được tặng cái gì)

21. I don't think they should have pressure put on them to make a decision.

=> I don't think they should be **pressurized into making a decision.**

- **Put pressure on Sb to do St** ⇔ **Pressurize Sb into doing St:** Thúc ép ai làm gì

22. The price is exclusive of airports taxes. => **Airport taxes are not included in the price.**

- **Be exclusive of St:** chưa tính tính, chưa kể

23. I grew up in a little village on the Scottish border.

=> I was **brought up in a little village on the Scottish border.**

24. The letters will have your name printed on them. => The letters will be **printed with your name on** (ở trên, ngoài).

Tên bạn sẽ được in lên các lá thư ⇔ Những lá thư này sẽ được in tên bạn trên đó.

- **Be printed with St:** được in ...

25. An old woman once tricked my father into giving her several hundred pounds.

=> My father was once conned out **of several hundred pounds by an old woman.**

- **Trick Sb into doing St** (lừa ai làm gì) = **Con Sb into doing St** (lừa ai làm gì)

- **Be conned out of St** (bị lừa mất thứ gì)

26. An awful lot has been omitted from the final draft of the agreement. (**out**)

=> **An awful lot has been left out of the final draft agreement.**

- **Be omitted from St = Be left out of St:** Bị thiếu, bị bỏ sót so với ... (một mục quan trọng đã bị bỏ sót so với bản hợp đồng gốc)

27. There were thousands of sunbathers on the beach. (**packed**) => **The beach was packed with sunbathers.**

- **Be packed with Sb/St:** chật ních, đông = **Be crowded with Sb/St**

28. Our founder was given an honorary doctorate in law by Edinburgh University. (**conferred**)

=> **An honorary doctorate in law was conferred on our founder by Edin. University.**

- **an honorary doctorate:** bằng danh dự

- **Confer St on Sb:** trao tặng cái gì cho ai

29. My uncle underwent a five-hour operation to remove the growth that had been diagnosed. (**operated**)

=> **My uncle was operated on (or: They operated on my uncle) for five hours to remove the growth that had been diagnosed. (or: for the growth that had been diagnosed to be removed.)**

- **Operate on Sb (for St):** mổ ai để lấy cái gì ra

30. My watch and traveller's cheques were stolen while I was abroad. (**robbed**)

=> **I was robbed of my watch and traveller's cheques while I was abroad.**

- **Steal St from Sb:** lấy trộm cái gì của ai

- **Rob Sb of St:** cướp đoạt, lấy trộm của ai cái gì

31. The accused claimed he hit the police officer as a result of provocation. (**provoked**)

=> **The accused claimed he was/had been provoked into hitting the police officer.**

- **Provoke Sb to do St = Provoke Sb into doing St:** xúi dục, kích động, chọc tức ai làm gì

32. Both parties ripped the contract to pieces. (**torn**) => **The contract was torn up by both parties.**

- **Rip St to pieces = Tear St up:** xé nát cái gì đó

33. The present came as a complete surprise to me. (**aback**) **I was completely taken aback by the present**

- **Come as a surprise to Sb:** làm ai sửng sốt, ngạc nhiên

- **Be taken aback by St:** sửng sốt, ngạc nhiên vì ... = **Be shocked by St = Be surprised at/by Sb**

34. Trading activities in the war-stricken area have been reduced. (**scaled**)

=> **Trading activities in the war-stricken area have been scaled down.**

- **Scale up/down:** tăng lên, giảm xuống

- **War-stricken:** bị tác động, bị ảnh hưởng mạnh bởi chiến tranh

10. Some Special Structures ...

E.g.

1). **It is Sb's duty to do St** => **Sb + be + supposed to do St**

E.g. - It is your duty to do this homework. => You are supposed to do this homework.

- You are supposed to learn English now. (passive)

=> It is your duty to learn English now. (active)

=> You should learn English now. (active)

- You should be working now.(active) => You are supposed to be working now.(passive)

2). **It is impossible to do St**

=> **St can't be done./ It is impossible for St to be done./**

=> **St is/are impossible to be done.**

E.g. It is impossible to repair this computer. => This computer can't be repaired.

3). **S + recommend/suggest... + V.ing + O => S + recommend/suggest... + that + S + (should) be + Vp2.**

E.g. They recommend building a house. => They recommend that a house (should) be built.

*. Special Cases

1. It is your duty to help him. => You ...

(You **are supposed to help him.**) (CHUYÊN ĐỀ KTDN TP. Ho Chi Minh – 2001-2002, P. 220)

2. He recommends fitting new tyres. (change into the passive voice)

=> He recommends ...

(that new tyres (should) be fitted. (BTTA 12 – P.170)

(recommend/suggest/advise ... + V.ing => Subjunctive Passive)

3. He suggested allowing council tenants to buy their houses. (change into the passive voice)

=> He suggested ...

(that council tenants (should) be allowed to buy their houses. (BTTA 12 – P.170)

(recommend/suggest/advise ... + V.ing => Subjunctive Passive)

4. The attacker made me open the safe. => **I** was ...

(I was made to open the safe by the attacker.)

5. He is making us study hard for the exam next term. => We are ...

(We are being made to study hard for the exam next term.)

6. What do they expect me to do now? **(supposed)** => ...

(What am I supposed to do now?)

7. We couldn't find her anywhere.

=> She was found. (She was **nowhere to be** found.)

8. What particularly impressed me was her excellent command of English.

=> I

(I was particularly impressed by her excellent command of English.) (Hoc Vien QHQT – Khoi D 97-98, P.294)

9. You put in melodrama instead of real drama, don't you? **(replaces)**

=> **Melodrama replaces real drama, doesn't it?**

10. It's difficult to see tickets being bought for a play like this. **(selling)**

=> ...**(It's difficult to see tickets selling for a play like this.)**

11. I applied for the job but was turned down. => My

(My application for the job was turned down.) (Hoc Vien QHQT – Khoi D 97-98, P.294)

12. They returned my keys to me, someone had picked them up in the street. (Passive Voice)

=> **(My keys, which had been picked up in the street, was returned to my.)**

=> Passive + Relative Pronoun (Phan Vien Bao Chi va Tuyen Truyen – P.308)

13. The baby will die if nobody sends for a doctor. => Unless a doctor ...

(Unless a doctor is sent for, the baby will die.) (DH Ngoai Thuong – 2001-2002, P.71)

14. Smoke filled the room. => The room

(was filled with smoke.) (CHUYÊN ĐỀ KTDN TP. Ho Chi Minh – 2001-2002, P. 220)

15. There was poor attendance at the concert. (... **attended.**) =>

(The concert was poorly attended.) => Passive + Style

16. 'You did make a big headway.' — she said to the student.

=> The student was congratulated

(The student was congratulated on having made/ making a big headway.)

17. I was made to study hard when I was at school. => They

(made me study hard when I was at school.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.24)

18. The headmaster didn't praise any students except Jules. => Jules

(Jules was the only student to be praised by the head master.)

19. It is compulsory for all students to leave cash deposit. (**required**)

=> ...(**All students are required to leave a cash deposit.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.26)

20. You can't bring food into this room. **Supposed**

=> You food into this room.

(**are not supposed to bring/'re not supposed to bring**)

21. Climbing without a safety rope is forbidden. => You aren't

(**You aren't allowed to climb without a safety rope.**) (BT TA 10 – P.108)

22. The main focus of the plot is the adventures of two teenagers. (**CENTRED**)

=> (**The plot is centred on the adventures of two teenagers.**)

(Điểm chính của cốt truyện là các cuộc ...)

- Focus on (v.p): tập trung vào - The focus of St: điểm chính/ trung tâm của ...

- Be centred on St: tập trung vào ... (BD HSG TA 12 – P.181)

23. Customs officials are stopping more travelers than usual this week.

=> An increased

(**number of travelers are being stopped by customs officials this week.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.153)

(Tuần này cảnh sát đang ngăn nhiều khách du lịch một cách bất thường. => Nhiều khách du lịch hơn (**an increased number of travelers**) bị cảnh sát ngăn lại vào tuần này.)

24. Oil was slowly coating the edge of the shore. => The edge of the shore

(**was becoming coated with oil.**) (**was slowly being coated with oil**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.180)

- Coat (v): vây quanh, bao phủ, bọc, tráng

- Be coated with St: được bao phủ bởi = Be covered with St

25. The conversation was in danger of wandering into forbidden territory.

=> The conversation was in danger of wandering into topics that ...

(**they were not allowed to talk about.**) (BT TA 10 – P.145)

26. Where do these plates belong? (**kept**) => Where are these ... (**plates kept?**)

27. The students demanded the abolition of the regulation. (**BE**)

=>**The students demanded (that) the regulations (should) be abolished.**) \

=> Passive Subjunctive + Style

- Abolish (v): hủy bỏ, bãi bỏ - abolition = abolishment (n) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.139)

28. Someone has proposed revising the case. (**that**) => It

(**It has been proposed that the case (should) be revised.**)

29. They never made us do anything we didn't want to do. => We

(**were never made to do anything we didn't want to do.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.126)

30. Their teacher is making them study hard.

=> They are ... (**being made to study hard by their teacher.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.195)

31. They plan to repair the bridge this weekend. (**scheduled**)

=> The repair of the bridge place this weekend.

(The repair of the bridge **has been/ is scheduled to take** place this weekend. (CAE-1)

plan to do st = be scheduled to do st: lên kế hoạch làm gì, dự định làm gì take place: diễn ra

32. The author wrote her latest novel while she was staying in Majorca. **during**

=> The author's latest novel stay in Majorca.

(The author's latest novel **was written during her/a** stay in Majorca.)

33. We were all surprised when she suddenly left her job. (**found**)
 => Allwhen she suddenly left her job.
 (All...of us found it surprising.....when she suddenly left her job.)
34. The manager made the employees stay late. **made**
 => The employees by the manager.
 (The employees **were made to stay late** ... by the manager.)
35. Nobody ever told me about it. **never** => I about it. (I **was never told**.... about it.)
36. There were hardly any tickets available for the Saturday matinee.
 => Practically all.....
37. He didn't tell me his name over the phone. **called**
 => He didn't tell methe phone.
 (He didn't tell me **what he was called**.....the phone.)
38. Nobody told us anything about the incident. **were**
 => We about the incident.
 (We **were not told anything** about the incident.)
 (Practically all **(the) tickets for the Saturday matinee had been sold / had gone.**)
39. The dog had rabies, which surprised nobody.
 => Nobody
 (Nobody was surprised of the dog's rabies/ of the dog having rabies / that the dog had rabies.)
40. The workers only complain because of unfair treatment.
 => If the workers
 (**If the workers weren't treated unfairly they wouldn't complain.**) => Condition + Passive
41. The article describes in detail the positive side of technological development.
 => A detailed ... (A detailed description of the positive side of technological development is shown in the article.)
42. The manufacturers said to the investigators that the new drug had no side effects.
 => The investigators(Investigators were told by the manufacturers that no side effects had been found with the new drug.)
43. The family always spent their holidays climbing in the mountains. **USED**
 => The family's holidays climbing in the mountains. (**used to be spent**)
44. All the passengers of the jumbo jet were killed in the crash. => None
 (**None of the passengers of the jumbo jet survived the crash.**)
45. How old do you think this building is?
 => When?
 (When was this building built?/ When do you think this building was built?) (DH Thai Nguyen – 2001-2002, P.86)
46. Nobody knows anything about Brenda's family. (Passive Voice) =>
 (Anything about Brenda's family is not known./ Nothing about Brenda's family is known.) (DH Vinh – 2001-2002, P.90)
47. No one told me about the change of plan. => I (BT TA 10 – P.9)
48. No one has seen Peter since the day of the party. => Peter(BT TA 10 – P.43)
49. The Americans have just recalled their ambassador. => The American
 (**ambassador has just been recalled: trieu tap ve, trieu hoi ve nuoc.**) (BT TH TA10 – P.46)

50. The secretary didn't reply me for ten days. => No reply ...

(from the secretary was said to me for ten days.) (BTTA 11 – P.117)

51. Nobody has paid for the tickets, have they? => The tickets

(haven't been paid for, have they?) (BTTA 11 – P.142) => Passive + Tag Questions

52. Most newsagents these days have ice-cream available all summer. => Ice-cream can ...

(be bought all summer from/in most newsagents these days.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.69)

53. You can buy these gadgets almost anywhere nowadays. **(widely)** =>

(These badgets are widely available nowadays/can be sold widely nowadays. (Ngày nay những đồ dùng này có (được bán) ở khắp nơi.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.69)

- gadget: đồ dùng, máy cái tiến

54. Nothing was done about it. => Nobody..... **(did anything about it.)**

55(*). Businesses are said to be worried about interest rates. **CONCERN**

=> There amongst businesses about interest rates.

(is said to be concern/is apparently concern/'s said to be concern/'s apparently concern (Passive + change from adjective to noun)

56. We watched the men sail the boat into the harbour.

=> We watched the boat ...(sailing (being sailed) into the harbour.) **(26-Gram and Vocab Advanced and Proficiency)**

- Sail: (Trans and Intrans V)

- He managed to sail the boat between the rocks.

- The dingy sailed smoothly across the lake. (xuồng lướt băng băng trên mặt hồ)

57. I dropped the glass and cracked it. => The glass cracked ...

(when I dropped it.) (26-Gram and Vocab Advanced and Proficiency)

58. I added flour to the sauce and thickened it. => The sauce ...

(thickened when I added flour.) (26-Gram and Vocab Advanced and Proficiency)

59. They're selling a lot of copies of that new single. => That new single ...

(is selling a lot of copies (or: is selling well) (26-Gram and Vocab Advanced and Proficiency)

- Sell: (Trans and Intrans V):

- The book *sold* well and was reprinted many times. (= be bought => Not: was sold)

- I sold James my car for \$5000.

- I sold my car to James for \$5000.

61. They made me tell them everything I knew => I was made to tell them everything I knew.

62. Nobody ever let me study the piano at school. => I was not/never allowed to study the piano at school.

63. You have to clean these football boots until they shine.

=> These football boots are ... **to be cleaned until they shine.**

64. When I was a child, I was never allowed to play with the children next door. **(let)**

=> **When I was a child, my family/parents never let me play with the children next door.**

65. We couldn't find our way out of the woods. **(got)** => **We got lost in the woods.**

66. Do you think there's any chance of this new party winning the election? **(get)**

=> **Do you think there's any chance (that) this new party will get elected?**

67. But then everything seems different. **(change)**

=> **But then you seem to change everything. (Or: But then everything seems to change.)**

IX. Tenses and other patterns in the Passive Voice

1. A lot of bread is eaten in England. => The
(**English eat a lot of bread**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.121)
2. I haven't lent my new lawnmower to anybody. => Nobody
(Nobody **has borrowed my new lawnmower from me.**)
3. She doesn't find this course very interesting. **bored**
=> She this course (She **is bored by/with** ___ this course.)
4. Did we send that letter to Mr Thomas? **WAS**
=> Do you know if to Mr Thomas? (**that letter was sent/ the letter was sent**)
5. The garage on the corner usually repairs my car. **HAVE**
=> I by the garage on the corner.
(usually have my car repaired/ usually get my car repaired)
6. The police have cancelled the demonstration. **HAS**
=> The demonstration by the police. (**has been cancelled/'s been cancelled**)
7. The manufacturers had promised better material. **been**
=> Better material by the manufacturers.
(Better material **had been promised** by the manufacturers.)
8. The police are interviewing the suspects. **interviewed**
=> The suspects by the police. (**are being interviewed**)
9. Harry was beaten by his own dog yesterday.
=> Harry's..... (**Harry's dog bit him yesterday.**)
10. The new trend is going to excite people. **excited**
=> People by the new trend. (People ... **are going to be excited** ... by the new trend.)
11. They've already sold all the tickets. **been**
=> All the tickets sold. (**have already been**)
12. The shop didn't know the brand of tea I wanted.
=> The brand (DH Can Tho – Chuyen Ban Khoi D 97-98, P.48)
13. Sally's parents gave her a micro-computer for her birthday.
=> Sally (DH Hue – Khoi D – chuyen ban 97-98, P.180)
14. Jane's parents gave her a nice umbrella on her birthday.
=> Jane (DHDL Phuong Dong – 2001-2002, P. 178)
15. They have built this school and made it more comfortable. => This ...
(This school has been built and made more comfortable.) (DH Ngoai Thuong – Khoi D – chuyen ban 97-98, P.198)
16. He threw the book in a corner and forgot all about it. => The book
(The book **was thrown in a corner and forgotten** (DH Ngoai Thuong – Khoi D – chuyen ban 97-98, P.198)
17. Why didn't you either lock or put the car into the garage?
=> Why was?
(Why wasn't the car either locked or put into the garage?) (Hoc Vien KHQS – Khoi D 97-98, P.284)
18. What marks did the teacher give you for your answer yesterday? => What marks were...?

(What marks **were you given for your answer yesterday?** (DH Da Lat – 2001-2002, P.31)

19. We never saw him in the dining room. A maid took all his meals up to him.

=> He

He **was never seen in the dining room. All his meals were taken up to him by a maid.**) (DH Ngoai Thuong – 2001-2002, P.64)

20. They were carrying the injured player off the field. => The injured

(The injured **player was being carried off the field.**) (DH Ngoai Thuong – 2001-2002, P.72)

21. The fire destroyed the wooden house in a matter of minutes. => The wooden house ...

(DHDL Hung Vuong – 2001-2002, P. 164)

22. Poor quality has caused most of the complaints. **by**

=> Most of the complaints poor quality.

(Most of the complaints **have been caused by** poor quality.)

23. Janet's colleagues gave her a present when she retired. => Janet(BT TA 10 – P.115)

24. People are destroying large areas of forest every day. => (BT TA 10 – P.114)

25. The thief suddenly realized that the police were watching him. (watched)

=> The thief ... (BT TA 10 – P.118)

26. Where will your company send you next year? => Where will you ... ?

27. Don't leave the place until someone asks you to. (**asked**) => Don't ...

(Don't leave the place until you are asked to.) (DHDL Thang Long – Khoi D 97-98, P.114)

28. The car completely destroyed my motorbike.

=> My motorbike ... **was completely destroyed by the car.**

(26-Gram and Vocab Advanced and Proficiency)

29. Second prize was awarded to an unknown author from Patras.

=> An unknown author from Patras ... **was awarded second prize.**

(26-Gram and Vocab Advanced and Proficiency)

30. The judge refused him permission to appeal against the decision.

=> He ... **was refused permission to appeal against the decision.**

(26-Gram and Vocab Advanced and Proficiency)

31. They suggested we try a new method of checking how much we were spending.

=> We ... **were recommended (to try) a new method of checking how much we were spending.** (26-Gram and Vocab Advanced and Proficiency)

32. The way the managing director behaved last night really shocked me.

=> I **was really shocked by the way the managing director behaved last night.** (26-Gram and Vocab Advanced and Proficiency)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 5: THỂ GIẢ ĐỊNH

SUBJUNCTIVE AND UNREAL TENSES TRANSFORMATION (1)

Subjunctives (Các cấu trúc giả định)

- To understand some subjunctive structures after some **Verbs, Adjectives, Nouns** and do sentence related transformation exercises.

*. General Definition:

Thể giả định là cấu trúc trong đó chỉ sử dụng hình thức nguyên thể không “TO” của động từ để nhấn mạnh tầm quan trọng hay tính chất khẩn cấp của sự việc. Thể giả định được sử dụng sau một số **động từ, tính từ, danh từ**.

1) Verbs Followed by the Subjunctive: **Insisting, demanding ...** (khăng khăng, yêu cầu, ..)

Form: S1+ V1 + (that) + S2 + (Should) + (not) + V2(bare) + ...

V1: *advise, demand, prefer, require, ask, insist, propose (đề nghị), stipulate (quy định), command (ra lệnh, chỉ huy), move (đề nghị), recommend, suggest, decree (ra lệnh, quy định bằng sắc lệnh), order, request, urge, vote (bầu, bỏ phiếu, đề nghị), resolve (kiên quyết), dictate (tuyên bố, ra lệnh), intend, petition (kiến nghị) ...*

E.g. -Tom suggested that his friends stay over for the night.

- Sam proposed that Tom telephone his accountant.

- She recommended that he go and see a doctor.

- The manager requested that everyone put their requests in writing.

Form: One's + N + be + that, There + be + N + (from Sb) + that, It + be + N + that

- E.g. - *My advice is that the company invest in new equipment.*
 - *His deep wish is that his daughter go to university.*
 - *It would be a good idea that he not be lazy.*
 - *There is suggestion from the doctor that the patient stop smoking.*
 - *It is recommendation that the vehicle owner be present at the court*

SUBJUNCTIVE AND UNREAL TENSES TRANSFORMATION (2)

Subjunctive Structures: Would rather/Would sooner/Would prefer

- To understand some Unreal structures after like **Would rather, Would sooner and Would prefer ...** and do sentence related transformation exercises.

1. Would rather (=> more common)/ Would sooner:

Form 1: One's preference:

S + would rather/ would sooner + (not) + V(bare) + {than + V(bare)}

- E.g. - I'd rather/ I'd sooner listen to English music (than learn English)
 - I'd rather/I'd sooner not do so much homework.

Form 2: One's preference contrary to the past:

S + would rather + (not) + have + V(p2)

- E.g. - I'd rather not have gone to school yesterday.

Form 3: Wish or Polite request: want someone else to do St at the present:

S₁ + Would rather + S₂ + V(past)/Were (+ V.ing)

- E.g. - I'd rather you did not smoke here./ I'd rather you were not smoking here.
 - I'd rather he were not making so much noise.
 - I'd rather it were spring now.

Form 4: Past wish: want someone else to do St contrary to the past:

S₁ + Would rather + S₂ + had + (not) + V(p2)

- E.g. - I'd rather he had not been so violent to her last night.
 - We would rather you had called last night.

2. Would rather and (would) prefer:

Form 1: **S + Would prefer + Sb + To Infinitive ⇔ S + Would rather + Sb(S2) + V(past)**

- E.g. - They would prefer me not do smoke here. => They would rather I did not smoke here.
 - I would prefer you to leave now. => I would rather you left now.

Form 2: **S + prefer + St + to St ⇔ S + Would rather + St + than + St**

- E.g. I prefer flowers to candies => I would rather flowers than candies.

Form 3: **S + prefer + V.ing + to + V.ing ⇔ S + Would rather + V(bare) + than + V(bare)**

- E.g. I prefer going out to staying at home. => I would rather go out than stay at home.

SUBJUNCTIVE AND UNREAL TENSES TRANSFORMATION (3subjunctive Structures:

As if/ As though – cứ như, như thể, dường như, có vẻ như

- To understand some Unreal structures after like **As if/ As though ...** and do sentence related transformation exercises.

1. Real Present Situation: S + V + as if/as though + S + V(present tenses)

- E.g. - It looks as if he is running from a fierce dog. (situation)
 - He looks as if he has finished the test.

2. Unreal Present Situation: S + V + as if/as though + S + V(past)/Were/(Were + V.ing)

- E.g. - He acts as though he were rich.
- I feel as if I were flying now.
- He talks as if he knew everything about the world.

3. Unreal Past Situation: S + V + as if/as though + S + V

(past perfect or past perfect continuous)

- E.g. - He looked as though he had seen a ghost last night. (He didn't see a ghost.)
- She acted as if she had seen him before.
- He grinned as though he'd been drinking for hours. (He hasn't been drinking for hours.)

SUBJUNCTIVE AND UNREAL TENSES TRANSFORMATION (4)

Subjunctive Structures: It's time/ It's high time/ It's about time – đã đến lúc ...

- To understand the structure after **It's high/about time ...** and do sentence related transformation exercises.

***. Present Advice or necessity: It's (high/about time) + (that) + S + V(past)/Were/(Were + V.ing)**

- E.g. - It's time we left/were leaving now.

SUBJUNCTIVE AND UNREAL TENSES TRANSFORMATION (5)

Subjunctive Structures: Wish/ If only

- To understand the structure after **Wish/If only ...** and do sentence related transformation exercises.

I. General Forms

1. Unreal Present Wishes: S + Wish(es) + (that) + S + V(past)/Were/(Were + V.ing)

- E.g. - I wish I had enough money now. - She wishes she were a millionaire.

2. Unreal Past Wishes: S + Wish(es) + (that) + S + V(past perfect)

S + Wish(es) + (that) + S + Would/Could + have + V(p2)

- E.g. - I wish I had gone to her birthday party last week.
- He wishes he could have passed his exam last year.

3. Future Wishes: S + Wish(es) + (that) + S + Would/Could + V(bare)

- E.g. - I wish I would/could attend her wedding next week.

***. Cấu trúc trên đây với **would** còn được sử dụng để chỉ sự phàn nàn về thói quen gây phiền phức của người khác:**

S + Wish(es) + (that) + S + Would + V(bare)

- E.g. - I wish you wouldn't talk so much in class.
- I wish you wouldn't complain all the time.

***. Note: I wish = If only**

II. Transformation Patterns

1. Sorry + Past Clause ⇔ Wish (often Unreal Past Wishes => I.2)

- E.g. - I am sorry I forgot your birthday. => I wish I hadn't forgotten your birthday.

2. Regret + (not) + V.ing ⇔ Wish (often Unreal Past Wishes => I.2)

- E.g. - I regret not inviting Cathy to the party. **ONLY** => **If only I had invited Cathy to the party.**

3. Want/ Would like + To Infinitive ⇔ Wish (Unreal Present Wishes (I.2) or Future Wishes (II.3 => not often))

- E.g. - I want the baby to stop crying. => I wish ... **the baby stopped crying/ didn't cry.**
- John would like to be an astronaut when he grows up. => John wishes he would be an astronaut when he grows/grew up.
- You are too lazy. The teacher wants you to be more studious. => The teacher wishes you were more studious.
- My parents want me to be a doctor in the future. => My parents wish I would be a doctor in the future.

4. Pity/Shame/Mistake ⇔ Wish (often Unreal Past Wishes => I.2 or Unreal Present Wishes => I.1)

Common forms: It's a pity/a shame/a mistake + (that) + clause

What a pity/a shame/a mistake + (that) + clause

*. Hai câu trúc trên dùng để diễn tả ước muốn ở hiện tại hay quá khứ phụ thuộc vào thì của mệnh đề sau **that**.

- E.g. - It's a pity that you were not here last week. => If only you **had been** here last week.
- It's a pity the car is so expensive. => I wish the car **were** not so expensive.

PRACTICE (Chuyên đề 5)

EX1: Rewrite the following sentences

1. "Let's go for a walk in the park" said Andrew.
=> Andrew suggested that
2. The doctor advised me to rest.
=> The doctor suggested
3. "Why don't you take a holiday?", said Simon. **suggested**
=> Simon a holiday.
4. She demands that the garden should be weeded now. (**insistent**)
=>
5. We really must discuss this again.
=> It's important that
6. May the President live a long time!
=> Long
7. Someone has suggested abolishing income tax.
=> It
8. The students demanded the abolition of the regulation. (**BE**)
=>
9. I would prefer you to deliver the sofa on Friday.
=> I would rather
10. He would prefer you to pay him immediately.
=> He'd rather

EX2: Rewrite the following sentences

1. I prefer Vietnamese food to English food.
=> I'd
2. I prefer beer to wine.
=> I'd
3. The children prefer toys to books.
=> The children would
6. He prefers swimming to walking.
=> He'd
7. She prefers coffee to tea.
=> She'd
8. I prefer his earlier paintings to later ones.
=> I'd
9. No, please don't tell him.
=> I'd prefer
10. I would prefer you not to tell her the truth.
=> I'd

EX3: Rewrite the following sentences

1. She would prefer to share a house with other students rather than live with her parents.
=> She'd rather
2. I don't really want to visit the museum.
=> I'd rather
3. My parents think I should go to university rather than start a job immediately.
=> My parents would prefer
4. I wish I hadn't heard that.
=> I'd rather you
5. Is it better for me to leave?
=> Would you
6. Jack prefers me not to say anything about the missing money.
=> Jack would rather
7. I'd prefer you to get home early tonight. **RATHER**
=> I home early tonight.
8. It will be better for you to come alone. **SOONER**
=> I would on your own.
9. We'd prefer you not to smoke.
=> We'd rather
10. Mauro says he prefers to do his homework on his own. **RATHER**
=> Mauro says that do his homework with other people.

EX4: Rewrite the following sentences

1. I had a feeling that I was talking in the air.
=> I felt as though
2. He spent his money like a prince.

- => He spent his money as if
3. She made up like an actress.
=> She made up as if
4. She cried like a baby.
=> She cried as though
5. Mary dresses up like a queen.
=> Mary dresses up as if
6. My head seems to be on fire now.
=> I feel as if
7. You speak like a prophet.
=> You speak as though
8. They talk like kings.
=> They talk as if
9. Mary dresses up like a queen.
=> Mary dresses up as if
10. I'm over 16 but my parents sometime treat me as though ...

EX5: Rewrite the following sentences

1. He laughs. Perhaps he has done the exam successfully.
=> He laughs as if
2. The house seemed to have been unoccupied for several months.
=> It looked
3. He seemed to have been unemployed for years.
=> He looked
4. He behaves like my father. **(if)**
=> He acts
5. He behaves like the President of the company. **THOUGH**
=> He acts the President of the company.
6. He laughs. Perhaps he has done the test well.
=> He laughs as if
7. The tower seemed to have been built for several centuries.
=> It looked
8. Judging by their behaviour, they are a married couple. **(as if)**
=> They
9. You really should do something about that broken stone in the path.
=> It's time you
10. You really should be able to dress yourself by now!
=> It's high

EX6: Rewrite the following sentences

1. Carlos really should get someone to mend his bike. **(HIGH)**
=> It's his bike mended.
2. The train is due now. **time**

- => It arrived.
3. I think we should go home now. **time**
- => It home now.
4. I think taxes should be increased. **TIME**
- => It increased.
5. Shouldn't she be going home now?
- => Isn't it?
6. I'm sorry I didn't buy a bicycle earlier.
- => I wish
7. I'm sorry that I didn't finish my homework last night.
- => I wish
8. Jack didn't play well in the match yesterday.
- => He wishes
9. I'm sorry I missed your birthday party.
- => I wish
10. Roger was sorry he ate that salad. => Roger wished

EX7: Rewrite the following sentences

1. He's sorry he can't speak English perfectly.
- => He wishes
2. I'm sorry now that I asked her to stay.
- => Now I wish
3. Robert is sorry now that he didn't accept the job.
- => Robert now wishes
4. I bet they wish they had never started that fire. **sorry**
- => I bet they that fire.
5. I am sorry I forgot your birthday. **wish**
- => I your birthday.
6. Maria did not apply for the job in the library and regrets it now.
- => Maria wishes
7. Henry regretted buying the second-hand car.
- => Henry wished
8. Do you ever regret not going to university? (**wish**)
- =>
9. Everyone wished they had listened more carefully to the lecture.
- => Everyone regretted
10. Gail wished she had followed David's suggestions about preparing for the interview. (**doing**)
- => Gail regretted about preparing for the interview.

EX8: Rewrite the following sentences

1. I wish I could have finished my biology project on time. (**ABLE**)
- => I regret not my biology project finished on time.
2. If only I had warned them in time. **regret**
- => I really in time.
3. I regret taking up smoking. **wish**

- => I..... up smoking.
4. Angela regrets not seeing that film. **wishes**
- => Angela that film.
5. I regret that I gave him the money. **lent**
- => If only him the money.
6. I regret not getting married. **wish**
- => I married.
7. He really regretted having taken the car out of the garage.
- => He wished
8. I wish I could have finished my biology project on time. (**ABLE**)
- => I regret not my biology project finished on time.
9. I regret not inviting Cathy to the party. **ONLY**
- => If Cathy.
10. I *would like* the school holidays to be longer.
- => I wish

EX9: Rewrite the following sentences

1. It is not a movie star. She would like to be a movie star now.
- => She wishes she
2. It's a pity he didn't take his doctor's advice.
- => He wishes
3. I'd like to have more time to study, but I haven't.
- => I wish
4. I wish I could play tennis really well.
- => I'd like
5. I'd love to be able to go with you to the opera. (**wish**)
- =>
6. It would be nice to be able to fly.
- => I wish
7. He just won't stop ringing me to tell me about it.
- => I wish
8. I'd like Kevin to stop telling me what to do! **WISH**
- => I telling me what to do!
9. I'd love to know how John is getting on. **KNEW**
- => I how John was getting on.
10. What a pity you failed your driving test.
- => I wish

EX10: Rewrite the following sentences

1. It's a pity it's too late to do anything about it. => I wish there
2. I wish I hadn't sold that old painting. (**pity**) =>
3. It's a pity I can't borrow your car.
- => I wish you would
4. It's a pity you were driving so fast.

- => I wish you
5. It is a shame he had to leave before the end of the show.
=> I wish
6. I wish people had taken their advice. **pity**
=> It's a their advice.
7. Why do you have to complain all the time? (**wish**) =>
8. Unfortunately I've got to work late tonight. => I wish
9. I should very much like to play the guitar. **Wish** => I play the guitar.
10. What a pity I don't know how to dance. **Wish** => I how to dance.
11. It was a mistake for me not to apply for the job. **WISH** => I for the job.
12. What a shame he wasn't able to come. **wish** => I wish come.
13. It was a pity nobody voted in favour of our party. => **I** wished
14. It's a pity you didn't ask us to spend the time with you. => If only
15. It's a pity the car is so expensive. **WISH** => I so expensive.

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 6: MỆNH ĐỀ NGUYÊN NHÂN & MỆNH ĐỀ NHƯỢNG BỘ

CLAUSES OF REASON AND CONCESSION

1. Adverb clauses of reason

a. BECAUSE/LEST + Clause

- Eg: - I couldn't come to class yesterday because I was ill.
- Because the weather was bad, the flight was put off.

***. Lest:** vì e rằng, để ngăn không cho điều gì đó xảy ra

E.g. - He ran away **lest** he (should/might) be seen. => *tương tự cấu trúc giả định*

b. BECAUSE OF/FOR FEAR OF/AS A RESULT OF/AS A CONSEQUENCE OF/ DUE TO/THANK TO/OWING TO+ N/Object Pronoun/V.ING Phrase

- Eg: - I couldn't come to class yesterday because of his illness.
- Because of the bad weather, the flight was put off.

2. Adverb clauses of concession

a. MUCH AS/THOUGH/ALTHOUGH/EVEN THOUGH + Clause

- Eg: - They came to the concert though it was raining heavily.
- Although it is a very hot day, I shall go for a walk.

b. IN SPITE OF/ REGARDLESS OF / DESPITE + N/Object Pronoun/V.ING Phrase

- Eg: - They came to the concert in spite of the heavy rain.
- In spite of a hot day, I shall go for a walk.

3. CÁCH BIẾN ĐỔI TỪ MỆNH ĐỀ SANG CỤM DANH TỪ/ ĐỘNG DANH TỪ trong mđnn và mđnb

1) Nếu chủ từ 2 mệnh đề giống nhau => Bỏ chủ từ, động từ thêm ING:

E.g. *Although Tom got up late, he got to school on time.*

=> *Despite / in spite of getting up late, Tom got to school on time.*

Though he had not finished the paper, he went to sleep. => *In spite of not having ...*

2) Nếu chủ từ là danh từ + be + tính từ => Dem tính từ đặt trước danh từ, bỏ to be

E.g. *Although the rain was heavy, they decided to leave there.*

=> *Despite / in spite of the heavy rain,*

Although the weather was bad, she went to school on time. (Despite)

Tom was admitted to the university although his grades were bad. (Despite)

3) Nếu chủ từ là đại từ + be + tính từ => Đổi đại từ thành sở hữu, đổi tính từ thành danh từ, bỏ be

E.g. *Although He was sick, he joined our trip => Despite / in spite of his sickness,*

Mary could not go to school because she was sick. (Because of)

My mother told me to go to school although I was sick. (In spite of)

4) Nếu chủ từ là đại từ + động từ + trạng từ

=> Đổi đại từ thành sở hữu, động từ thành danh từ, trạng từ thành tính từ đặt trước danh từ

E.g. *Although He behaved impolitely,..... => Despite / in spite of his impolite behavior,*

5) Nếu câu có dạng : there be + danh từ => Thì bỏ *there be*, thêm *the* trước N

E.g. *Although there was an accident, => Despite / in spite of the accident,*

Because there was a big storm, I stayed at home. => Because of the big storm, ...

6) Nếu câu có dạng : It (be) + tính từ về thời tiết

=> Đổi tính từ thành danh từ thêm “the” phía trước.

E.g. *Although it was rainy, => Despite / in spite of the rain,*

Các tính từ và danh từ thường gặp trong mẫu này là: Foggy => fog (sương mù), Snowy

=> snow (tuyết), Rainy => rain (mưa), Stormy => storm (bão)

7) Nếu câu có dạng: Danh từ + (be) + p.p (câu bị động)

=> Đổi p.p thành danh từ, thêm “the” phía trước và “of” phía sau danh từ

Although television was invented, => Despite / in spite of the invention of television, ..

8). The fact that + clause:

*. Phương pháp cuối cùng cũng là phương pháp dễ nhất: thêm *the fact (that)* trước mệnh đề:

Despite the fact that ...,

In spite of the fact that ..., Because of the fact that ...

E.g. *Although he behaved impolitely,.....*

=> *Despite / in spite of the fact that he behaved impolitely,.....*

E.g. 1. *Although Tom was a poor student, he studied very well. => In spite of his poverty,*

2. *Although she has a physical handicap, she has become a successful woman.*

=> *Despite her physical handicap, she ..*

3. *In spite of his good salary, Tom gave up his job. (Although)*

=> *Although Tom got a good salary, ...*

4. *In spite of the high prices, my daughters insists on going to the movies.*

=> *Even though the prices are high, my daughter insists on going to the movies.*

4. Other Structures:

*. Summary: **WH-/How + EVER = NO MATTER + WH-/How = IT DOESN'T MATTER + WH-/How**

a. No matter wh- (who/when/where/why) + S + (May) + V, S + V

E.g. - No matter who you are, I still love you.

- No matter what she says, I don't believe her.

E.g. - Whoever/No matter who he may be, we don't believe what he says.

b. No matter how + (adj/adv) + S + (May) + V, S + V

E.g. - No matter how he tries, he will not succeed.

- No matter how heavily it rains, I go to school.

- No matter how beautiful she is, I don't like her.

E.g. - However rich this man is, he can't support his family.

c. No matter what/Whatever + (N) + S + (May) + V, S + V

E.g. - Whatever/No matter what others may say, you are certainly right.

- Whatever/No matter what he says, no one believes him.

d. It doesn't matter what + S + (May) + V, S + V => Trong cấu trúc này, what được dùng nhiều hơn các từ khác

E.g. - It doesn't matter what he says, he's always your brother.

PRACTICE (Chuyên đề 6)

I. Clauses of Concession: although, in spite of, no matter, ...

1. In spite of all our careful plans, a lot of things went wrong. => Although ...

2. The dog saw him. It always barked at him angrily. (Whenever ...) => ...

3. Although she was angry, she managed to hide her feeling. (despite) => ...

4. My parents find fault with everything I do. => No matter ...

5. You can use it as long as you like, and it won't wear out. => No matter ...

6. I had had no experience of skiing but I quickly picked it up. => Despite my ...

7. I don't really like her, even though I admire her achievement. => Much ...

8(*). Although Peter was the stronger of the two, his attacker soon overpowered him.

=> Despite

9. I tried as hard as I could, but I just couldn't get the money. => No matter ...

10. Cars cause pollution but people still want them. => People still want cars ...

11. It won't make any difference if it rains because we'll still go. => We'll still go ...

12. Although she was frightened, she forced herself to pick up the snake. => Frightened ...

13. In spite of all our warnings, he left camp without taking his rifle. => Although ...

14. The villagers refuse to leave even though their food supply is threatened. => Despite ...

15. Despite his ungainly air he is remarkable agile. => Although ...

16. Although Richard is competent in his work, he doesn't know how to deal with his client.

=> Competent

17. While I strongly disapprove of your behaviour, I will help you this time. => Despite my ..

18. Even though I admire his courage, I think he is foolish. => Much ...

19. You believe that fat people are always jolly, but you are wrong. => Contrary ...

20. Despite her severe disability Judy participated in many sports. => Although ...

21. It's sad, but unemployment is unlikely to go down this year. => Sad ...

22. In spite of their game, the team lost. => Despite the fact ...

23. The affair became public even though they attempted to conceal it. (**despite**) => ...

24. Though my house was cheaper than Norman's, it is bigger and more attractive.

=> Norman's house may

25. Although Johnny Brax drives carefully on public roads, he is a terror on the racetrack.

=> Johnny Brax is a

26. Despite having flue, she insisted on going out. (**yet**) =>
27. Although the weather was changed, the picnic went ahead as planned.(**spite**)
=> The picnic went ahead as planned.....in the weather.
28. In spite of her initial reluctance to take the job, she's got on very well. => Reluctant ...
29. I admit he's clever, but I don't think he'll solve this problem. => However ...
30. He managed to complete the sculpture although his eyesight was failing. => Despite ...
31. Although it rained torrentially all day, we all enjoyed the excursion. => Despite ...
32. However friendly he seems, he's not to be trusted. => Friendly ...
33. Although he was very tired, he agreed to play tennis. => Tired ...
34. Melissa's father was very busy, but he still played with her. => Busy ...
35. In spite of the forecast, it stayed fine. => Although rain ...
36. You can use it as long as you like, and it won't wear out. => No matter
37. Although Judy was severely disabled she participated in many sports. => Despite her ...
38. Even though I admire his courage, I think he is foolish. => Much
39. Despite all their efforts, they couldn't get the old car to start. (**HARD**)
=> No matter, they couldn't get the old car to start.
40. It doesn't make any difference which number you choose –you'll still win a prize.
=> Whichever
41. He couldn't see a way of getting round the problem, however hard he tried. => No ...
42. I don't think the article should be published, although I admit it's interesting.
=> Interesting ...
43. He offered to make a speech, although he did not have much self-confidence. => Despite .
44. It was a difficult choice, but I had to make it. => Difficult
45. In spite of the tight deadline, they manage to complete the project on schedule.
=> Even though
46. Another job may be better, but it will not offer you the same satisfaction. => While ...
47. It doesn't matter who you ask, you'll always get the same answer. => Whoever ...
48. You'll never find a better place to spend a holiday, wherever you go. => No matter ...
49. I like him a lot, but I don't want to marry him. => Much
50. In spite of all her efforts, she didn't manage to get there on time. => Even
51. I very much want to do the job, but there isn't enough money in it. => Much
52. On no account should you tell anyone else about these plans. => Whatever
53. I saw the film although I strongly dislike thrillers. **spite** => I saw the film inof thrillers.
54. Speaking personally, I don't care whether she comes with us or not. **matter**
=> Itwhether she comes with us or not.
55. Although the weather was terrible we had a good time. **spite**
=> We had a good time the terrible weather.
56. Honestly, I don't mind where we go for our summer holidays. **MATTER**
=> Honestly, ----- me where we go for our summer holidays.
57. We went for a walk although it was raining yesterday. **SPITE**
=> We went for a walk yesterday.
58. We are friends although we have disagreements about some things. **DESPITE**
=> We are friends disagree about some things.

59. Although he was able to do the job, he wasn't given the position. **despite**
 => to do the job, he wasn't given the position.
60. The price is very high .There are a lot of customers (**despite**)
61. Mickey is extremely busy, but he often finds time to look in and ask how I am. => Despite..
62. Although we respect Brian's expertise in archaeology, we're not going to employ him this time. => Much
62. Although I tried very hard, I couldn't convince Debbie to deliver a speech. => Try ...
63. Robert warned his wife pretty strongly, yet she refused to listen to his advice.
 => No matter
64. I tried really hard but I failed to solve the puzzle. => Try as
65. She was warned firmly not to use the faulty oven, but she still kept doing so.=> Even ...
66. Although she seems to be very courteous, she can also be very impolite.=> Courteous ...
67. It doesn't matter whether you are an experienced climber or not, mountaineering can still be dangerous.=> However
68. Rousseau painted fabulous pictures of the rainforest although he had never traveled outside Europe. (**spite**)
 => Rousseau painted fabulous pictures of the rainforest traveled outside Europe.
69. When we arrive isn't really important, as long as we get there. (**MATTER**)
 => It really time we arrive, as long as we get there.
70. We would try really hard, but my older sister and I never got on. (**HOW**)
 => No, my older sister and I never got on.

II. Clauses of Reason: Because, Because of, As a result of, As a consequence of, For fear of, Due to, ...

1. My slow progress was due to bad teaching. => As a result
2. I didn't turn on the TV because the baby might wake up. (**FEAR**) =>
3. We were late for the meeting due to the heavy traffic. (because) =>
4. Peter managed to get promoted to the job of Office Manager because he worked extremely hard.=> By
5. She has won several medals. She is swift, intelligent and flexible. (Thanks to) =>
6. As the patient was still too weak, the surgeon postponed the operation. => The surgeon put
7. Mathematics improves the way we think, it is a basic tool of thinking.
 => Since mathematics
8. They decided not to go for the picnic because the weather might be bad.
 => For fear of
9. Crops in low-lying areas have suffered serious damage as a result of flooding. => Flooding
10. I was lost so I asked the way. **because** => I I was lost.
11. The dry weather is killing all the plants in my garden. **dying**
 => All the plants in my garden the dry weather.
12. Because it snowed heavily during the night the motorway is closed. **due**
 => The motorway is closed that there was heavy snow the night before.
13. Redundancy had caused a lot of domestic problems. => Many a.....
14. We had to call the doctor because the baby had a high temperature. (**because of**). =>

15. The factory had to be shut down because of very low output and poor profits. (**due**) =>
16. He is going to step down because of the corruption allegations. (**account**) =>
17. I held my breath for a long while because I was afraid they might discover my presence. (**lest**)
=>
18. Alfred put on his raincoat because he didn't want to get soaked. => For fear
19. He ran away because he was afraid that he might be seen. (**lest**) =>
20. Wage cuts have led to people rioting on the streets. (**as a result of**) =>

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 7: TENSES TRANSFORMATION (1)

(The Present Perfect (Continuous) Tense)

I. Aims

- to know some relationships between the present perfect tense and other points of grammar: comparisons, cardinal and ordinal numbers, the past simple tense and do sentence transformation exercises.

1- The Present Perfect and Comparisons of Adjectives

Form 1:

S + has/ have + never + V(p₂) + (a/an) + Comparative Form of Adjective + N +

⇔ This is the + Superlative Form of Adjective + N + (that) + S + have/has + ever + V(p₂)

E.g. - I have *never* seen **a better** film than that. => This is **the best** film (that) I have *ever* seen.

- I have *never* watched **a more wonderful** site than that.

=> This is **the most wonderful** site I have *ever* watched.

Form 2:

S + has/ have + never + V(p₂) + such + (a/an) + Adjective + N + (before/ as ...)

⇔ This is the + Superlative Form of Adjective + N + (that) + S + have/has + ever + V(p₂)

E.g. - I have *never* seen **such a long film** before/ as that one.

=> This is **the longest film** I have *ever* seen.

- I have *never* watched **such beautiful flowers** before.

=> These are **the most beautiful flowers** I have *ever* watched.

2- The Present Perfect and Ordinal Numbers

Form 1:

S + has/ have + VV(p₂) + Cardinal number + Plural Noun

⇔ This is the + Ordinal Number + Singular Noun + (that) + S + has/have + V(p₂)

E.g. - I have drunk *5 cups* of coffee this morning.

=> This is *the fifth cup* of coffee that I have drunk this morning.

Form 2:

S + has/ have + never + V(p₂) + (before)

⇔ This is the + first time + (that) + S + has/have + V(p₂)

E.g. - I have *never* seen this film before. => *This is the first time* I have seen this film.

3- The Present Perfect (Continuous) and The Past Simple with: *since, for, ago, when, last, the last time ...*

Form 1:

S + V(past)/(started/began to do St/ doing St /leaned to do St) + in .../when .../(... ago)

⇔ S + has/have + V(p₂) (been + V.ing) + since ... (for ...)

Ex I started to play the piano when I was six=> I have been playing the piano since I was six.
- He began teaching English here in 2008. => He has been teaching English here since 2008.
- He started working at MAT High School 7 years ago=> he has been working at..for 7 years.

Form 2: The last time + S + V(past) + was + in .../when .../at ... /(... ago)

⇔ S + **last** + V(past) + **in .../when .../at .../(... ago)**

⇔ S + **has/have + not + V(p₂) + since ... (for ...)**

(Chú ý: nếu sau since không có chủ ngữ thì dùng cụm V.ing hoặc N)

E.g. - The last time I saw my old girl friend was in 2005.
=> I haven't seen my old girl friend since 2005.
- I last saw her when we graduated from university.
=> I haven't seen her since we graduated from ...

Form 3:

S + V(past) + Period of Time + ago (1)

⇔ **S + have/has + V(p₂) + For + Period of Time (2)**

⇔ **It is/has been + Period of Time + since + S + V(past) (3)**

E.g. - This bridge was built for 30 years. => It is 30 years since this bridge was built.

*. Chú ý: Nếu động từ ở công thức (1), (2) ở dạng phủ định thì khi chuyển sang công thức (3) thêm "**last**" trước **V** hoặc sau **Be**

E.g. - It's a long time since he **was last** on T.V. (**not**)
=> He **hasn't been** on T.V for a long time.

4- The Present Perfect and "YET"

E.g. - I haven't received a letter from him yet. = I've yet to receive a letter from him.

5- The Present Perfect and The Past Simple with: When .../ How long ...?

Form: **When did + S + V(bare)?** ⇔ **How long + have/has + S + V(p₂)/{been + V(p₂)}**?

E.g. - When did Derya start working?

=> How long ... **has Derya worked?**

(- Nếu hành động chưa chấm dứt dùng: How long has Derya been working?)

- How long have they been listening to this loud music?

=> When ... **did they begin/ start listening to this loud music?**

Another form: **When did + S + V(bare)?** ⇔ **How long is it since + S + V(past)?**

⇔ **How long ago did + S + V(bare)**

E.g. - When did Derya start work?

=> How long ...**is it since Derya started work?/ How long ago did Derya start work?**

PRACTICE: The Present Perfect

EX1: Rewrite the following sentences using the give words

1. I've never met a more dependable person than Roger. => Roger is

2. I have never seen such beautiful pictures before. => These pictures

3. I've never seen such a bad film as that one. => That's

4. I've never read such an interesting essay before. => This is

5. I have never seen such beautiful pictures before. => These pictures

6. I've never seen a documentary as good as this before. **best**

=> This is the seen.

7. They've never shown such a bad series on TV before. **ever**
=> It's the shown on TV.
8. It's the most beautiful painting I've ever seen. **seen** => I beautiful painting.
9. I've never tasted such good food before. **ever** => It is the tasted.
10. This is the best food I've ever eaten. **better** => I've this.

EX2: Rewrite the following sentences

1. I've been here three times. => It's
2. I'm never going to visit them again. => That's
3. I started to play the piano when I was six. => I have
4. When did you last ride a bike? => How long
5. This is my first game of water-polo. => I
6. Your birthday party was the last time I really enjoyed myself. => I
7. Laura hasn't seen her brother since he left for Japan. => Laura last
8. He learned to drive when he was 18. => He has
9. He hasn't been back to his home village for over 30 years now. => It is
10. Sue has been in Italy for the last three weeks. **went** =>

EX3: Rewrite the following sentences

1. We haven't been to London since 1998. => The last
2. I haven't been to the Fenerbahçe's football match for three years.
=> The last time
3. I last went to the cinema two weeks ago. => I to the cinema for two weeks.
4. It's ages since I went to a disco. => I to a disco for ages.
5. How long has he been in Italy? => When Italy?
6. When she heard the results, Mary began to feel more confident.
=> Since hearing the results
7. Do you have any experience of driving this kind of car? => Have you
8. Nancy hasn't come here since 1999. => The last time
9. Sarah hasn't seen her friends since she left for the United States. => Sarah last ...
10. The parcel has been here for two hours. **Arrived** =>

EX4: Rewrite the following sentences

1. My wait for a bus has lasted thirty minutes so far. => I
2. The last time Nany came here was in 1990. **since** =>
3. I last saw you at Oliver's party. **since** => I
4. The last time I saw him was when I lived in London. **since** =>
5. After seeing the film for himself, my father has stopped criticizing it. => Since
6. John hasn't done any revision since the spring term. => The last time
7. There haven't been such long queues at the cinema since the release of the last blockbuster.
=> Not
8. This is the first time that I have seen an eclipse of the sun. => Never
9. This is my brother's first solo flight in a glider. => This is the first time
10. The school was founded ten years ago. => It is ten

EX5: Rewrite the following sentences

1. Since the start of the rain the protesters were no longer to be seen. **melted** =>
2. I haven't forgone a meal for two years. => The last time
3. No one has challenged his authority before. => This is the first time
4. I've never eaten walnuts before. **time** => It's eaten walnuts.
5. It's a long time since he was last on TV. **not** => He for a long time.
6. The last time I watched it was two weeks ago. **have** => I two weeks.
7. I am afraid there is no time left. **run** => I am afraid we time.
8. The introduction of satellite TV made it possible for people to see many more channels. **able**
=> Since the introduction of satellite TV, peoplemany more channels.
- 9 She has never told me lies before. **first** => It's told me lies.
- 10 I last saw her at the end of May. **since** => Ithe end of May.

EX6: Rewrite the following sentences

1. Sally hasn't contacted me for over six weeks. **heard**
=> I over six weeks ago.
2. My father took up bowling three years ago. **been**
=> My father three years.
3. I have never watched such a boring film. => It's
4. When did Derya start work? => How long
5. Alex has never eaten Turkish food before. => It's
6. They got married ten years ago. => They
7. Miss Jones first came to teach us a month ago. **for**
=> Miss Jones a month now.
8. I have been to this restaurant three times now. **time**
=> This I have been to this restaurant now.
9. I started learning English three years ago. **been**
=> I three years.
10. I haven't seen Joanna for ages. **since**
=> It's been a long time Joanna.

EX7: Rewrite the following sentences

1. This pasta is a new experience for me. **time** => It is I have tried this pasta.
2. James started work here five years ago. **Worked** => James five years.
3. I've never read such a bad book. **I** => It's the read.
4. Bob last saw Mary in 1980. **Seen** => Bob 1980.
5. I haven't visited Oslo since 1998. => The last time
6. Have you always wanted to become a teacher of English? => Have you been?
7. I have never read such an interesting article about space exploration. **first time** => It
8. The last time it rained was a month ago. => It a month.
9. She has never been on night duty before. => It's the firston night duty.
10. Jack started playing the drums five hours ago. => Jack five hours.

EX8: Rewrite the following sentences

1. I bought this tape recorder in September.

=> I have September.

2. My neighbours have been married for ten years.

=> My neighbours ten years ago.

3. When did you start learning English?

=> How long English?

4. Michael learned how to sing when he was small.

=> Michael has since he was small.

5. When did it start snowing? => How long snowing?

6. It's a long time since I saw them.

=> I a long time ago.

7. She stopped playing volleyball when she broke her wrist.

=> She hasn't she broke her wrist.

8. I've never eaten this before.

=> It's the first timethis.

9. They bought their house five years ago.

=> They have for five years.

10. Jack met Ian in 1988.

=> Jack and Ian each other since 1988.

EX9: Rewrite the following sentences

1. When did you take up golf? => How longplaying golf?

2. They arrived half an hour ago. => Theyhalf an hour.

3. When did Jim go out? => Howout?

4. The last time I stayed in London was in 1984. (**since 1984**) => ...

5. This place has been unoccupied for fifty years. => It's fifty years ...

6. She is still working on her homework. **stopped** =>

7. My parcel hasn't arrived yet. **received** => I still my parcel.

8. The tennis players' match is still going on. **finished** => The tennis players yet.

9. Gina is still in London. => Gina hasn't London yet.

10. Linda is still single. => as yet.

TENSES TRANSFORMATION (2)

(The Past Perfect (Continuous) Tense)

I. Aims

- to know some relationships between the past perfect tense and other points of grammar: comparisons, cardinal and ordinal numbers, the past simple tense and do sentence transformation exercises.

II. Teaching Aids

- handouts of the brief theory, examples and exercises related to the topic.

III. Content

- The Past Perfect Tense, Comparisons, Cardinal and Ordinal Numbers, and The Past Simple Tense

- Transformation Exercises related to the above

IV. Procedure

- T. presents the following main contents item by item and notices Sts that other Relationships in The Past Perfect result from these contents. (T. should compare with the present, Maybe it is not necessary to set form but give examples.)

1- The Past Perfect and Comparisons of Adjectives

Form 1:

S + had + never + V(p₂) + (a/an) + Comparative Form of Adjective + N + (than + that) (before) ⇔ This/It/That was the + Superlative Form of Adjective + N + (that) + S + had + ever + V(p₂)

E.g. - I had *never* seen a **better** film than that.

=> This was **the best** film (that) I had *ever* seen.

- I had *never* watched a **more wonderful** site than that.

=> This was **the most wonderful** site I had *ever* watched.

Form 2:

S + had + never + V(p₂) + such + (a/an) + Adjective + N + (before/ as ...)

⇔ This was the + Superlative Form of Adjective + N + (that) + S + had + ever + V(p₂)

E.g. - I had *never* seen **such a long film** before/ as that one.

=> This was **the longest film** I had *ever* seen.

- I had *never* watched **such beautiful flowers** before.

=> These were **the most beautiful flowers** I had *ever* watched.

2- The Past Perfect and The Past Simple

Form 1: Ordinal number (often: never and the first time)

S + had + never + V(p₂) + (before)

⇔ **This/It/That was the + first time + (that) + S + had + V(p₂)**

E.g. - I had *never* seen this film before.

=> *This was the first time* I have seen this film.

Form 2: : After, Before, By the time, When, Until, ...

S + had + never + V(p₂) + (before) ⇔ This/It/That was the + first time + (that) + S + had

E.g. - I had *never* seen this film before.

=> *This was the first time* I have seen this film.

Form 3:

S + had + V(p₂) + For + Period of Time (1)

⇔ **It was + Period of Time + since + S + V(past) (2)**

E.g. - This bridge had been built for 30 years. => It was 30 years since this bridge was built.

*. Chú ý: Nếu động từ ở công thức (1), (2) ở dạng phủ định thì khi chuyển sang công thức (3) thêm "**last**" trước **V** hoặc sau **Be**

E.g.- It was a long time since he **was last** on T.V => He **hadn't been** on T.V for a long time.

- She hadn't had a relapse for six months. => It was **six months since she last had a relapse.**

Form 4:

First + S + V1(past) + and then + S + V2(past) (First may be after V1(past))

⇔ **S + V2(past) + After + S + had + V1(p₂) / After + S + had + V1(p₂) + S + V2(past)**

E.g. - She did her homework first, and then she watched films. => She ...

- He gave me the money first, and then he left. **after**

=> He left**after he had given me/after giving me**..... the money.

PRACTICE

The Past Perfect

EX10: Rewrite the following sentences

1. It was the coldest winter they had ever had. => They ...
2. David went home before I arrived. => When I arrived ...
3. The judges had never seen a prettier flowers display. => It was ...
4. I met him for the first time in 1997. => I had not ...
5. She went to the zoo last year and that is where she saw a real tiger for the first time.
=> Before ...
6. The plane took off before we arrived at the airport. => By the time ...
7. Sam played tennis yesterday and it was his first game. **never** => ...
8. Mac Kenzie wrote four best-sellers before he was twenty. **By the age**=> ...
9. After four years abroad, Mr. Brown returned home as an excellent engineer.
=> After Mr. Brown ...
10. David left the party before we arrived there. => When ...

EX11: Rewrite the following sentences

1. Mozart wrote more than 600 pieces of music before he was 35. => By the age ...
2. Jack left the office before I arrived there. (**when**) => ...
3. After twenty-five years of hard work, he made a decision to retire. => After he ...

4. I didn't see her again for five years. (**before**) => Five years ...
5. The train left before he got to the station. => By the time ...
6. She hadn't had a relapse for six months. => It was ...
7. He gave me the money first, and then he left. **After** => He left the money.
8. Pat hadn't been to Milan before. **Visit** => It _____ Milan.
9. They were still playing cricket after two hours. **been**
=> They for two hours.
10. No sooner had the witness begun to speak than the judge interrupted her.
=> The minute ...

(Time Clauses)

I. Aims

- to know some relationships of the tenses in Time Clauses and do sentence transformation exercises.

II. Teaching Aids

- handouts of the brief theory, examples and exercises related to the topic.

III. Content

- Structures of Time Clauses: tenses, conjunctions or adverbs of time
- Transformation Exercises related

IV. Procedure

- T. presents the following main contents item by item.

TIME CLAUSES

1. When

- When/As (As có thể thay thế cho When nhưng thường được dùng khi nói về các hành động quá khứ đơn)

E.g. - **When** I meet him, I'll call you.

- **When** I was young, I liked to/used to eat ice-cream.

- **When** I arrived to the station, the train had already left. (= before)

- I was teaching **when** he entered the room.

Note: Không dùng **will** sau when trong mệnh đề thời gian chỉ tương lai.

2. While

E.g. - While we were studying, they were playing video games.

- While + clause = During + N

E.g. - While I was sitting at the café, I saw him.

- While we were having lunch yesterday, he came. = During our lunch yesterday, he came.

3. Once = As soon As = Immediately = The moment = The minute

E.g. - Once I finish/have finished my exercises, I will go out.

- As soon as it gets warmer, the spring flowers will bloom. => The moment ...

(The moment **it gets warmer, the spring flowers will bloom.**)

4. Before/By/ By the time/ By the end of ...

- Before + past time/past clause + QKHT/QKHTTD

By + past time = By the time + past clause + QKHT/QKHTTD

E.g. - By the time/Before I had lunch yesterday, I had done 5 exercises.

- By 2000, he had been working for that company for 15 years.

- Before/By (the end of) + future time + TLHT/TLHTTD (for ...)

E.g. - Before 2016, we will have finished high school. (= By the end of 2016, we ...)

- By the end of 2015, we will have been learning at MAT high school for nearly 3 years.

- Before/ By the time + HTĐ(tl) + TLHT/TLHTTD (for ...)

E.g. - By the time /Before you come back, I will have finished my letter.

- By the time/ Before you arrive there, you will have been traveling for 12 hours.

*. Mệnh đề/ Cụm từ **Before/ By ...** có thể đứng sau

E.g. - I'll have retired before I am 40.

5. After

- After (= Once/As soon as) + HTHT/HTĐ(tl) + TLĐ:

E.g. After you have finished your exercises, we will go for a walk.

- After + QKHT + QKĐ: After I had brushed, I went to bed.

6. Until/ Not ... until

E.g. - I didn't recognize her until she came into the light.

=> Not until she came into the light did I recognize her.

- I will wait here until he comes.

PRACTICE

EX12: Rewrite the following sentences

1. You will start to feel better as soon as you take this medicine.

=> The moment ...

2. Mats promised to ring as soon as he got home. (**MOMENT**)
=> Mats said that he got home.
3. My decision to get up and dance coincided with the band's decision to stop playing.
=> The moment ...
4. The teacher came in and everyone stopped talking. (**when**)
=> ...
5. Let's have lunch after our game of mini-golf. (**we've**)
=> ...
6. Come and see me anytime you like. (**whenever**)
=> ...
7. The clock struck, and immediately the doors opened. (**as soon as**)
=> ...
8. You should retire yourself, or you could be too old. (**before**)
=> ...
9. I'm going to retire, and I shall go round the world. (**as soon as**)
=> ...
10. He did military service, then he went to university. (**after**)
=> ...

EX13: Rewrite the following sentences

1. He'll settle down. Then his performance will improve. (**once**)
=> ...
2. During the oil refinery strike, there were enormous petrol queues. (**while**)
=> ...
3. They'll soon find out what she's been doing.
=> It won't ...
4. When I get home, I'm going to have a shower straightaway. (**soon**)
=> ...
5. We will not see each other again before I go.
=> This will be the last time ...
6. I'm sure Jemma is going to become a famous model one day. (**matter**)
=> I think it's only Jemma becomes a famous model.
7. By the end of the month, it will be two years since Hendrik came to England. (**FOR**)
=> By the end of the month, Hendrik two years.
8. I have arranged a brief meeting with him at 5 pm. **seeing**
=> I at 5 pm.
9. I'll finish this job and then I'll phone you back. **soon**
=> I'll phone you back this job.
10. Our team regularly loses matches here. **losing**
=> Our team here.

EX14: Rewrite the following sentences

1. Well-known artists are regular visitors to his workshop. **visit**
=> Well-known artists workshop.
20. There are few weekends when Steve isn't fishing. **always**
=> Steve at weekends.
3. You should ask for some medical support as soon as you reach the nearest town.
=> Immediately ...
4. Jane doesn't often see Mike. **seldom**
=> Jane Mike.
5. Is she Australian? **come**
=> Australia?
6. I don't think I'll go out on Saturday. **stay**
=> I think on Saturday.
7. Their wedding takes place on Saturday. **married**
=> They on Saturday.
8. As soon as he came in, he switched on the television. **immediately**
=> He came in the television.
9. I'm very sorry sir, but all the places have been booked. (... **left.**)
=> ...
10. Is that the place where you lived before? **use**
=> Did you place?

EX15: Rewrite the following sentences

1. Before I moved in I had no one to talk to. **use**
=> Before I moved in I anyone to talk to.
2. She doesn't live there any more, I believe. **used**
=> She , I believe.
3. Whenever I told her that story she always laughed a lot. **would**
=> I used to tell her that story and a lot.
4. Weeks passed as Karen lay in hospital. (**for**)
=> ...
5. In the middle of our lunch there was a knock at the door.
=> When ...
6. Their game of badminton is always on Tuesday.
=> They ...
7. There aren't many people waiting at the bus stop. (**few**)
=> Only ...
8. I met her during my stay in Paris last summer. (**while**)
=> ...
9. During my dinner, the phone rang.
=> While ...
10. In the middle of our sleep, there was a knock at the door.
=> When ...

EX16: Rewrite the following sentences

1. I've arranged to have next week off work. (**I'm ...**)

=> ...

2. This time tomorrow we'll be in the air over the Atlantic. (**flying**)

=> ...

3. None of the guests will still be here tomorrow. (**all**)

=> ...

4. We'll get to the theater after the beginning of the play. (**by the time**)

=> ...

5. Anderson is the winner of this year's Grand Prix! (**won**)

=> ...

6. When I finally go into hospital, I'll have had a ten-month wait. (**been**)

=> ...

7. There's a party at Mary's house next Sunday. (**having**) => ...

8. Our twenty-fifth wedding anniversary is at the end of next year. (**married**)

=> ...

9. The builders don't think they will still be doing the renovations at the end of next week. (**hope**)

=> ...

10. After this, I won't give you any more warnings. **last**

=> This is give you.

ANSWER KEY

The Present Perfect

EX1: Rewrite the following sentences using the give words

1. I've never met a more dependable person than Roger.

=> Roger is ...

(Roger is **the most dependable person I've ever met**. DHDL Dong Do – Khoi D 97-98, P.67)

2. I have never seen such beautiful pictures before.

=> These pictures ...

(These pictures **are the most beautiful ones I've ever seen.**) (CHUYÊN ĐỀ Ban Cong QTKD – 2001-2002, P. 218)

3. I've never seen such a bad film as that one.

=> That's ...

(That's **worst film I've ever seen.** TTA 10 – P.77)

4. I've never read such an interesting essay before.

=> This is ...

(This is **the most interesting essay I've ever read.** TTA 10 – P.102)

5. I have never seen such beautiful pictures before.

=> These pictures ...

(These pictures **are the most beautiful I have ever seen.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.140)

6. I've never seen a documentary as good as this before. **best**

=> This is the seen.

(This is the **best documentary I have ever** seen.)

7. They've never shown such a bad series on TV before. **ever**

=> It's the shown on TV.

(It's the **worst series they have ever** shown on TV.)

8. It's the most beautiful painting I've ever seen. **seen**

=> I beautiful painting.

(have never seen such a/ 've never seen such a/ have never seen a more/ 've never seen a more)

9. I've never tasted such good food before. **ever**

=> It is the tasted.

(It is the ... **best food I've ever..** tasted.)

10. This is the best food I've ever eaten. **better**

=> I've _____ this.

I've _____ **never eaten/tasted better food than** _____ this

EX2: Rewrite the following sentences

1. I've been here three times.

=> It's ...

(It's **the third time I've been here.**) (DH SP Quy Nhon – Khoi D 97-98, P.248)

2. I'm never going to visit them again.

=> That's ...

(That's **the last time I have gone to visit them.**) (CHUYÊN ĐỀ Ban Cong QTKD – 2001-2002, P. 218)

3. I started to play the piano when I was six.

=> I have ...

(I have **been playing the piano since I was six.** BTTA 10 – P.9)

4. When did you last ride a bike?

=> How long ...

(How long **have you not ridden a bike?** BTTA 10 – P.77)

5. This is my first game of water-polo.

=> I ...

(I **have never played water-polo before.**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.66)

6. Your birthday party was the last time I really enjoyed myself.

=> I ...

(I **hadn't enjoyed myself since your birthday party.** BTTA 10 – P.102)

7. Laura hasn't seen her brother since he left for Japan.

=> Laura last ...

(Laura last **saw her brother when he left for Japan.** BTTA 10 – P.143)

8. He learned to drive when he was 18.

=> He has ...

(**been driving/ been able to drive since he was 18.**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.85)

9. He hasn't been back to his home village for over 30 years now.

=> It is ...

(It is **over 30 years now since he last went back to his home village.**) (HVKHQS – 2001-2002, P. 129)

10. Sue has been in Italy for the last three weeks. **went**

=> ...

Sue went to Italy 3 weeks ago. (BTTA 11 – P.19)

EX3: Rewrite the following sentences

1. We haven't been to London since 1998.

=> The last ...

(The last **time I went to London was in 1998.** TTA 10 – P.77)

2. I haven't been to the Fenerbahçe's football match for three years.

=> The last time ...

(The last time **I went to Fenerbahçe's football match was three years ago.**)

3. I last went to the cinema two weeks ago.

=> I to the cinema for two weeks.

(**haven't been**)

4. It's ages since I went to a disco.

=> I to a disco for ages.

(**haven't been**)

5. How long has he been in Italy?

=> When Italy?

(**did he go to**)

6. When she heard the results, Mary began to feel more confident.

=> Since hearing the results ...

(, **Mary has felt more confident.** => Omit begin, start) (BTTH TA 10 – P.66) (= 3 BTTA 12 – P.8)

7. Do you have any experience of driving this kind of car?

=> Have you ...

(**ever driven this kind of car before?**)? (BTTA 12 – P.8)

8. Nancy hasn't come here since 1999.

=> The last time ...

(Nancy came here was in 1999.) (BT TA 12 – P.8)

9. Sarah hasn't seen her friends since she left for the United States.

=> Sarah last ...

(saw her friends when she left for the United States.) (BT TA 12 – P.8)

10. The parcel has been here for two hours. **arrived**

=> ...

(The parcel arrived here two hours ago.) (BT TA 12 – P.22)

EX4: Rewrite the following sentences

1. My wait for a bus has lasted thirty minutes so far.

=> I ...

(I have been waiting for a bus for thirty minutes.) (BT TA 12 – P.8)

2. The last time Nany came here was in 1990. **since**

=> ...

Nany hasn't come here since 1990. (BT TA 12 – P.23)

3. I last saw you at Oliver's party. **since**

=> I ...

(haven't seen you since Oliver's party.) (BT TA 12 – P.124)

4. The last time I saw him was when I lived in London. **since**

=> ...

(I haven't seen him since I lived in London.) (BT TA 12 – P.241)

5. After seeing the film for himself, my father has stopped criticizing it.

=> Since ...

(my father saw the film for himself, he has stopped criticizing it.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.156)

6. John hasn't done any revision since the spring term.

=> The last time ...

(John did any revision was in/during the spring term.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.68)

7. There haven't been such long queues at the cinema since the release of the last blockbuster.

=> Not ...

(since the release of the last blockbuster have there been such long queues at the cinema.)

(Not since kể từ khi ... không ... = Never (before): chưa bao giờ ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.156)

8. This is the first time that I have seen an eclipse of the sun.

=> Never ...

(before have I seen an eclipse of the sun.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.84)

9. This is my brother's first solo flight in a glider.

=> This is the first time ...

(my brother has flown solo in a glider.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.111)

- **Solo** (a/adv): một mình - glider (n): tàu lượn

10. The school was founded ten years ago.

=> It is ten ...

(years since the school was founded.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.111)

EX5: Rewrite the following sentences

1. Since the start of the rain the protesters were no longer to be seen. **melted**

=> ...

(**Since the start of the rain the protesters have melted away.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.126)

- **Melt away**: tan biến đi, giải tán

2. I haven't forgone a meal for two years.

=> The last time ...

(**I forwent a meal was two years ago.**) (Tôi không đi ăn nhà hàng được 2 năm rồi) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.140)

- **Forgo** (forwent, forgone): Thôi, không

3. No one has challenged his authority before.

=> This is the first time ...

(**his authority has been challenged./ anyone/someone has challenged his authority.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.153)

4. I've never eaten walnuts before. **time**

=> It's eaten walnuts.

(..... **the first time I've ever**)

5. It's a long time since he was last on TV. **not**

=> He for a long time.

(He **has not been on TV**for a long time.)

6. The last time I watched it was two weeks ago. **have**

=> I two weeks.

(I **have not watched it for** two weeks.)

7. I am afraid there is no time left. **run**

=> I am afraid we time.

(I am afraid we **have run out of** time.)

8. The introduction of satellite TV made it possible for people to see many more channels. **able**

=> Since the introduction of satellite TV, peoplemany more channels.

(Since the introduction of satellite TV, people **have been able to see** many more channels.)

9 She has never told me lies before. **first**

=> It's told me lies.

(It's **the first time she has**..... told me lies.)

10 I last saw her at the end of May. **since**

=> Ithe end of May.

(I ...**haven't seen her since**....the end of May.)

EX6: Rewrite the following sentences

1. Sally hasn't contacted me for over six weeks. **heard**

=> I _____over six weeks ago.

(I last heard from Sally over six weeks ago.)

2. My father took up bowling three years ago. **been**

=> My father _____ three years.

(My father **has been playing bowling** for three years.)

3. I have never watched such a boring film.

=> It's ...

(the most boring film I have ever watched.)

4. When did Derya start work?

=> How long ...

(How long is it since Derya started work?/ How long ago did Derya start work?)

5. Alex has never eaten Turkish food before.

=> It's ...

(It's **the first time Alex has ever eaten Chinese food.**)

6. They got married ten years ago.

=> They

(have been married for ten years.)

7. Miss Jones first came to teach us a month ago. **for**

=> Miss Jones a month now.

(has been teaching us/has been our teacher for/has taught us for)

8. I have been to this restaurant three times now. **time**

=> This I have been to this restaurant now.

(is the third time)

9. I started learning English three years ago. **been**

=> I three years.

(have been learning English for)

10. I haven't seen Joanna for ages. **since**

=> It's been a long time Joanna.

(It's been a long time **since I last saw Joanna.**)

EX7: Rewrite the following sentences

1. This pasta is a new experience for me. **time**

=> It is I have tried this pasta.

(It is **the first time** I have tried this pasta.)

2. James started work here five years ago. **worked**

=> James _____ five years.

(James **has worked here for** _____ five years.)

3. I've never read such a bad book. **I**

=> It's the _____ read.

(It's the **worst book I have ever** _____ read.)

4. Bob last saw Mary in 1980. **seen**

=> Bob 1980.

(hasn't seen Mary since)

5. I haven't visited Oslo since 1998.

=> The last time ...

(The last time **I visited Oslo was in 1998.**)

6. Have you always wanted to become a teacher of English?

=> Have you been ...?

(**Have you been interested in becoming a teacher of English?**) (DH SP Quy Nhon – Khoi D 97-98, P.243)

7. I have never read such an interesting article about space exploration. **first time**

=> It ...

(It is the first time I have read such an interesting article about space exploration.)

8. The last time it rained was a month ago.

=> It a month. (**hasn't rained for**)

9. She has never been on night duty before.

=> It's the first on night duty.

(**time she has been**)

10. Jack started playing the drums five hours ago.

=> Jack five hours.

(**has been playing the drums for**)

EX8: Rewrite the following sentences

1. I bought this tape recorder in September.

=> I have September.

(I have **bought this tape recorder since** September.)

2. My neighbours have been married for ten years.

=> My neighbours ten years ago.

(**got married**)

3. When did you start learning English?

=> How long English?

(**have you been learning**)

4. Michael learned how to sing when he was small.

=> Michael has since he was small.

(**learnt how to sing**)

5. When did it start snowing?

=> How long snowing?

(**has it been**)

6. It's a long time since I saw them.

=> I a long time ago.

(**last saw them**)

7. She stopped playing volleyball when she broke her wrist.

=> She hasn't she broke her wrist.

(**played volleyball since**)

8. I've never eaten this before.

=> It's the first timethis.

9. They bought their house five years ago.

=> They have for five years.

(bought their house)

10. Jack met Ian in 1988.

=> Jack and Ian each other since 1988.

(have met)

EX9: Rewrite the following sentences

1. When did you take up golf?

=> How longplaying golf?

(have you started)

2. They arrived half an hour ago.

=> Theyhalf an hour.

(have arrived for)

3. When did Jim go out?

=> Howout? **(long have Jim gone)**

4. The last time I stayed in London was in 1984. **(since 1984)**

=> ...

(I haven't stayed in London since 1984.)

5. This place has been unoccupied for fifty years.

=> It's fifty years ...

(It's fifty years since this place was (last) occupied/ has been unoccupied.)

6. She is still working on her homework. **stopped**

=>

She hasn't stopped working on her homework yet.(BTTA 11 – P.19)

7. My parcel hasn't arrived yet. **received**

=> I still my parcel.

(..... haven't received)

8. The tennis players' match is still going on. **finished**

=> The tennis players yet.

(have not/haven't finished their/the match)

9. Gina is still in London.

=> Gina hasn't London yet.

(left)

10. Linda is still single.

=> as yet.

(Linda has not got married as yet.)

EX10: Rewrite the following sentences

1. It was the coldest winter they had ever had.

=> They ...

(They had never had a colder winter (than than)/ such a cold winter.) (DHDL Thang Long – Khoi D 97-98, P.118)

2. David went home before I arrived.

=> When I arrived ...

(When I arrived, **David had gone home.**) (DH An Ninh – 2001-2002, P.18)

3. The judges had never seen a prettier flowers display.

=> It was ...

(It was **the prettiest flowers display (that) the judges had ever seen.**) (HV Ngan Hang Phan Vien TP. HCM – 2001-2002, P. 108)

4. I met him for the first time in 1997.

=> I had not ...

(I had not met him until 1997/before/by 1997.) (DHDL Phuong Dong – 2001-2002, P. 178)

5. She went to the zoo last year and that is where she saw a real tiger for the first time.

=> Before ...

(**Before she went to the zoo last year, she had never seen a real tiger.**) (BT TA 10 – P.43)

6. The plane took off before we arrived at the airport.

=> By the time ...

(BT TA 10 – P.43)

7. Sam played tennis yesterday and it was his first game. **never**

=> ...

(**Sam had never played tennis before (yesterday).**) (BT TA 11 – P.19)

8. Mac Kenzie wrote four best-sellers before he was twenty. **By the age**

=> ...

(**By the age of twenty, Mac Kenzie had written four best-sellers.**) (BT TA 11 – P.19)

9. After four years abroad, Mr. Brown returned home as an excellent engineer.

=> After Mr. Brown ...

(**had been abroad for 4 years, he returned home as an excellent engineer.**) (BT TA 11 – P.32)

10. David left the party before we arrived there.

=> When ...

(**we arrived at the party, David had left.**) (BT TA 12 – P.8)

EX11: Rewrite the following sentences

1. Mozart wrote more than 600 pieces of music before he was 35.

=> By the age ...

(**of 35, Mozart had written more than 600 pieces of music.**) (BT TA 12 – P.8)

2. Jack left the office before I arrived there. (**when**)

=> ...

(**When I arrived at the office, Jack had left.**) (BT TA 12 – P.23)

3. After twenty-five years of hard work, he made a decision to retire.

=> After he ...

(**had worked hard for 25 years, he made a decision to retire.**) (BT TA 12 – P.57)

4. I didn't see her again for five years. (**before**)

=> Five years ...

(**had passed/ had gone by before I saw her again.**) (BT TA 12 – P.124)

5. The train left before he got to the station.

=> By the time ...

(he got to the station, the train had left.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.111)

6. She hadn't had a relapse for six months.

=> It was ...

(six months since she last had a relapse.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.111) - Have a relapse: bị tái phát lại bệnh

7. He gave me the money first, and then he left. **After**

=> He left the money.

(He left **after he had given me/after giving me** the money.)

8. Pat hadn't been to Milan before. **visit**

=> It _____ Milan.

(It _____ **was Pat's first visit to** _____ Milan.)

9. They were still playing cricket after two hours. **been**

=> They for two hours.

(They **had been playing cricket** for two hours.)

10. No sooner had the witness begun to speak than the judge interrupted her.

=> The minute ...

(the witness began to speak, the judge interrupted her.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.155)

(Khi mà nhân chứng định nói thì thẩm phán ngắt lời cô ấy.)

EX12: Rewrite the following sentences

1. You will start to feel better as soon as you take this medicine.

=> The moment ...

(The moment **you take this medicine, your will start to feel better.**)

2. Mats promised to ring as soon as he got home. (**MOMENT**)

=> Mats said that he got home.

(Mats said that **he would ring the moment** he got home. (CAE-3))

3. My decision to get up and dance coincided with the band's decision to stop playing.

=> The moment ...

(I decided to get up and dance, the band decided to stop playing.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.195)

=> The moment ... **(I got up and danced, the band stopped playing.)**

4. The teacher came in and everyone stopped talking. (**when**)

=> ...

(When the teacher came in, everyone stopped talking. (BT TA 12 – P.257)

5. Let's have lunch after our game of mini-golf. (**we've**)

=> ...

(Let's have lunch after we've played mini-golf./ after we've had a game of mini-golf.

(BT TA 12 – P.257)

6. Come and see me anytime you like. (**whenever**)

=> ...

(Come and see me whenever you like. (BT TA 12 – P.257)

7. The clock struck, and immediately the doors opened. **(as soon as)**

=> ...

(As soon as the clock struck, the doors opened. (BT TA 12 – P.257)

8. You should retire yourself, or you could be too old. **(before)**

=> ...

(You should retire yourself before you are too old. (BT TA 12 – P.257)

9. I'm going to retire, and I shall go round the world. **(as soon as)**

=> ...

(As soon as I retire, I shall go round the world. (BT TA 12 – P.257)

10. He did military service, then he went to university. **(after)**

=> ...

(After he had done military service, he went to university. (BT TA 12 – P.257)

EX13: Rewrite the following sentences

1. He'll settle down. Then his performance will improve. **(once)**

=> ...

(Once he has settled down, his performance will improve. (settle down: ổn định, bình tĩnh) (BT TA 12 – P.257)

2. During the oil refinery strike, there were enormous petrol queues. **(while)**

=> ...

While the oil refinery strike was going on, there were enormous petrol queues (hàng, lối, ...). (strike: gặt dầu) (BT TA 12 – P.257)

3. They'll soon find out what she's been doing. => It won't ...

(be long before they find out what she's been doing. => Sẽ không lâu trước khi họ phát hiện ra những gì cô ấy đang làm.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.69)

4. When I get home, I'm going to have a shower straightaway. **(soon)**

=> ...

(As soon as I get home, I'm going to have a shower straightaway.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.155)

5. We will not see each other again before I go. => This will be the last time ...

(we see each other before I go.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.111)

6. I'm sure Jemma is going to become a famous model one day. **(matter)**

=> I think it's only Jemma becomes a famous model.

(I think it's only **a matter of time before** Jemma becomes a famous model. (CAE-2)

7. By the end of the month, it will be two years since Hendrik came to England. **(FOR)**

=> By the end of the month, Hendrik two years.

(By the end of the month, Hendrik **will have been in/come to England for** two years. (CAE-3)

8. I have arranged a brief meeting with him at 5 pm. **seeing** => I at 5 pm.

(I ... **am seeing him briefly** ... at 5 pm.)

9. I'll finish this job and then I'll phone you back. **soon**

=> I'll phone you back this job. (I'll phone you back ...**as soon as I finish** ... this job.)

10. Our team regularly loses matches here. **losing** => Our team here.
(Our team ... **is/are always losing matches** ... here.)

18. Our neighbour says he definitely won't return the ball. **keeping**

=> Our neighbour says he the ball.

(Our neighbour says he ... **is definitely keeping** ... the ball.)

EX14: Rewrite the following sentences

1. Well-known artists are regular visitors to his workshop. **visit**

=> Well-known artists workshop.

(Well-known artists **regularly visit his** workshop.)

20. There are few weekends when Steve isn't fishing. **always**

=> Steve at weekends.

(Steve **nearly/almost always goes fishing** at weekends.)

3. You should ask for some medical support as soon as you reach the nearest town.

=> Immediately ...

(Immediately **you reach the nearest town, you should ask for some medical support.**)

4. Jane doesn't often see Mike. **seldom**

=> Jane Mike.

(Jane**seldom sees**.... Mike.)

5. Is she Australian? **come**

=> _____ Australia?

(**Does he come from** _____ Australia?)

6. I don't think I'll go out on Saturday. **stay**

=> I think _____ on Saturday.

(I think **I will stay in** _____ on Saturday.)

7. Their wedding takes place on Saturday. **married**

=> They _____ on Saturday.

(They **will get/are getting married** _____ on Saturday.)

8. As soon as he came in, he switched on the television. **immediately**

=> He came in _____ the television.

(He came in **and immediately switched on** _____ the television.)

9. I'm very sorry sir, but all the places have been booked. (... **left**.)

=> ...

(**I'm very sorry sir, but there are no/ we have no free places** left.)

10. Is that the place where you lived before? **use**

=> Did you place?

(Did you **use to live in that** place?)

EX15: Rewrite the following sentences

1. Before I moved in I had no one to talk to. **use**

=> Before I moved in I anyone to talk to.

(Before I moved in I **didn't use to have** anyone to talk to.)

2. She doesn't live there any more, I believe. **used**

=> She , I believe.

(She **used to live there**, I believe.)

3. Whenever I told her that story she always laughed a lot. **would**

=> I used to tell her that story and a lot.

(I used to tell her that story and **she would always laugh** a lot.)

4. Weeks passed as Karen lay in hospital. (**for**)

=> ...

(**Karen lay in hospital for weeks.**) (BT TA 12 – P.22) => Sự việc đã kết thúc trong qk => không dùng thì ht ht.

5. In the middle of our lunch there was a knock at the door.

=> When ...

(BT TA 10 – P.9)

6. Their game of badminton is always on Tuesday.

=> They ...

(BT TA 10 – P.9)

7. There aren't many people waiting at the bus stop. (**few**)

=> Only ...

(**a few people are waiting at the bus stop.**) (BT TA 10 – P.112)

8. I met her during my stay in Paris last summer. (**while**)

=> ...

(**I met her while I was staying in Paris last year.**) (BT TA 11 – P.19)

9. During my dinner, the phone rang. => While ...

(**I was having dinner, the phone rang.**) (BT TA 12 – P.8)

10. In the middle of our sleep, there was a knock at the door.

=> When ...

(**we were sleeping, there was a knock at the door.**) (BT TA 12 – P.8)

EX16: Rewrite the following sentences

1. I've arranged to have next week off work. (**I'm ...**)

=> ...

(**I'm having/ going to have next week off work.**) (BT TA 12 – P.22)

2. This time tomorrow we'll be in the air over the Atlantic. (**flying**)

=> ...

(**This time tomorrow we will be flying over the Atlantic.**) (BT TA 12 – P.22)

3. None of the guests will still be here tomorrow. (**all**)

=> ...

(**All of the guests will have left here/gone by tomorrow.**) (BT TA 12 – P.22)

4. We'll get to the theater after the beginning of the play. (**by the time**)

=> ...

(By the time we get to the theater, the play will have begun.) (BT TA 12 – P.22)

5. Anderson is the winner of this year's Grand Prix! (**won**)

=> ...

(Anderson has won this year's Grand Prix.) (BT TA 12 – P.22)

6. When I finally go into hospital, I'll have had a ten-month wait. (**been**)

=> ...

When I finally go into hospital, I'll have been waiting for ten months. (BT TA 12 – P.22)

7. There's a party at Mary's house next Sunday. (**having**) => ...

(Mary is having a party at her house next Sunday.) (BT TA 12 – P.23)

8. Our twenty-fifth wedding anniversary is at the end of next year. (**married**)

=> ...

(We will have been married for twenty five years by the end of next year.) (BT TA 12 – P.23)

9. The builders don't think they will still be doing the renovations at the end of next week. (**hope**)

=> ...

(The builders hope to have finished the renovations by the end of next week.) (Những người thợ xây không nghĩ rằng đến cuối tuần tới họ vẫn đang còn làm công việc cải tạo công trình. => ... hi vọng sẽ hoàn thành việc cải tạo công trình vào cuối tuần tới.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.104)

10. After this, I won't give you any more warnings. **last**

=> This is give you.

(..... the last warning I'll / I shall)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 7: CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN

CONDITIONS AND CONDITIONAL STRUCTURES

Basic Conditions, Mixed Conditions, Inversion with Conditions, Other Conditional Phrases/Structures

I. Aims

- To understand 3 Types of Basic Conditions, Rules of Inversion with Conditions and some other conditional structures ... and do related sentence transformation exercises.

II. Teaching Aids

- Handouts

III. Procedure

- T. presents the following contents item by item, eliciting examples, ...

1. Basic Conditions, Mixed Conditions: Type 0, Type 1, Type 2, Type 3, Type 2-3, Type 3-2

E.g. 1. If you want my advice, I would forget about buying a new house. => If I ...

(DHDL Van Hien – 2001-2002, P. 188)

2. It may rain, but don't worry. I'll give you a lift. **(If)** => ...

(If it rains, I'll give you a lift.) (DH Thai Nguyen – 97-98, P.259)

2. Inversion with Conditions

Type 1: Should + S + V(bare), S + Will/Shall/Can/May + V(bare)

Type 2: Were + S + Complement/ To Infinitive, S + Would/Should/Could/Might + V(bare)

Type 3: Had + S + V(p2), S + Would/Should/Could/Might + have + V(p2)

Type 2-3: Were + S + Complement/ To Infinitive, S + Would/Should/Could/Might + have + V(p2)

Type 3-2: Had + S + V(p2), S + Would/Should/Could/Might + V(bare)

E.g. (Elicit from part 1)

3. Other Conditional Structures

***. But for/Without/If it hadn't been for/ Had it not been for/There hadn't been + N, S + Would have + V(p2)**

If it weren't for/Were it for/There were not/There was not + N, S + would + V(bare)

***. Note: Mixed structures**

E.g. If you hadn't helped me, I would not have finished this assignment.

=> But for/Without/If it hadn't been for/ Had it not been for *your help*, I would not have finished this assignment.

***. Imperative + and ...**

- Miss another class and you'll fail. ⇔ If you miss another class, you'll fail

***. Otherwise, or (else), so long as/ as long as, provided (that), providing (that), suppose (that), supposing (that), on the condition that, ...**

- Imperative, + or else/otherwise + S + will + V(bare) => Oft. Type 1

E.g. - Turn the heat down or it'll burn. ⇔ If you don't turn the heat down, it'll burn.

- Shut the windows, or it'll be too cold in here. ⇔ If you don't shut the windows, it'll be too cold in here.

- We'll go *as long as/ so long as* the weather is good.

***. In case**

E.g. - Take your umbrella in case it rains. (**not: it may rain, it might rain**)

In Case thường được viết lại từ một tình huống thông thường, ít mang tính điều kiện hơn các cấu trúc khác

E.g. - A phrasebook's a good idea because you might need to ask for directions. **case**

=> A phrasebook's a good idea ask for directions.

(A phrasebook's a good idea **in case you need to** ask for directions.)

***. Unless = If ... not**

E.g. - If you don't hurry, you will be late. ⇔ Unless you hurry, you will be late.

- If you learn hard, you will not fail. ⇔ Unless you learn hard, you will fail.

PRACTICE

EX I. Rewrite the following sentences (Basic Conditions)

1. She met Mike when she went to Spain for her holiday last year.

=> She wouldn't ...

2. If you want my opinion, it would be a good idea to stop eating so many sweets.

=> If I ...

5. I think you should tell the police about the accident. => If I ...

6. You'll avoid waiting by booking a table in advance. => If ...

8. Throw a stone into water and it sinks. => If ...

9. Since you haven't finished your homework, you can't come with them.

=> If ...

10. You're tired because you stayed up very late last night. (earlier) => ...

10. Perhaps nobody else wants to make friends with her so I might write to her.

=> If nobody else ...

11. You can't make a cake without flour. **(have)** => Unless you ...

12. We haven't got any money left so we can't have dinner. **(some)** => If we ...

13. You should give up drinking to protect your health. **(would)**

=> If you improve your health.

14. Maybe I could go to Singapore to visit you. **(went)** => If I ... visit you.

15. I don't speak English well enough to work for a foreign company. **(better)**

=> If I for a foreign company.

16. Speak to her only if she speaks to you first. => Don't ...

17. Please give the book back to me some time – I'd be grateful. **(if)** => ...

18. I'm living in Italy because I got married to an Italian. **(if)** => ...

19. We've got a broken window because you and your friends were playing football in the back yard! **(if)** => ...

20. I missed the end of the film so I don't know who the murderer was. **(if)** => ...

21. She is now leading a normal life as a result of all the support she received from social workers. => If she ...

22. If you were in the situation I'm in, you'd feel the same. => If you put ...

23. He warned them against using the mountain road. => "I wouldn't ...

24. It was his own fault that he lost his job. He was late for work everyday morning.

=> If ...

25. If we don't hear from you within seven days, the order will be cancelled. => Unless ...

26. If you missed the programme you can't really judge. => Unless ...

27. Would you mind helping me carry this heavy box to the car? **(grateful)**

=> This box is really heavy so I'd help me carry it to the car.

28. We didn't stay long at the party because it was very noisy. **(so)**

=> If noise, we might have stayed longer at the party.

29. Because she postponed buying the plane ticket, Vanessa lost the opportunity to go to China. **(PUT)**

=> If Vanessa the plane ticket, she wouldn't have lost the opportunity to go to China.

30. I forgot her number so I couldn't ring her. **remembered**

=> If I could have rung her.

31. By pressing the button you lock all the doors. **press**

=> All the doors the button.

32. I didn't wake up on time because I didn't hear the alarm clock. **woken**

=> If I'd heard the alarm clock on time.

33. The reason the dog bit him was that he was in our garden. **bitten**

=> The dog if he hadn't been in our garden.

34. She wrote very fast and as a result made a lot of mistakes. **slowly**

=> If she she wouldn't have made so many mistakes.

35. Owing to technical difficulties the plane was not able to take off. **able**

=> If there hadn't been technical difficulties, the plane take off.

36. He hasn't got enough money now because he didn't save when he was working. **would**

=> If he had saved when he was money now.

37. It's just as well you told me or I might have married him. **you**
=> I might have married him me.
38. Eating too much makes you fat. **eat**
=> If you you fat.
39. We couldn't play tennis yesterday because of the rain. **rained**
=> If would've been able to play tennis yesterday.
40. If you don't get dressed right away we'll go without you. **put**
=> Unless right away we'll go without you.
41. We only eat there because the prices are so low. **charge**
=> If they low prices we wouldn't eat there.
42. I won't eat any more cake because I'm full. **full**
=> If I eat some more cake.
43. If that noise doesn't stop soon I won't feel like eating. **put**
=> That noise will it stops soon.
44. I'll only leave the waiter some money if he's quick. **tip**
=> I won't he's quick.
45. Take my advice and don't drink so much whisky! **if**
=> I'd drinkyou.
46. Jeremy got sunburnt because he fell asleep on the beach. **If**
=> Jeremy wouldn't have got sunburnt asleep on the beach.
47. I couldn't warn you because I didn't know about it myself. **warned**
=> I could had known about it myself.
48. The reason she found out about it was that he told his sister. **if**
=> She wouldn't have found out about it his sister.
49. Not realizing how unhappy she was, he spent very little time with her. **would**
=> He with her if he had known how unhappy she was.
50. I lost her phone number so I never saw her again. **have**
=> I would I hadn't lost her phone number.
51. We're not living together any more because she went away to university. **still**
=> We if she hadn't gone away to university.
52. She didn't take the trouble to find out why so she doesn't understand. **had**
=> She taken the trouble to find out why.
53. He was punished for his bad behaviour. **badly**
=> If he _____, he wouldn't have been punished.
54. 'I will complete the work only if you pay me £500 extra,' said Frank. **not**
=> 'I will you pay me £500 extra,' said Frank.
55. Can you possibly get me the work as soon as possible. **APPRECIATE**
=> I you could get the work to me as soon as possible.
56. The union claims its members will only return to work if the company agrees to a meeting.
NOT => The union claims its members will the company agrees to a meeting.
57. He was very quick, that's why he saved his life. => If _____
58. If we hurry up, we will get to the hospital before the operation starts. => Unless _____
59. Olivia did not concentrate so she made a lot of mistakes. **WOULD**

=> If Olivia made fewer mistakes.

60. You should take the train instead of the bus. **were**

=> If, I'd take the train instead of the bus.

EX II: Rewrite the following sentences (Inversions with Conditions)

1. I think I'll leave a note on the desk in case he needs my address.

=> Should ...

2. We would not be able to prepare the show without the money from our sponsors.

=> Were it ...

3. Should you come across the missing files, let me know at once, please. **(happen)**

=> ...

4. If you come across my old wooden box somewhere in the cellar, don't throw it away.

=> Should

5. Pat let me copy her homework. Otherwise I would have been reprimanded.

=> Hadn't ...

6. In the unlikely event of a fire, please do not use the lift.

=> Should ...

7. If you should get caught doing this, you will go to prison.

=> Were ...

8. If you didn't contribute generously, we couldn't continue our work.

=> But for ...

=> Were it ...

=> If it ...

9. The whole project would have fallen through without his support and hard work.

=> Had it ...

10. Return the product to the shop if you have any complaints about.

=> Should ...

11. If you do happen to see Helen, could you ask her to call me?

=> Should ...

12. If the government raised interest rates, they would lose the election.

=> Were ...

13. Were Smith to resign, I might stand a chance of getting his job. **(IF)**

=> ...

14. They would have discovered land sooner had they carried a compass. **(IF)**

=> ...

15. You wouldn't speak English well if you didn't have more practice.

=> Unless

EX III. Rewrite the following sentences (Other Conditional Structures)

1. Without this treatment, the patient would have died.

=> If he ...

2. The only way to solve the problem is his help.

=> But for ...

3. The best way to make them work hard is to promise them a reward.
=> Promise ...
4. You are allowed to play in my garden if you promise not to do anything wrong.
=> So long ...
5. If a fire breaks out, the emergency exit should be used. **(the event)**
=> ...
6. The ballot will be carried out on condition that there are no objections from the public.
=> Provided ...
7. If you don't get down to work, you won't be able to pass the entrance exam. **(otherwise)**
=> ...
8. Were Mike not so affluent a man, Ann wouldn't be dating him.
=> But ...
9. Our experiment will be carried out only if we gather enough money. **(condition that)**
=> ...
10. Take this map, it can be very useful if you get lost in the city. **(case)**
=> ...
11. If you let him go unpunished, he will certainly do that again.
=> Let ...
12. If he were to propose, what would you tell him?
=> Supposing ...
13. If you don't learn to operate the computer you won't get the job. **(or else)**
=> ...
14. If you scream again, I'll make you leave the room.
=> Scream ...
15. Study hard because you may write a test tomorrow. **case**
=> Study hard a test tomorrow.
16. Take a jumper with you because it might get cold later on. **case**
=> Take a jumper with you cold later on.
17. Without your help, I would never have managed. **you**
=> If , I would never have managed.
18. *Thanks to* Laura's report. I was able to finish the project.
=> Had
19. If it hadn't been for your help, he would be in a worse mess.
=> If you ...
20. Thanks to your help, I finished it in time.
=> But for ...
21. But for the view, this would be a lovely room. **(if)** (BTTA 12 – P.72)
=> If ...
22. I might lose my job, but they'd have to pay me a month's wages. **(should)**
=> ...
23. If you don't leave the building immediately, I'll call security. **(or)**
=>

24. Imagine a situation where sea levels rise dramatically. (**what**)
=> What ...
25. The only thing that prevented the passing of the bill was the death of the Prime Minister.
=> Had it ...
26. If I have plenty of warning, I'll willingly baby-sit for you.
=> Provided you ...
27. If Cathy hadn't been so mean, we'd have had a really good time.
=> But ...
28. Taking the necessary precautions, you shouldn't have any health problems. (**PROVIDED**)
=> ...
29. He'll give you the sack if you are late for the meeting. (**OTHERWISE**)
=>
30. If we took effective action now, we could still save the rainforests. (**WERE**)
=> ...
31. Your refusal to co-operate would cause immediate expulsion from the country. (**SHOULD**)
=> ...
32. The ban on hunting was only imposed because the minister insisted. (**BUT**)
=> ...
33. All that stood between John and a gold medal was Jim's greater speed.
=> But for ...
34. Richard only took over the family business because his father decided to retire early.
=> But for his ...
35. Provided your handwriting is legible the examiner will accept your answer.
=> So long as the examiner ...
36. If the work is finished by lunchtime, you can go home.
=> Get ...
37. It seems unbelievable that this jewellery is almost a thousand years old when it is so well preserved. (**hard**)
=> This jewellery is in such good believe that it is almost a thousand years old.
38. This holiday is within our price range, provided we don't go to the expensive restaurants in the tourist centre. (**afford**)
=> We as we avoid the expensive restaurants in the tourist centre.
39. We will send your new passport tomorrow, provided your paperwork is in order. (**LONG**)
=> Your new passport will your paperwork is in order.
40. It might get cold when you're out this evening, so it's probably a good idea to take gloves. (**CASE**)
=> It's probably worth cold when you're out this evening.
41. Without the provision of spare parts for the machine, the project would have failed.
=> If spare parts for the machine ...
42. A more gradual introduction of technology would eliminate many problems.
=> Were ...

43. If ever a student dared to ask a question, the professor would sigh wearily.
=> In the ...
44. I won't stay if you don't apologize immediately. **long**
=> I'll only apologize immediately.
45. You can eat sweets but you must always brush your teeth afterwards. **provided**
=> You can eat sweets your teeth afterwards.
46. We couldn't have finished the job without your help. **hadn't**
=> If we _____, we couldn't have finished the job.
48. The police are ready on the streets because the protest may get violent. (**in case**)
=> ...
49. You might fall if you're not careful.
=> Be careful ...
50. Without your help, I wouldn't have been able to finish the report.
=> If

ANSWER KEY

EX I. Rewrite the following sentences (Basic Conditions)

1. She met Mike when she went to Spain for her holiday last year.
=> She wouldn't ...
(DHDL Dong Do – Khoi D 97- 98, P.66)
2. If you want my opinion, it would be a good idea to stop eating so many sweets.
=> If I ...
(If I were you, I would stop eating so many sweets.) (DH NN Ha Noi – Khoi D – chuyen ban 97-98, P.186)
5. I think you should tell the police about the accident.
=> If I ...
(If I were you, I would tell the police about the accident.) (DH Da Nang – 2001-2002, P.42)
6. You'll avoid waiting by booking a table in advance.
=> If ...
(If you book a table in advance, you'll avoid waiting by booking.) (DHDL Dong Do – 2001-2002, P. 157)

8. Throw a stone into water and it sinks.

=> If ...

(BT TA 10 – P.108)

9. Since you haven't finished your homework, you can't come with them.

=> If ...

(If you finished your homework, you could come with them.) (BT TA 10 – P.110)

10. You're tired because you stayed up very late last night. (earlier)

=> ...

(If you had gone to bed earlier last night, you wouldn't be tired.) (BT TA 10 – P.118)

10. Perhaps nobody else wants to make friends with her so I might write to her.

=> If nobody else ...

(wants to make friends with her, I'll write to her.) (might + V: chỉ khả năng ít xảy ra) (BT TH TA 10 – P.112)

11. You can't make a cake without flour. **(have)**

=> Unless you ...

(have flour, you can't make a cake.) (BT TH TA 10 – P.104)

12. We haven't got any money left so we can't have dinner. **(some)**

=> If we ...

(had (got) some money left, we could have dinner.) (BT TH TA 10 – P.104)

13. You should give up drinking to protect your health. **(would)**

=>

If you improve your health.

(BT TH TA 10 – P.80) (give up drinking, you would)

14. Maybe I could go to Singapore to visit you. **(went)**

=> If I visit you.

(went to Singapore, I would) (BT TH TA 10 – P.80)

15. I don't speak English well enough to work for a foreign company. **(better)**

=> If I for a foreign company.

(spoke E better, I would work) (BT TH TA 10 – P.80)

16. Speak to her only if she speaks to you first.

=> Don't ...

(Don't speak to her unless she speaks to you first) (BT TA 11 – P.90)

17. Please give the book back to me some time – I'd be grateful. **(if)**

=> ...

(I'd be grateful if you (could) give/ wouldn't mind giving the book back to me some time.) (BT TA 12 – P.72)

18. I'm living in Italy because I got married to an Italian. **(if)**

=> ...

(If I hadn't got married to an Italian, I wouldn't be living in Italy.) (BT TA 12 – P.72)

19. We've got a broken window because you and your friends were playing football in the back yard! **(if)**

=> ...

(We would not have a broken window if you and your friends hadn't been playing football in the back yard.) (BTTA 12 – P.72)

20. I missed the end of the film so I don't know who the murderer was. (**if**)

=> ...

(**If I hadn't missed the end of the film, I would know who the murderer was.**) (BTTA 12 – P.72)

21. She is now leading a normal life as a result of all the support she received from social workers.

=> If she ...

(**hadn't received all the support from social workers, she wouldn't be leading a normal life now.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.69)

22. If you were in the situation I'm in, you'd feel the same.

=> If you put ...

(**yourself in my position/place/situation, you'd feel the same.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.143)

23. He warned them against using the mountain road.

=> "I wouldn't ...

("I wouldn't ... **use the mountain road if I were you.**") (BD HSG TA 11 – P.167)

24. It was his own fault that he lost his job. He was late for work everyday morning.

=> If ...

(**he hadn't been late for work everyday morning, he wouldn't have lost his job.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.72)

25. If we don't hear from you within seven days, the order will be cancelled.

=> Unless ...

(**we hear from you within seven days, the order will be cancelled.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.84)

- Give Sb the sack: *đuổi, sa thải ai đó*

26. If you missed the programme you can't really judge.

=> Unless ...

(**you saw/heard/listened to/have seen the programme, you can't really judge**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.126)

27. Would you mind helping me carry this heavy box to the car? (**grateful**)

=> This box is really heavy so I'd help me carry it to the car.

(This box is really heavy so I'd **be grateful if you could** help me carry it to the car. (if you could do ... => polite) (CAE - 1)

28. We didn't stay long at the party because it was very noisy. (**so**)

=> If noise, we might have stayed longer at the party.

(If **there had not been so much** noise, we might have stayed longer at the party. (CAE - 1)

29. Because she postponed buying the plane ticket, Vanessa lost the opportunity to go to China. (**PUT**)

=> If Vanessa the plane ticket, she wouldn't have lost the opportunity to go to China.

(**hadn't put off buying**) (CAE - 3)

30. I forgot her number so I couldn't ring her. **remembered**

=> If I could have rung her.

(If **I had remembered her number**, I could have rung her.)

31. By pressing the button you lock all the doors. **press**

=> All the doors the button.

(All the doors **lock if you press** the button.)

32. I didn't wake up on time because I didn't hear the alarm clock. **woken**

=> If I'd heard the alarm clock on time.

(If I'd heard the alarm clock, **I would have woken up** on time.)

33. The reason the dog bit him was that he was in our garden. **bitten**

=> The dog if he hadn't been in our garden.

(The dog **wouldn't have bitten him** if he hadn't been in our garden.)

34. She wrote very fast and as a result made a lot of mistakes. **slowly**

=> If she she wouldn't have made so many mistakes.

(If she ... **had written more slowly** she wouldn't have made so many mistakes.)

35. Owing to technical difficulties the plane was not able to take off. **able**

=> If there hadn't been technical difficulties, the plane take off.

(If there hadn't been technical difficulties, the plane ... **would have been able to** ... take off.)

36. He hasn't got enough money now because he didn't save when he was working. **would**

=> If he had saved when he was money now.

(If he had saved when he was **working he would have some** money now.)

37. It's just as well you told me or I might have married him. **you**

=> I might have married him me.

(I might have married him **if you had not told** me.)

38. Eating too much makes you fat. **eat**

=> If you you fat.

(If you **eat too much it makes** you fat.)

39. We couldn't play tennis yesterday because of the rain. **rained**

=> If would've been able to play tennis yesterday.

(If **it hadn't rained we** would've been able to play tennis yesterday.)

40. If you don't get dressed right away we'll go without you. **put**

=> Unless right away we'll go without you.

(Unless **you put on your clothes** right away we'll go without you.)

41. We only eat there because the prices are so low. **charge**

=> If they low prices we wouldn't eat there.

(If they **didn't charge (us) such** low prices we wouldn't eat there.)

42. I won't eat any more cake because I'm full. **full**

=> If I eat some more cake.

(If I **wasn't/weren't full I would** eat some more cake.)

43. If that noise doesn't stop soon I won't feel like eating. **put**

=> That noise will it stops soon.

(That noise will **put me off eating unless** it stops soon.)

44. I'll only leave the waiter some money if he's quick. **tip**

=> I won't he's quick.

(I won't **tip the waiter unless** he's quick.)

45. Take my advice and don't drink so much whisky! **if**

=> I'd drinkyou.

(I'd drink **less whisky if I were** you.)

46. Jeremy got sunburnt because he fell asleep on the beach. **If**

=> Jeremy wouldn't have got sunburnt asleep on the beach.

(Jeremy wouldn't have got sunburnt **if he had not fallen** asleep on the beach.)

47. I couldn't warn you because I didn't know about it myself. **warned**

=> I could had known about it myself.

(I could **have warned you if I** had known about it myself.)

48. The reason she found out about it was that he told his sister. **if**

=> She wouldn't have found out about it his sister.

(She wouldn't have found out about it **if he hadn't told** his sister.)

49. Not realizing how unhappy she was, he spent very little time with her. **would**

=> He with her if he had known how unhappy she was.

(He **would have spent more time** with her if he had known how unhappy she was.)

50. I lost her phone number so I never saw her again. **have**

=> I would I hadn't lost her phone number.

(I would **have seen her again if** I hadn't lost her phone number.)

51. We're not living together any more because she went away to university. **still**

=> We if she hadn't gone away to university.

(We **would still be living together** if she hadn't gone away to university.)

52. She didn't take the trouble to find out why so she doesn't understand. **had**

=> She taken the trouble to find out why.

(She **would understand if she had** taken the trouble to find out why.)

53. He was punished for his bad behaviour. **badly**

=> If he _____, he wouldn't have been punished.

(If he **had not behaved badly** , he wouldn't have been punished.)

54. 'I will complete the work only if you pay me £500 extra,' said Frank. **not**

=> 'I will you pay me £500 extra,' said Frank.

('I will ...**not complete the work | unless**..... you pay me £500 extra,' said Frank.)

55. Can you possibly get me the work as soon as possible. **APPRECIATE**

=> I you could get the work to me as soon as possible.

(**would be appreciate if**)

56. The union claims its members will only return to work if the company agrees to a meeting.
NOT

=> The union claims its members will the company agrees to a meeting.

(**not return to work unless**)

57. He was very quick, that's why he saved his life.

=> If _____

(If he hadn't been so quick, he wouldn't have saved his life.)

58. If we hurry up, we will get to the hospital before the operation starts.

=> Unless _____

(Unless we hurry up, we won't get to the hospital before the operation starts.)

59. Olivia did not concentrate so she made a lot of mistakes. **WOULD**

=> If Olivia made fewer mistakes.

(had concentrated she would have/she'd have)

60. You should take the train instead of the bus. **were**

=> If, I'd take the train instead of the bus.

(If I were you, I'd take the train instead of the bus.)

61. They'll understand you if you speak slowly. **won't**

=> They you speak slowly.

won't understand you unless

62. I didn't have an umbrella with me and so I got wet.

=> I wouldn't _____

(I wouldn't have got wet if I had had an umbrella.)

EX II: Rewrite the following sentences (Inversions with Conditions)

1. I think I'll leave a note on the desk in case he needs my address.

=> Should ...

(Should he need my address, I'll leave a note on the desk.)

2. We would not be able to prepare the show without the money from our sponsors.

=> Were it ...

(Were it **not for the money from our sponsors, we would not be able to prepare the show.**)

3. Should you come across the missing files, let me know at once, please. (**happen**)

=> ...

(If you **happen to come across the missing files, let me know at once, please.**)

4. If you come across my old wooden box somewhere in the cellar, don't throw it away.

=> Should

(Should you come across my old wooden box somewhere in the cellar, don't throw it away.)

5. Pat let me copy her homework. Otherwise I would have been reprimanded.

=> Hadn't ...

(Hadn't Pat let me copy her homework, I would have been reprimanded.)

6. In the unlikely event of a fire, please do not use the lift.

=> Should ...

(**there be a fire, please do not use the lift.**) (Compare: If there is a fire, please do not use the lift)

- **In the event of St** = in case there is St: Trong trường hợp có ... (BD HSG TA 12 – P.72)

7. If you should get caught doing this, you will go to prison.

=> Were ...

(you to get caught doing this, you will go to prison.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.84)

8. If you didn't contribute generously, we couldn't continue our work.

=> But for ...

=> Were it ...

=> If it ...

(your generous contribution, we couldn't continue our work.)

(not for your generous contribution, we couldn't continue our work.)

(were not for your generous contribution, we couldn't continue our work.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.98)

9. The whole project would have fallen through without his support and hard work.

=> Had it ...

(Had it not been for his support and hard work, the whole project would have fallen ...)

10. Return the product to the shop if you have any complaints about. => Should ... (BT TA 11 – P.91)

(Should you have any complaints about the product, return it to the shop.)

11. If you do happen to see Helen, could you ask her to call me? (BD HSG TA 12 – P.52)

=> Should ... **(you see Helen, could you ask her to call me?)**

12. If the government raised interest rates, they would lose the election.

=> Were ... **(the government to raise interest rates, they would lose the election.)** (BD HSG TA 12 – P.52)

13. Were Smith to resign, I might stand a chance of getting his job. **(IF)**

=> ...

(If Smith were to resign/ resigned, I might stand a chance of getting his job.) (were to V: tăng tính g.định) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.54)

14. They would have discovered land sooner had they carried a compass. **(IF)**

=> ...

(If they had carried a compass, they would have discovered land sooner.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.55)

EX III. Rewrite the following sentences (Other Conditional Structures)

1. Without this treatment, the patient would have died.

=> If he ...

2. The only way to solve the problem is his help.

=> But for ...

(But for his help, we can't solve the problem.)

=> Parallel Pattern: The only way to do St is ... ⇔ But for St, S + can't + do St

3. The best way to make them work hard is to promise them a reward.

=> Promise ...

(Promise them a reward and they will work hard.)

4. You are allowed to play in my garden if you promise not to do anything wrong.

=> So long ...

(So long as you do not do anything wrong, you are allowed to play in my garden.)

5. If a fire breaks out, the emergency exit should be used. **(the event)**

=> ...

(In the event of a fire, the emergency exit should be used.)

6. The ballot will be carried out on condition that there are no objections from the public.

=> Provided ...

(Provided (that) there are no objections from the public, the ballot will be carried out.)

7. If you don't get down to work, you won't be able to pass the entrance exam. **(otherwise)**

=> ...

(You should get/ You had better get/ Get down to work otherwise you won't be able to pass the entrance exam.)

8. Were Mike not so affluent a man, Ann wouldn't be dating him.

=> But ...

(But for Mike's affluence, Ann wouldn't be dating him.)

9. Our experiment will be carried out only if we gather enough money. **(condition that)**

=> ...

(Our experiment will be carried out on condition that we gather enough money.)

10. Take this map, it can be very useful if you get lost in the city. **(case)**

=> ...

(Take this map in case you get lost in the city.)

11. If you let him go unpunished, he will certainly do that again.

=> Let ...

(Let him go unpunished and he will certainly do that again.)

12. If he were to propose, what would you tell him?

=> Supposing ...

(Supposing he proposed, what would you tell him?)

13. If you don't learn to operate the computer you won't get the job. **(or else)**

=> ...

(Learn to/ You should learn to/ You had better learn to operate the computer or else you won't get the job.)

14. If you scream again, I'll make you leave the room.

=> Scream ...

(Scream again and I'll make you leave the room.)

15. Study hard because you may write a test tomorrow. **case**

=> Study hard a test tomorrow.

(Study hard ... in case you write ... a test tomorrow.)

16. Take a jumper with you because it might get cold later on. **case**

=> Take a jumper with you cold later on.

(Take a jumper with you in case it gets cold later on.)

17. Without your help, I would never have managed. **you**

=> If , I would never have managed.

(If you hadn't helped me , I would never have managed.)

18. *Thanks to Laura's report.* I was able to finish the project.

=> Had

(Had it not been for Laura's report, I would not have been able to finish the project. (BT TA 11 – P.117)

19. If it hadn't been for your help, he would be in a worse mess.

=> If you ...

(hadn't helped him, he would be in a worse mess.) (BT TA 11 – P.184)

20. Thanks to your help, I finished it in time.

=> But for ...

(your help, I would not have finished it in time.)

21. But for the view, this would be a lovely room. **(if)** (BT TA 12 – P.72)

=> If ...

(the view were better, this would be a lovely room./ it were not for the view, this ...)

22. I might lose my job, but they'd have to pay me a month's wages. **(should)**

=> ...

(Should I lose my job/If I should lose my job, they'll have to pay me a month's wages.) (BT TA 12 – P.72)

23. If you don't leave the building immediately, I'll call security. **(or)**

=>

(Please) leave the building immediately, or I'll call security. (BT TA 12 – P.72)

24. Imagine a situation where sea levels rise dramatically. **(what)**

=> What ...

(if sea levels rise/rose dramatically. – What if ...: điều gì sẽ xảy ra nếu ... - thường câu đk I) (BT TA 12 – P.72)

25. The only thing that prevented the passing of the bill was the death of the Prime Minister.

=> Had it ...

(not been for the death of the Prime Minister, the bill would have been passed.) (BT TA 12 – P.220)

26. If I have plenty of warning, I'll willingly baby-sit for you.

=> Provided you ...

(warn me/ give me plenty of warning/give plenty of warning to me, I'll willingly baby-sit for you.) - plenty of = much of, many, a lot of (BD HSG TA 11 – P.69)

27. If Cathy hadn't been so mean, we'd have had a really good time.

=> But ...

(for Cathy's meanness, we'd have had a really good time.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.104)

28. Taking the necessary precautions, you shouldn't have any health problems. **(PROVIDED)**

=> ...

(Provided (that) you take the necessary precautions, you shouldn't have any health problems.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.111)

(Bằng việc thực hiện các biện pháp phòng ngừa **(precaution)** cần thiết, bạn sẽ không gặp bất kỳ vấn đề gì về sức khỏe)

29. He'll give you the sack if you are late for the meeting. **(OTHERWISE)**

=>

(Don't be late for the meeting, otherwise he'll give you the sack.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.111)

30. If we took effective action now, we could still save the rainforests. (**WERE**)

=> ...

(Were we to take effective action now, we could still save the rainforests.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.111)

- Take effective action: thực hiện các biện pháp hiệu quả, hành động hiệu quả

31. Your refusal to co-operate would cause immediate expulsion from the country. (**SHOULD**)

=> ...

(Should you refuse to co-operate, they would expel you immediately from the country.)

=> **(Should you refuse to co-operate, you would be expelled immediately from the country.)**

- expel Sb from a place: trục xuất ai ra khỏi ... - expulsion (n of expel): sự trục xuất (BD HSG TA 12 – P.111)

32. The ban on hunting was only imposed because the minister insisted. (**BUT**)

=> ...

(But for the minister's insistence, the ban on hunting wouldn't have been imposed.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.111)

33. All that stood between John and a gold medal was Jim's greater speed.

=> But for ...

(Jim's greater speed, John would have won a gold medal.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.111)

(Tất cả những gì đứng giữa John và huy chương vàng/ cản trở John đoạt HCV chính là tốc độ tốt hơn nữa của Jim.)

34. Richard only took over the family business because his father decided to retire early.

=> But for his ...

(father's early retirement, Richard wouldn't have taken over the family business.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.166)

35. Provided your handwriting is legible the examiner will accept your answer.

=> So long as the examiner ...

(can read your handwriting, he/she will accept your answer.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.181)

36. If the work is finished by lunchtime, you can go home.

=> Get ...

(the work finished by lunchtime and you can go home.) => if ... ⇔ ... and ... (BD HSG TA 12 – P.181)

37. It seems unbelievable that this jewellery is almost a thousand years old when it is so well preserved. (**hard**)

=> This jewellery is in such good believe that it is almost a thousand years old.

(This jewellery is in such good **condition that it is hard to** believe that it is almost a thousand years old. (CAE - 1)

38. This holiday is within our price range, provided we don't go to the expensive restaurants in the tourist centre. (**afford**)

=> We as we avoid the expensive restaurants in the tourist centre.

(We **can afford this holiday as/so long** as we avoid the expensive restaurants in the tourist centre. (CAE - 2)

39. We will send your new passport tomorrow, provided your paperwork is in order. (**LONG**)

=> Your new passport will your paperwork is in order.

(Your new passport will **be sent tomorrow so/as long as** your paperwork is in order. (CAE-4)

40. It might get cold when you're out this evening, so it's probably a good idea to take gloves. (**CASE**)

=> It's probably worth cold when you're out this evening.

(It's probably worth **taking gloves in case it get** cold when you're out this evening. (CAE-4)

- In case + S + V(ht): phòng khi ... có thể ...

E.g. - (You should) take your umbrella *in case it rains*.

41. Without the provision of spare parts for the machine, the project would have failed.

=> If spare parts for the machine ...

(**If spare parts for the machine hadn't been provided, the project would have failed.**) =>

Condition + style

42. A more gradual introduction of technology would eliminate many problems.

=> Were ...

(**Were technology to be introduced more gradually, it/this would eliminate many problems.**)

43. If ever a student dared to ask a question, the professor would sigh wearily.

=> In the ...

(**In the event of a student daring to ask a question, the professor would sigh wearily.**)

44. I won't stay if you don't apologize immediately. **long**

=> I'll only apologize immediately.

(I'll only **stay as long as you** apologize immediately.)

45. You can eat sweets but you must always brush your teeth afterwards. **provided**

=> You can eat sweets your teeth afterwards.

(You can eat sweets **provided you brush** your teeth afterwards.)

46. We couldn't have finished the job without your help. **hadn't**

=> If we _____, we couldn't have finished the job.

(If we ____ **hadn't had your help** __, we couldn't have finished the job.)

48. The police are ready on the streets because the protest may get violent. (**in case**)

=> ...

(**The police are ready on the streets in case the protest gets violent.**)

49. You might fall if you're not careful.

=> Be careful ...

(Be careful, otherwise you might fall) (Hoc Vien KHQS – Khoi D 97-98, P.288)

50. Without your help, I wouldn't have been able to finish the report.

=> If

(**If you hadn't help me, I wouldn't have been able to finish the report./If I hadn't have your help,**)

*CHUYÊN ĐỀ 9: BỒI DƯỠNG KIẾN THỨC NÂNG CAO
VỀ CÁC DẠNG SO SÁNH TÍNH TỪ VÀ TRẠNG TỪ*

DOUBLE COMPARATIVES

I. REVISION OF 3 BASIC TYPES OF COMPARISONS

II. We use double comparatives to say that something is changing continuously, or that something is increasing.

A. Comparative and Comparative: ngày càng

1. Short adjectives and adverbs: bigger and bigger

E.g. Your English is improving. It's getting better and better.

It's becoming harder and harder to find a job

More and more people travel from England

2. Long adjectives and adverbs: more and more difficult

E.g. Health care is more and more expensive.

B. The comparative + (S + V), The comparative + (S + V): càng ..., càng ...

1. short adjectives and adverbs

E.g. - The bigger the better, the more the merrier, the cheaper the better, the shorter the better.

- The sooner we leave the sooner we will arrive
- The younger you are, the easier it is to learn
- The more electricity you use, the higher the bill will be
- The bigger they are, the faster they fall.
- The more I look into your eyes, the more I love you.

2. Long adjectives and adverbs

E.g. - The more beautiful she is, the more miserable she gets.

- The more difficult lessons are, the more bored we get.

3. Mixed double comparatives

E.g. - The hotter it is, the more terrible I feel.

- The more you study, the smarter you will become.

III. Other Forms of Comparisons

1. Comparison with “The same + (n) + as ...”: giống như, cùng ... với

Model: My garden is as **beautiful** as yours. => My garden is **the same beauty** as yours.

1. My house is as high as his. (same)
2. Mai and Mary are the same age. (as ... as)
3. This bridge is as long as that one. (same)
4. My flat is the same size as hers. (as ... as)
5. He is as light as his friend. (same)
6. This road is the same width as that one. (as ... as)
7. This street is as narrow as that one. (same)

Adjectives and corresponding Nouns

- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. heavy/ light: weight | 5. big/ small: size |
| 2. wide/ narrow: width | 6. old: age |
| 3. deep/ shallow: depth | 7. short/high: height |
| 4. long/ short: length | |

2. The same...as và different from...

Không bao giờ dùng *different than*. Sau đây là một số ví dụ khác về so sánh bằng danh từ.

These trees are the same as those.
 He speaks the same language as she.
 Her address is the same as Rita's.
 Their teacher is different from ours.

She takes the same course as her husband.

3. Much/ Far

So sánh không ngang bằng có thể được nhấn mạnh bằng cách thêm *much* hoặc *far* trước cụm từ so sánh: much/far + short adj + ER + than, much/far + more + long adj + than

A waterlemon is much sweeter than a lemon./ Henry's watch is far more expensive than mine.

5. so sánh bội số – gấp 2, 3 lần ...

So sánh bội số là so sánh: bằng nửa (half), gấp đôi (twice), gấp ba (three times),...

Không được sử dụng so sánh hơn kém mà sử dụng so sánh bằng, khi so sánh phải xác định danh từ là đếm được hay không đếm được, vì đằng trước chúng có *many/much*

This encyclopedia costs twice as much as the other one.

Jerome has half as many records now as I had last year.

At the clambake (cuộc dạo chơi trên biển) last week, Fred ate three times as many oysters (con sò, hào) as Bob.

6. So sánh hơn với so sánh:

E.g. 1. - He is **3 years older** than me.

-

PRACTICE ON COMPARISONS

I. Double Comparative

1. They produce a lot of paper. They need a lot of wood pulp.

=> The more, the more

2. If you drive faster, it is more dangerous. => The ...

3. The crowd became increasingly angry at the long delay. (the ..., the ...)

=> The ...

4. The value of a picture depends on how famous the artist is.

=> ...

5. How well I sleep depends on how late I go to bed.

=>

6. I don't spend much time with my family because I work so hard.

=> ...

7. The traffic moves very slowly as more cars come into the city.

=> ...

8. How much you sweat depends on how hot you get. => ...

9. The idea becomes less attractive as I think about it more. => ...
10. How much petrol a car uses depends on the size of the engine. => ...
11. It's hard to concentrate when you are tired. => ...
12. The service of a hotel depends on how expensive it. => ...
13. He has never behaved so violently before. => He is behaving ...
14. People no longer smoke so many cigarettes as they used to. => The ...
15. As television programs become more popular, they seem to get worse.
=> The more ...
16. There weren't nearly as many people there as I had expected.
=> There were far ...
17. My boss works better when he's pressed for the time.
=> ...
18. Compared with their counterparts 20 years ago, the highly educated now receive vastly higher salaries.
=> The highly educated now ...
19. As he grew older, he became more and more forgetful.
=> The ...
20. As I listened to the music on repeated occasions, my request for the composer increased.
=> The more ...
21. We should spend as little money as possible. => The less ...
22. Their excitement was increasing all the time. (**excited**) => They were getting ...
23. Prices just get higher all the time? (and) => Prices ...
24. If you sleep longer, you will be more relaxed. => The longer ...
25. As he grew more impatient, he became more unruly. => The more ...
26. As I listened to the music on repeated occasions, my respect for the composer increased.
=> The more ...
27. His behaviour is beginning to annoy me more and more.
=> I am beginning to ...

II. Popular Comparisons

1. Apples are not so cheap as oranges. (dearer than) => ...
2. When I was younger I used to go climbing more than I do now. => Now ...
3. She knows a lot more than I do. => I don't know ...
4. Helen can play the piano better than Elizabeth. => Elizabeth ...
5. I thought this meal would cost more than it did. => This meal didn't ...
6. Couldn't you find a better hotel? => Is this
.....?
7. I think that no city in the world is more beautiful than Paris.
=> I think Paris ...
8. Andrew hasn't many friends. Claire has lots of friends. (**popular**) => ...
9. This train is more convenient than all the others. (most) => This train ...

10. I'm not as fit as you. (am) => You're ...
11. The table and the desk are the same size. (big) => The table ...
12. This crossword is the easiest. (difficult) => This crossword ...
13. This is Ann's favourite soap opera. (... **the most.**) => ...
14. Arnold speaks French much better than his sister does. => **Arnold's sister** ...
15. A bus is cheaper than a taxi. (less) => A bus ...
16. She was suitably impressed with the painting. => She was as ...
17. You won't reach the station in less than twenty minutes. => It will take ...
18. No situation is more depressing than being unemployed. => Being ...
19. Nobody in the world can run fast as Fleetfoot. => Fleetfoot ...
20. These two boxers weigh exactly the same. => There is no ...
21. It was more of an argument than a discussion. => It was not so ...
22. He is more a lecturer than a teacher. => He is not so ...
23. She listens more sympathetically than anyone else I know. => She is a ...
24. Skyscrapers in the USA are on average taller than anywhere else in the world.
=> The average ...
25. I was surprised how hard I had to work when I became a teacher. (**EXPECTED**)
=> I had to when I became a teacher.
26. There aren't any trains earlier than this one. => This is _____
27. The return fare is double the single fare. **twice** => The return fare
..... the single fare.
28. Mary is slower at doing things than Jill. **fast** => Mary is Jill
at doing things.
29. Skwierzyna is less exciting than Bogdaniec. **as** => Skwierzyna
..... Bogdaniec.
30. People used to eat more bread than they do nowadays. **as**
=> People don't _____ they used to.
31. Barbara can skate just as well as John can. => John isn't _____ .
32. This summer has been much cooler than last year. **COOL**
=> Last summer this year.
33. I'm not as good at maths as you. **BETTER**
=> You me.
34. The course wasn't as easy as I'd expected. **MORE** => The course
..... I'd expected.
35. This car isn't safe enough to drive. **DANGEROUS** => This car
..... drive.
36. This exercise is easier than the last one. **HARD** => This exercise
..... the last one.
37. The hotel was further away from the beach than was claimed in the brochure. **NOWHERE**
The hotel the beach as they'd claimed in the brochure.

38. The school I studied at last year was better than this one. **good**
=> This school my last one.
39. We can ask Janet. She knows a lot more about it than I do.
=> We can ask Janet. I don't know about this _____
40. It will take us at least an hour to get there. => We will find

ANSWER KEY

I. Double Comparative

1. They produce a lot of paper. They need a lot of wood pulp.
=> The more, the more
(The more **paper they produce**, the more **wood pulp they need**.) (DH Hang Hai – Khoi D 97-98, P.143)
2. If you drive faster, it is more dangerous. => The ...
(**faster you drive, the more dangerous it is**.) (BTTH TA 10 – P.121)
3. The crowd became increasingly angry at the long delay. (the ..., the ...)
=> The ...
(**The longer the delay was, the angrier the crowd became**. (BTTH 12 – P.202)
4. The value of a picture depends on how famous the artist is.
=> ...
(**The more famous an artist is, the more valuable the picture is**. (BTTH 12 – P.170)
5. How well I sleep depends on how late I go to bed.
=>
(**The later I go to bed, the better I sleep**. (BTTH 12 – P.170)
6. I don't spend much time with my family because I work so hard.
=> ...
(**The harder I work, the less time I spend with my family**. (BTTH 12 – P.170)
7. The traffic moves very slowly as more cars come into the city.
=> ...
(**The more cars come into the city, the more slowly/ the slower the traffic moves**. (BTTH 12 – P.170)
8. How much you sweat depends on how hot you get. => ...
(**The hotter you get, the more you sweat**. (BTTH 12 – P.170)
9. The idea becomes less attractive as I think about it more. => ...

(The more I think about the idea, the less attractive it becomes./ The more I think about it, the less attractive the idea becomes. (BT TA 12 – P.170)

10. How much petrol a car uses depends on the size of the engine. => ...

(The bigger the engine is, the more petrol a car uses. (BT TA 12 – P.170)

11. It's hard to concentrate when you are tired. => ...

(The more tired you are, the harder it is to concentrate. (BT TA 12 – P.170)

12. The service of a hotel depends on how expensive it is. => ...

(The more expensive the hotel is, the better service (it is). (BT TA 12 – P.170)

13. He has never behaved so violently before. => He is behaving ...

(more violently than ever before. (BT TA 12 – P.204)

14. People no longer smoke so many cigarettes as they used to. => The ...

(smoking is no longer as popular/widespread as it used to be.) (BT TA 12 – P.204)

15. As television programs become more popular, they seem to get worse.

=> The more ...

(popular television programs (become), the worse they seem to get.) (BT TA 12 – P.204)

16. There weren't nearly as many people there as I had expected.

=> There were far ...

(fewer people there than I expected.) (BT TA 12 – P.204)

17. My boss works better when he's pressed for the time.

=> ...

(The less time my boss has, the better he works. (be pressed for the time: eo hep thoi gian) (BT TA 12 – P.204)

18. Compared with their counterparts 20 years ago, the highly educated now receive vastly higher salaries.

=> The highly educated now ...

(receive vastly higher salaries than their counterparts did 20 years ago.) (BT TA 12 – P.220)

19. As he grew older, he became more and more forgetful.

=> The ...

(older he grew/got, the more forgetful he became.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.69)

20. As I listened to the music on repeated occasions, my request for the composer increased.

=> The more ...

(I listened to the music on repeated occasions, the more my request for the composer increased.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.168)

21. We should spend as little money as possible. => The less ...

(money we spend, the better) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.112)

22. Their excitement was increasing all the time. **(excited)** => They were getting ...

(They were getting more and more excited. – BT TA 10 – P.193)

23. Prices just get higher all the time? (and) => Prices ...

(Prices **just get higher and higher.** – BT TA 10 – P.193)

24. If you sleep longer, you will be more relaxed. => The longer ...

(10. The longer **you sleep, the more relaxed you will be.**)

25. As he grew more impatient, he became more unruly. => The more ...

(The more **impatient he grew, the more unruly he became.**)

26. As I listened to the music on repeated occasions, my respect for the composer increased.
=> The more ...

(**The more I listened to the music, the more my respect for the composer increased.**)

27. His behaviour is beginning to annoy me more and more.

=> I am beginning to ...

(**get more and more annoyed by his behaviour.** (Adj of Attitude) (BDHSG TA 11 – P.142)

II. Popular Comparisons

1. Apples are not so cheap as oranges. (dearer than) => ...

(**DH Hang Hai – Khoi D – chuyen ban 97-98, P.161**)

2. When I was younger I used to go climbing more than I do now. => Now ...

(**Now I don't go climbing as much as I used to.**) (DH NN Ha Noi – Khoi D – chuyen ban 97-98, P.193)

3. She knows a lot more than I do. => I don't know ...

4. Helen can play the piano better than Elizabeth. => Elizabeth ...

(**Elizabeth cannot play the piano as well as Helen.**/ Elizabeth is not such a good pianist as Helen./ Elizabeth is less good at playing the piano than Helen.) (Hoc Vien QHQT – Khoi D 97-98, P.294)

5. I thought this meal would cost more than it did. => This meal didn't ...

(This meal didn't **cost so much as I had expected.**) (DH An Ninh – 97-98, P.17)

6. Couldn't you find a better hotel? => Is this
.....?

(Is this **the best hotel (that) you can/could find?**) (DH Ngoai Thuong – 2001-2002, P.64)

7. I think that no city in the world is more beautiful than Paris.

=> I think Paris ...

(I think Paris **is the most beautiful city in the world.**) (HVCTQG – Phan Vien BCTT – 2001-2002, P. 129)

8. Andrew hasn't many friends. Claire has lots of friends. (**popular**) => ...

(**Claire is more popular than Andrew.**) (CHUYÊN ĐỀ SP HN – 2001-2002, P.250)

9. This train is more convenient than all the others. (most) => This train ...

(This train **is the most convenient.** – BTTA 10 – P.192)

10. I'm not as fit as you. (am) => You're ...

(You're **fitter than I am.** – BTTA 10 – P.155)

11. The table and the desk are the same size. (big) => The table ...

(The table is as big as the desk.. – BTTA 10 – P.192)

12. This crossword is the easiest. (difficult) => This crossword ...

(This crossword is more difficult than all the others.. – BTTA 10 – P.193)

13. This is Ann's favourite soap opera. (... **the most.**) => ...

(Ann likes this soap opera the most./This is the soap opera that Ann likes the most.)

14. Arnold speaks French much better than his sister does. => **Arnold's sister ...**

(Arnold's sister **doesn't speak French so well as he does.**)

15. A bus is cheaper than a taxi. (less) => A bus ...

(A bus is less expensive than a taxi.. – BTTA 10 – P.193)

16. She was suitably impressed with the painting. => She was as ...

(She was as **impressed as people had hoped.**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.145)

17. You won't reach the station in less than twenty minutes. => It will take ...

(**you at least twenty minutes to reach the station.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.79)

18. No situation is more depressing than being unemployed. => Being ...

(**unemployed is the most depressing situation.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.84)

19. Nobody in the world can run fast as Fleetfoot. => Fleetfoot ...

(**is the fastest runner in the world/ runs the fastest in the world.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.112)

20. These two boxers weigh exactly the same. => There is no ...

(**difference in weight between these two boxers.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.140)

(Hai võ sĩ này cân nặng chính xác bằng nhau. => Không có sự khác nhau về cân nặng giữa hai võ sĩ này.)

21. It was more of an argument than a discussion. => It was not so ...

(**much a discussion as an argument.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.126)

(Đó là một cuộc tranh luận/ cãi nhau hơn là cuộc thảo luận. => Đó không giống cuộc thảo luận bằng cuộc cãi nhau)

22. He is more a lecturer than a teacher. => He is not so ...

(BD HSG TA 12 – P.140) (Anh ta giống một diễn giả hơn là giáo viên)

(He is not so **much a teacher as a lecturer.** (Anh ta không giống một giáo viên bằng một diễn giả.)

23. She listens more sympathetically than anyone else I know. => She is a ...

(**more sympathetic listener than anyone else I know.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.154)

(She is a ... (**a person who listens more sympathetically than anyone else I know.**)

24. Skyscrapers in the USA are on average taller than anywhere else in the world.

=> The average ...

(**skyscraper in the USA is taller/higher/bigger than anywhere else in the world**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.165)

(= The average ... (**size/height of skyscrapers in the USA is greater than anywhere else in the world**)

25. I was surprised how hard I had to work when I became a teacher. (**EXPECTED**)

=> I had to when I became a teacher.

=> I had to **work harder/ more than (I/ I had) expected** when I became a teacher. (CAE-4)

26. There aren't any trains earlier than this one. => This is _____

(**This is the earliest train.**)

27. The return fare is double the single fare. **twice** => The return fare the single fare.

(..... is / costs twice (as much as))

28. Mary is slower at doing things than Jill. **fast** => Mary is Jill at doing things.

(Mary is ... **not as fast as** Jill at doing things.)

29. Skwierzyna is less exciting than Bogdaniec. **as** => Skwierzyna Bogdaniec.

(Skwierzyna **isn't as exciting as** Bogdaniec.)

30. People used to eat more bread than they do nowadays. **as** => People don't they used to.

(People don't **eat as much bread as / eat so much bread as** they used to.)

31. Barbara can skate just as well as John can. => John isn't

(**John isn't a better skater than Barbara. Or: John isn't better at skating than Barbara.**)

32. This summer has been much cooler than last year. **COOL** => Last summer this year. (**wasn't as cool as / was not as cool as**)

33. I'm not as good at maths as you. **BETTER** => You me.

(**are better at maths than / 're better at maths than / can do maths better than**)

34. The course wasn't as easy as I'd expected. **MORE** => The course I'd expected.

(**was more difficult than**)

35. This car isn't safe enough to drive. **DANGEROUS** => This car drive.

(**'s too dangerous to / is too dangerous to**)

36. This exercise is easier than the last one. **HARD** => This exercise the last one.

(**is not as hard as / isn't as hard as**)

37. The hotel was further away from the beach than was claimed in the brochure. **NOWHERE** The hotel the beach as they'd claimed in the brochure.

(**was nowhere near as close to**)

38. The school I studied at last year was better than this one. **good** => This school my last one.

(**isn't as good as / is not as good as / 's not as good as**)

39. We can ask Janet. She knows a lot more about it than I do.

=> We can ask Janet. I don't know about this

(We can ask Janet. I don't know about this **as much as she does.**)

40. It will take us at least an hour to get there. => We will find

(We will find **it impossible to get there in less than an hour / before an hour.**)

41. If anyone succeeds in solving the problem, it will probably be him.

=> He is the most ...

(likely person to succeed in solving the problem.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.131) => likely = Ajective

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 9: BỒI DƯỠNG KIẾN THỨC NÂNG CAO VỀ VĂN PHONG TRONG TIẾNG ANH

STYLES

(văn phong)

*/. Style luận hành vi hình thức văn học di truyền một nét văn hóa theo nhiều cách khác nhau. 3 cách chính yếu thể hiện trong T.A luận: tính từ ⇔ danh từ, động từ ⇔ danh từ, trạng từ ⇔ tính từ. Khi luận BT thể hành vi của câu sẽ kết hợp của 2 cách, thêm chức năng 3 cách trong một câu.

Part 1: Use Verbs instead of Nouns and vice verse (Cách hành vi của một sự động từ chuyển thành thể hành vi)

1. **To look at:** to have a look at: nhìn vào
2. To think about/ of: to give thought to: nghĩ về
3. **To know** (about): to have knowledge of: biết
4. **To tend to do St:** to have a tendency to do St: có khuynh hướng, có xu hướng
5. **To intend to do St:** to have intention of doing St: dự định
6. To desire to do St: to have a desire to do ST: ao ước
7. To wish to do St: to have a wish to do St: to express a wish to do St: ao ước
8. **To visit** somebody/ somewhere: to pay a visit to Sb/ Sw: viếng thăm
9. To discuss St: to have a discussion about St: thảo luận về ...
10. **To decide to do St:** to make a decision to do St: quyết định ...
11. To talk to Sb: To have a talk with Sb: nói chuyện với ai
12. To explain St: to give an explanation for St: giải thích rõ ràng
13. To call Sb: to give Sb a call: to give a call to Sb: gọi điện cho ai
14. To ring Sb: to give Sb a ring: to give a ring to Sb: gọi điện cho ai
15. To drink: to have a drink: uống
16. To photograph St/ Sb: to **take**/ have a photograph of St/ Sb: chụp hình
17. To cry: to give a cry: khóc
18. To laugh at: to give a laugh at: cười nhạo
19. To welcome Sb: to give Sb a welcome: To give a welcome to Sb: đón tiếp ai/ hoan nghênh
20. To kiss Sb: to give Sb a kiss: to give a kiss to Sb: hôn ai
21. To warn of: to give warning of: cảnh báo về rõ ràng

22. To try to do St: To make an effort to do St: To make an attempt to do St: Cầ g³ng/ nặ
lúc lựm g×
23. To meet Sb: to have a meeting with Sb: GÆp ai ...
24. To succeed in St/ doing St: to make a success in: to be successful in: thụnh c«ng trong
...
25. To be used: to be in use: ②-íc sô dông (use = to make use of: sô dông)
26. To rest: to have a rest: nghØ ng-i, nghØ gi¶i lao
27. To bathe: to have a **bath**: t³4m
28. To examine: to have an examination: KiÓm tra c, i g×, ...
29. **To agree with**: to be in agreement with: ②ẩng ý
30. **To disagree with**: to be in disagreement with: kh«ng ②ẩng ý vớ
31. To contact Sb: to have contact with Sb: liªn l'c vớ ...
32. To exchange St: to have an exchange of St: trao ②æi
33. **To argue with Sb**: to have an argument with Sb: tranh c' i vớ ...
34. **To complain about**: to have a **complaint** about: phụn nụn vỒ
35. To land: to make a landing: h¹ c, nh
36. To receive St: to be in receipt of St: nhỄn ...
37. **To need St/ to do St**: to have a need of St/ of doing St: to be in need of St/ doing St
38. To love Sb: to fall in love with Sb: ph¶i lũng ai, y^au ai
39. To brush St: to give St a brush: ch¶i, rũa s'ch ... b»ng bụn ch¶i
40. **To arrange with Sb**: to have an arrangement with: s³4p xỔp vớ ai ...

Part 2: Use Adjectives instead of Nouns and vice versa

1. **To be determined to do St**: to have a determination to do St: quyỂt t©m ...
2. **To be interested in**: to have (an) interest in: to take (an) interest: to show (an) interest in

*/. Chó ý: Khi ②æi c, ch hụn v"n cÇn l-u ý nh÷ng thay ②æi vỒ giúu tồ, tÝnh tồ, tr'ng tồ, th× cĩa c©u. Trªn ②©y chØ lự nh÷ng cỂu tróc c- b¶n, cã thÓ cã nh÷ng "dP b¶n" kh, c tuú theo t×nh huềng cô thÓ. Khi lựm bựi c, c em HS cÇn ,p dông ②óng cỂu tróc, ②óng th×, lo'i bá c, c tồ thõa. (Cã thÓ tham kh¶o mét sè bựi tỄp trang 113 – NPTA, Mai Lan H-ng)

EXERCISE 1: Rewrite the following sentences, making any changes if necessary

1. There is a **determination** to succeed in his job. => He is **determined** to succeed in his job.
2. There was a determination to fight her illness.
3. There is a determination to overcome their children's problems.

EXERCISE 2: Rewrite the following sentences, making any changes if necessary

1. Her main interests are music and tennis.
2. Do your parents take an interest in your friends?
3. Politics doesn't interest me.

EXERCISE 3: Rewrite using the underlined word, make any changes if necessary: *To intend to do St = to have intention of doing St*

1. I had no intention of staying here.
2. I have no intention of going to the wedding.
3. I didn't intend to annoy them.
4. He has intention of retiring.

EXERCISE 4: Rewrite using the underlined word, make any changes if necessary: *To decide to do St – To make a decision to do St*

1. She made a decision to live in France.
2. They has decided to hire more people.
3. The school decided to purchase new software.

EXERCISE 5: Rewrite using the underlined word, make any changes if necessary: *To be in agreement/ disagreement with – agree/ disagree with*

1. I don't think they are in disagreement with what we shall do.
2. He was in agreement with them about the need for change.
3. I agree with analysis of the situation.
4. He disagreed with his parents on most thing.

EXERCISE 6: Rewrite using the underlined word, make any changes if necessary: *To succeed in – To make/ have a success in – To be successful in*

1. He made a success in getting a place at art school.
2. I succeeded in discussing it with her.

EXERCISE 7: Rewrite using the underlined word, make any changes if necessary: *To bathe – To take a bath – To have a bath, To visit Sb/Sw – To pay Sb/Sw a visit – To pay a visit to Sb/Sw*

1. He takes a bath every morning.
2. I think I'll have a bath and go to bed.
3. If you have time, pay a visit to the local museum.
4. I paid a visit to New York 5 years ago.

EXERCISE 8: Rewrite using the underlined word, make any changes if necessary: *To look at – To have a look at*

1. I want to buy a new dictionary. Can I have a look at that one?
2. She looked at me and smiled.

EXERCISE 9: Rewrite using the underlined word, make any changes if necessary: *To talk with – To have a talk with, To need to do St – To have a need of doing St – To be/ stand in need of St/ doing St – To feel a need to do St*

1. You have no need of answering all the questions in their order.
2. I had a need of getting some sleep.
3. He didn't need to go to hospital.
4. I had a long talk with my boss about my career prospects.
5. There's no need for you to start yet.

EXERCISE 10: Adjective/ noun – Adverb/ verb Transformation

1. He's a **careful writer**. => He **writes carefully**.

2. I'm a loud singer. => I

3. She's a fast swimmer. => She

4. He's a bad actor. => He

5. Elizabeth's beautiful painter. => Elizabeth

6. He is a quick typist. => He

7. He is a bad swimmer. => He

8. She is a marvelous dancer. => She

9. She is a good cook. => She

10. He is a fast runner. => He

11. She is a good English speaker. => She

12. John is a careless driver. => John

PRACTICE ON STYLES

1. There's no need for you to talk so loudly. => You don't ...

(DH QG TP.HCM – Khoi D – chuyen ban 97-98, P.238)

2. The Prime Minister was determined to remain in office. => The Prime Minister had no ...

(... intention of giving up the office/ resigning.) (Hoc Vien QHQT – Khoi D 97-98, P.295)

3. It isn't necessary to finish the work today. => You don't ...

(You don't have to finish the work today./ You don't need to finish the work today.)

(CHUYÊN ĐỀ SP Ha Noi – 97-98 P.330)

4. This problem cannot be solved instantly. => There is no ...

(There is no instant solution to this problem./ There is no point in solving this problem instantly.) (DH An Ninh – 2001-2002, P.18)

5. Richard reduced his intake of fatty food and lost seven kilos in a month!

=> Richard cut ...

(Richard cut down his intaking of fatty food and lost seven kilos in a month...) (DH An Ninh – 2001-2002, P.18)

6. I can't tell lies well. => I'm not ...

(I'm not very good at telling lies.) (DH Da Nang – 2001-2002, P.42)

7. The children's singing was really beautiful. => The children sang ...

(The children sang really beautifully.) (DHNN – 2001-2002, P.62)

8. At school, my reading was very slow and my writing was illegible.

=> I read very ...

(I read very slowly and wrote illegibly (when I was) at school.) (DHNN – 2001-2002, P.62)

9. I never intended to help such a man. => I never had ...

(HV Ngan Hang – 2001-2002, P. 102)

10. The railway workers do not intend to call off their strike. => The railway workers have no ...

(The railway workers have no intention of calling off their strike.) (HV Ngan Hang Phan Vien TP. HCM – 2001-2002, P. 108)

11. Did you sleep well last night? => Did you have a?

(Did you have a good sleep last night?) (DHDL Hung Vuong – 2001-2002, P. 172)

12. It is a three-month course. => The course ...

(The course last three months.) (CHUYÊN ĐỀ Ban Cong QTKD – 2001-2002, P. 218)

13. Astronomy is one of Tan's main interests. => Tan finds ...

(Tan finds astronomy interesting.. – BTTA 10 – P.155)

14. This kind of food has a really delicious taste. => This kind of food tastes ...

(really delicious.) (BTTH TA 10 – P.112)

15. The cost of living has gone up considerably in the last few years.

=> There has been ...

(a considerable rise/increase in the cost of living in the last few years.)

16. She refused to answer, which was disappointing. => Her ...

(refusal to answer was disappointing.) (BTTA 11 – P.142)

17. The teacher gave the class an explanation of the theory. **(explained)**

=> ...

(The teacher explained the theory to the class.) (BTTA 12 – P.240)

18. I don't understand the reference of this phrase. **(to)** => ...

(I don't understand what this phrase refers to.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.39)

19. You were in my dreams last night. **(about)** => ...

(I dreamt about you last night.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.39)

20. I was exasperated when the appointment was cancelled once again.

=> Imagine ...

(my exasperation when .../ how exasperated I was/felt when ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.79)

21. He said he disapproved of people who smoked. (**expressed**)

=> ...

(He expressed his *disapproval* of people who smoked. (BD HSG TA 11 – P.68)

22. I have every confidence in your ability to run the business without help. (**confident**)

=> ...

(I am totally/completely confident of your ability to run the business without help.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.143)

(Tôi hoàn toàn tin vào khả năng điều hành doanh nghiệp của bạn mà không cần sự giúp đỡ.)

- **To have confidence in Sb/St:** tin ở ai, tin vào điều gì

- **To be confident of St:** tin tưởng, tin chắc là ...

23. The police acted quickly and averted an accident. (**PROMPT**) =>

(The police's prompt action averted an accident.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.165)

- **Prompt:** quick

24. We haven't received confirmation of hotel booking yet.

=> Our hotel booking hasn't ...

(Our hotel booking hasn't been confirmed yet.) (DH Ngoại Thương – 2001-2002, P.66)

25. Attendances at the exhibition have been down this year. (BD HSG TA 11 – P.57)

=> The exhibition ...

(hasn't been attended well this year. (số người tham gia cuộc triển lãm năm nay giảm.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.57)

26. I am constantly amused by Rosemary's ridiculous ideas. (**SOURCE**)

=> Rosemary's ridiculous ideas are

(a constant source of amusement to me.)

(Tôi thường xuyên vui với những ý tưởng kỳ quái của Rosemary. => Những ý tưởng ... là một nguồn vui thường xuyên đối với tôi.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.181)

27. He is on the fifteenth page of the report he's typing. => So far he ...

(So far he has typed fifteen pages of the report.) (DHNN – 2001-2002, P.66)

28. He speaks more persuasively than his brother. => He is a ...

(He is a more persuasive speaker than his brother.) (Hoc Viên KHQS – Khoi D 97-98, P.276)

29. A true story forms the basis of Mary's new novel. (**on**)

=> (Mary's new novel is based on a true story.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.39)

30. The illiteracy rate has risen sharply. => There ...

(has been a sharp *rise/increase* in the illiteracy rate.)

31. There has been dramatic fall in the government budget for illiteracy eradication.

=> The government budget for illiteracy eradication ...

(has *fallen/decreased/gone down* dramatically.)

32. There has been a sharp fall in the number of illiterate people in big cities.

=> The number of illiterate people in big cities ...

(has *fallen/decreased/gone down* sharply.)

33. There has been a dramatic rise in the need for high quality English courses.

=> The need for high quality English courses ...

(has risen/gone up/increased dramatically.)

34. Teacher's salary has increased slightly. => There ...

(has been a slight increase/rise in teacher's salary.)

35. Unemployment has decreased steadily. => There ...

(has been a steady decrease/fall in unemployment.)

36. Living standards have improved slightly. => There ...

(has been a slight improvement in living standard.)

37. There has been a steady fall in the number of jobs. => The number of jobs ...

(has fallen/decreased/gone down steadily.)

38. That question cannot be answered satisfactorily. => There is ...

(no satisfactory answer for that question.) (solution to the problem, answer for the question)

(BTTA 11 – P117)

39. The number of road accidents has soared in recent months. => There ...

(has been a huge/dramatic increase in the number of road accidents in recent months.)

(BD HSG TA 11 – P.69)

40. The completion of the work was scheduled for last week.

=> The work was to ...

(have been completed (by the end of) last week.) (Công việc này được lên kế hoạch/dự định hoàn thành vào tuần trước. => style + perfect passive voice with To Infinitive) (Việc hoàn thành công việc này đã được sắp xếp/lên kế hoạch vào tuần trước) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.69)

40. The number of accidents has gone down steadily since the speed limit was imposed.

(DECLINE)

=> ...

(There has been a steady decline in the number of accidents since the speed limit was imposed.

41. It's almost nine months since I stopped subscribing to that magazine.

=> I cancelled ...

(my subscription to that magazine nine months ago.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.166)

42. The number of people applying for university grants fell last year. **(fall)**

=> There **was a fall in the** number of people applying for university grants last year.

N (S) + V => There + be + a + N (from V) + in + N (S) (CAE - 1)

43. It's difficult to know what my reaction would have been in that situation. **(how)**

=> I'm not in that situation.

(I'm not sure/certain how I would have reacted in that situation. (CAE - 1)

44. There has been a sharp rise in the price of petrol this month. **(RISEN)**

=> The this month.

(The price of petrol has risen sharply this month. (CAE - 3)

45. Tom's company had less success with its exports this year. **(SO)**

=> Tom's company was with its exports this year.

(Tom's company was **not so successful** with its exports this year. (CAE - 3)

46. A number of sporting events had to be cancelled owing to the bad weather. (**LED**)

=> Bad weather of a number of sporting events.

(Bad weather **led to the canceling/cancellation** of a number of sporting events. (CAE - 3)

47. I've been greatly impressed by the way Jasper deals with problems. (**MADE**)

=> Jasper's way of dealing with problems has me.

(Jasper's way of dealing with problems has **made a great impression on** me. (CAE - 3)

48. Hilary was asked to give an explanation for making the mistake. (**WHY**)

=> Hilary was asked to the mistake.

(Hilary was asked to **explain why she (had) made** the mistake. (CAE - 3)

49. Pat doesn't intend to have a holiday this year. (**INTENTION**)

=> Pat has on holiday this year.

(Pat has **no intention of going** on holiday this year. (CAE-3)

- **Go on holiday**: đi nghỉ mát/ nghỉ phép = Have a holiday - **Go on business**: đi công tác

50. John thought it was very strange that Fred had not answered his letter. (**FAILURE**)

=> John thought that his letter was very strange.

(John thought that **Fred's failure to answer** his letter was very strange. (CAE-3)

- **Failure to do St**: việc không làm gì đó, ... - **Fail to do St**: do/does/did not do St

51. The costs of digital photography have come down over the last few years. (**DROP**)

=> There the costs of digital photography over the last few years.

(There **has been a drop in** the costs of digital photography over the last few years. (CAE-4)

=> Style + synonym verb phrase.

52. Which games is she particularly good at, Mrs Kay? **play** => Which games , Mrs Kay?

(Which games ... **does she play particularly well** ... , Mrs Kay?)

53. Organized activities don't interest Eva very much. **interested**

=> Eva organized activities.

(Eva ... **is not very interested in** ... organized activities.)

54. She could not understand how they were related. **connection**

=> She could not understand to her.

(She could not understand ... **their connection** ... to her.) (Cô ấy không thể hiểu ... sự liên quan giữa họ với cô ấy)

55. He was very rude when he spoke to the old man. **politely** => He the old man.

(He ... **did not speak politely to** ... the old man.)

56. Mary is employed by IBM, isn't she? **works**=> Mary
 she?
 (Mary**works for IBM, doesn't**..... she?)
57. There have been more redundancies this year than before. **NUMBER**
 => There has been a rise redundancies this year.
(in the number of)
58. How does a rock climber differ from a mountaineer? **BETWEEN**
 => What a rock climber and a mountaineer?
(is the difference between)
59. We are earning less than we are spending, I'm afraid. **EXPENDITURE**
 => Our our income, I'm afraid.
(expenditure is more/greater than)
60. I don't think having luxuries in life is necessary. **NECESSITY**
 => I don't having luxuries in life.
(see the/any necessity of/in)
61. She types with care. => She is ...
(She is a careful typist.)
62. He has no intention of leaving the city. => He doesn't ...
 (He doesn't intend to leave the city.)
63. The villagers welcomed us cordially. => The villagers gave ...
(The villagers gave us a cordial welcome.)
64. She has a strong desire for a scholarship. => She desires ...
(She desires strongly for a scholarship.)
65. I slept well last night. => I had ...**(I had a good sleep last night.)**
66. Some children give a great deal of thought to their future work.
(Some children think a great deal of their future work.)
67. He visits us whenever he is in town. => He pays ...
(He pays a visit to us whenever he is in town.)
68. We always look carefully at all the examples the teacher is explaining.
(We always take a careful look at all the examples the teacher is explaining we always have a careful look at all the examples the teacher is explaining.)
69. She has no interest in studying geography. => She isn't ...
(She isn't interested in studying geography.)
70. She doesn't know what will be. => She has ...
(She has no knowledge of what will be)
71. My new assistant knows a lot about anaesthetics. **(knowledge)**
 (My new assistant has a good/ thorough knowledge of anaesthetics.)
72. I was strongly determined to complete my dissertation by the end of the month.
 => **I had**
(I had a strong determination to complete my dissertation by the end of the month.)

73. Someone suggested that we should stop manufacturing the low-price items.
(There **was a suggestion that we should stop manufacturing the low-price items.**)
74. Albert is a poor card-player. (... **well.**) => ...
(Albert cannot/ does not play cards well.)
75. My salary hasn't risen since January. => There ...
(There **has not been rise in my salary since January.**)
76. Angie suspects this man of stealing her watch. => Angie has ...
(Angie has a suspicion that this man stole her watch.)
77. Jack isn't so much interested in Usa as in her parents' big fortune. => Lisa ...
(Lisa **doesn't interest Jack so much as her parents' big fortune.**)
78. The farmers are in a desperate need of financial backing. (... **badly.**)
(**The farmers need financial backing badly.**)
79. Why did Mary resign? (the reason) => What ...
(What **was the reason for Mary's resignation?**)
80. Hardly anybody applied for the job. (**applicants**)
(There were very **few applicants for the job.**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.47)
81. Those children were not very well educated. => Those children's ...
(**education was not very good.**) (BTTH 11 – P.172)
82. People sometimes suggest that we are not all equal. This makes some people very angry.
=> Any ... (**suggestion that we are not all equal makes some people very angry.**) (BTTH 11 – P.172)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 10: BỒI DƯỠNG KIẾN THỨC NÂNG CAO VỀ MỆNH ĐỀ DANH TỪ

Noun Clauses

*. Noun clause là một mệnh đề phụ thực hiện chức năng như một danh từ bình thường, được nối với mệnh đề chính bởi các từ nối THAT, WHO, WHOM, WHAT, WHICH, WHERE, WHEN, HOW, WHETHER, WHY; WHOEVER, WHATEVER, WHICHEVER, WHEREVER, WHENEVER, WHOMEVER, HOWEVER Trong đó “that” và “what” là được sử dụng thường xuyên nhất. Trong mệnh đề danh từ, trật tự từ trong câu thường ở dạng khẳng định, không dùng dạng câu hỏi.

1. N.C as a Subject

- E.g. *That George learned how to swim* is a miracle.
What he said was not true.
Whether the weather will change or not is difficult to tell.
What you think is not my problem.

2. NC as an Object of a verb or a preposition

- E.g. I didn't believe *what he said*.
He said *that he had seen me before*.
You are responsible for *what you have done*.

Except for that, noun clause markers cannot be omitted. Only **that** can be omitted, but it can be omitted only if it is **not** the first word in a sentence:

correct: Billy's mistake was that he refused to take lessons.

correct: Billy's mistake was he refused to take lessons.

correct: That Billy jumped off the pier surprised everyone.

not correct: Billy jumped off the pier surprised everyone.

PRACTICE

1. Do you know _____?
A. where we will be taking the TOEFL test B. where will we be taking the TOEFL test
C. where we will taking the TOEFL test D. which we will be taking the TOEFL test
2. _____ changed his life forever.
A. That Tomo did B. What did Tomo do C. What Tomo did D. Who Tomo did
3. I will talk _____.
A. about whatever is on your mind B. whatever is on your mind
C. about whenever is on your mind D. about whichever is on your mind
4. I don't know _____.
A. when will we go to the football game B. whom we will go to the football game
C. whenever we will go to the football game D. when we will go to the football game
5. _____ when the others will arrive?
A. Do Steve know B. Do Steve knows C. Does Steve know D. Is Steve know
6. Did the student hear _____?
A. who Jim Drake said about open university advising B. what Jim Drake said about open university advising
C. what did Jim Drake say about open university advising
7. After four hours of interrogation, the police officers finally figured out _____.
A. who he was behind the Bank of America bank robbery B. who was behind Bank of America bank robbery
C. who was behind the Bank of America bank robbery D. whose was behind the Bank of America bank robbery
8. _____ is hire a tutor who can help them with their math skills.
A. What they do B. What should they do C. Whatever they should do D. What they should do
9. Do you know _____?
A. who's house that is B. whose house is that C. whose house that is D. whose house is
10. _____ is unimportant to her peers.
A. If she passes B. Whether does she pass or not
C. Whether she pass or not D. Whether she passes or not

PRACTICE ON NOUN CLAUSE

1. The concert was boring. It was true. (that) => ...

(That the concert was boring was true./ It was true that the concert was boring.) (DH Hang Hai – Khoi D 97-98, P.143)

2. It was dark. I could not read the letter. (the reason why) => ...

(DH Hang Hai – Khoi D – chuyen ban 97-98, P.161) (The reason why **I could not read the letter was that it was dark.**)

3. Mary didn't come. That made him sad. (The fact that ...) => ...

(**The fact that Mary didn't come made him sad. = Mary didn't come, which made him sad.**)

(DH SP Quy Nhon – Khoi D 97-98, P.247)

4. When will you ring me up? I want to know this. => ...

(I want to know when you will ring me up. (CHUYÊN ĐỀ Hai Quan – P.344)

5. What I want to do is start my own business. I'm keen.

=> I am ...

(**keen on starting my own business.**) (BT TA 11 – P.8)

6. She was so good to me that I'll always remember it. => I'll always remember ...

(**how good she was to me.**) (BT TA 11 – P.117)

7. We need to make people realize that drug-taking is self-destructive.

=> What ...

(**we need to make people realize is that drug-taking is self-destructive.**) (BT TA 11 – P.171)

8. It's all his talk of poverty that really annoys me. => What ...

(**really annoys me is all his talk of poverty.**) (BT TA 11 – P.172)

9. Most governments want to stop drugs coming into their countries.

=> What ...

(**most governments want is to stop drugs coming into their countries.**) (BT TA 11 – P.184)

10. What I want more than anything is peace and quiet. (**all**)

=> What I want ...

(**above all is peace and quiet. – more than anything = above all (else)**) (BT TA 12 – P.124)

11. I don't understand the reference of this phrase. (**to**) => ...

(**I don't understand what this phrase refers to.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.39)

12. Why no one checked the man's story is what amazes me. => The thing ...

(**that amazes me is why no one checked the man's story.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.104)

13. It is extremely unfair that no witnesses were questioned.

=> The fact ...

(**that no witnesses were questioned is extremely unfair.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.104)

(The fact that + clause = that + clause = what + clause ...: => Noun Clause)

14. All that's involved is signing a few papers. (**just**)

=> ...

(You just need to sign a few papers. (BD HSG TA 11 – P.155)

- All + clause = noun clause: tất cả những gì liên quan là ... => không dùng **all what**

15. What really depresses me is this continual wet weather. (**gets**)

=> ...

(What really gets me down is this continual wet weather.) => Noun clause + Phrasal Verb
(BD HSG TA 11 – P.167)

16. I am very much looking forward to seeing my great grandson for the first time.

=> What ...

(I am very much looking forward to is seeing my great grandson for the first time.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.72)

17. He first thought of becoming a writer when he won a prize at school.

=> What ...

(What first made him think of becoming a writer was when he won a competition at school.)

18. They had never considered leaving their money to Philip.

=> The last ...

(The last thing they (had) considered was leaving their money to Philip.)

19. She only ever wanted to learn how to play the drums. => All ...

(All she ever wanted (to do) was (to) learn how to play the drums.)

20. Classes have got larger in many schools.

=> What has ...

(What has happened in many schools is that classes have got larger.)

21. She paints water colour pictures of flowers as a hobby.

=> What she ...

(What she does as a hobby is (to) paint water colour pictures of flowers.)

22. She felt very nervous because of the large number of people.

=> What ...

(What made her (feel) very nervous was the large number of people.)

23. I'm more worried by the expense of the journey than by the time it takes.

=> It's not ...

(It's not the amount of time it/the journey takes that worries me as/so much as the expense of the journey/its expense.)

24. When you wake up, you should make a note of your dreams.

=> What ...

(What you should do is make a note of your dreams when you wake up.)

25. I am very much looking forward to seeing my grandson for the first time.

=> What ...

(What I am really looking forward to is seeing my grandson for the first time.)

26. Going out to parties is the only thing you think about.

=> All ...

(All you think about is going out to parties.)

27. It's no excuse that a danger warning was printed on the packaging.

=> The fact ...

(The fact that the packaging contained a danger warning is no excuse. / The fact that there was a danger warning printed on the packaging is no excuse.)

28. The special effects were the part of the film I liked the best.

=> What I ...

(What I like best about the film was the special effects.)

29. What time does your plane land tomorrow? WHEN => Can you tell tomorrow?

(me when your plane lands)

30. Did anyone raise the subject of the school trip? BROUGHT

=> Can you tell me the subject of the school trip?

(if anyone brought up)

31. Simply ask if you come up against any unforeseen problems.

=> All

(All you have to do is asking (to ask) if you come up against any unforeseen problems.)

32. All the people I have contact with disapprove of the changes.

=> None

(None of the people I have contact with approve(s) of the changes.)

33. Celia had no other alternative but take a huge loan from the bank.

=> The only

(The only alternative (that) Celia had was to take a huge loan from the bank.)

34. We were surprised by the fact that no support was offered to the survivors.

=> What ...

(What surprised us was the fact that no support was offered to the survivors.)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 11: BỒI DƯỠNG KIẾN THỨC NĂNG CAO VỀ GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES

GERUND AND INFINITIVES (1)

Structures with To Infinitive: It + ...

I. Aims

- To understand and use some Phrases and Structures with To Infinitive and do related sentence transformation exercises.

II. Teaching Aids

- Handouts

III. Procedure

- T. presents the following contents item by item, eliciting examples, ...

1. It takes/took Sb Time to do St

E.g. - We go to school in 20 minutes. => It ... (takes us 20 minutes to go to school.)

2. It + be(ht) + Adj + to Infi ⇔ V.ing + be(ht) + Adj

E.g. - It's not difficult to learn English. => Learning ... (English is not difficult.)

3. It + be(tense) + For Sb + Adj + to Infi ⇔ Find it + Adj + to Infi ⇔ Find + V.ing + Adj

E.g. - He finds it difficult to learn Chinese. ⇔ It ... (is difficult for him to learn Chinese.)
⇔ He finds ... (learning Chinese difficult.)

4. It + be(tense) + a/an + N + (For Sb) + to Infi

E.g. - Learning English is a must. => It is a must for you to learn English.

5. It + be(tense) + Adj + of + Sb + to Infi (Chỉ áp dụng cho các Adj nói về tính cách: kind, nice, thoughtless, silly, ...)

E.g. - I wish you hadn't done that. (thoughtless) => It ... (was thoughtless of you to do that.)
- You shouldn't have left that company. (silly) => It ... (was silly of you to leave that company.)

GERUND AND INFINITIVES (2)

Other Structures with Gerund and Infinitives

I. Aims

- To understand and use some Verbs, Phrases and Structures with Gerund (V.ing), To Infinitive and Bare Infinitive and do related sentence transformation exercises.

II. Teaching Aids

- Handouts

III. Procedure

- T. presents the following contents item by item, eliciting examples, ...

1. V/Phrases/Structures + V.ing: enjoy, hate, regret, involve/mean (bao gồm, có nghĩa là phải ...), **succeed in, Be arrested for** (bị bắt vì), **deny, prevent Sb from ...**, **there's no point in/ It's no use/It's no good/It's pointless** (vô ích, ... chẳng ích gì) **Be on the point of** (vừa định), **It's a waste of time** (lãng phí thời gian), ...

E.g. - We was about to leave when the phone rang. **(point)** => We was ... **(on the point of leaving when the ...)**

- You are wasting time asking him for help. **(point)** => There's ... **(no point in asking him for help.)**

2. V/Phrases/Structures + To Infinitive: fail to do St, manage to do St, appear/seem/happen to do St, be (un)able to do St, lead Sb to do St (khiến ai làm gì), **enable Sb to do St, resolve to do St** (kiên quyết)

E.g.

3. V/Phrase/Structure + V_(BI): Let Sb do St, would rather/would sooner do St,

E.g.

PRACTICE: IT +

a. It takes/ took ...

1. She traveled to Paris in two weeks.

=> It ...

2. We had to spend three hours to open the door.

=> It ...

3. I had to spend 2 hours to finish my work.

=> It ...

4. The flight to Moscow lasted three and a half hours.

=> It took ...

5. I spent an hour doing this exercise.

=> It took ...

6. The astronauts orbited the earth in two hours.

=> It took ...

7. Mastering a second language takes time and patience.

=> It ...

b. Other Structures with IT and To Infinitive/V.ing ...

1. It is better to make a wrong decision than to make no decision at all.

=> Making a wrong decision ...

2. Handicapped people find shopping in supermarkets difficult.

=> It is ...

3. Living in the city is exciting.

=> Some people find it ...

4. Safeguarding our natural resources is now a must.

=> It is ...

5. It is disappointing that we haven't heard from Molly.

=> We are ...

6. We can't possibly work in this noise.

=> It's ...

7. There is no point in asking her out. She never goes out to restaurants.

=> **It is useless**

8. If we wait long enough, we'll get what we want.

=> It's just ...

9. It is difficult to answer her question adequately.

=> Hers is ...

10. It is the responsibility of parents to monitor what young children watch on TV.

=> Monitoring ...

11. From Algiers to Niamey by road is a long and difficult journey.

=> It ...

12. I wish you hadn't thrown that out. **silly** => It was that out.

13. I wish I'd told the others about this. **mistake** => It was the others about this.

14. Making a speech to a large audience can be very frightening.

=> It ...

15. Inviting them to take part might be a good idea. => It ...

16. I am honoured to be here tonight on this very special occasion.

=> It ...

17. No one can predict the future accurately. => It ...

18. Roses can't possibly grow in such poor land. => It's impossible

19. The firemen had to break the door down. **necessary**

=> It to break the door down.

20. It's not common for women to be racing drivers. **seldom** => Racing drivers women.

21. It's unusual for Jane to lose at backgammon. **hardly** => Janeat backgammon.

22. It's rare for my sister to take a holiday. **goes** => My sister holiday.

23. Brian must do exercise to strengthen his back after the surgery. (**compulsory**)

=> It ...

24. Can Mr Bailey deliver the letters by tomorrow? => Is it ...

25. It's hardly possible to reach the peak of the mountain on foot.

=> It's nearly

26. Should you practice the piano so often? (**advisable**) => ...

27. We shouldn't have wasted so much time waiting for the film star to turn up. (**worth**)

=> It

PRACTICE : V/Phrases/Structues + V.ing

1. He stole some money and was arrested for it. => He was ...
2. I have to write letters, but I hate it. => I hate ...
3. John failed to find the source of the River Nile. => John did not succeed ...
4. If I had worked hard, I wouldn't have failed the exam. => Tom regretted
8. Henry denied stealing Mary's handbag. => Henry said that ...
9. We couldn't drive because of the fog. => The fog ...
12. Richard reduced his intake of fatty food and lost seven kilos in a month!
=> Richard cut ...
13. While mending the road, the accidentally blocked our water pipes.
=> They accidentally cut off ...
15. They always make fun of me and I hate it. => I hate ...
16. I don't see the point of redecorating this room. => Redecorating this room ...
17. I'm always nervous when I take exams. => Taking ...
18. Mrs. Scott is proud of her cooking. => Mrs. Scott prides ...
19. You can try to get Tim to lend you his car but you won't succeed.
=> There's no point ...
20. They were unable to finish their tennis game because of a heavy shower.
=> A heavy shower ...
21. It's not worth trying to make her change her mind. => There's ...
22. I'll be happy to give you a lift. => I don't mind ...
23. He was sorry didn't say goodbye to her at the airport. => He regretted ...
24. Why not go there by bus? => Anne suggested ...
25. You can try to get Jim to lend you his car, but you won't succeed. => There's noi point ...
26. Why don't you put your luggage under the seat? => He suggested ...
27. The driver said it was true that he didn't have a licence. => The driver admitted ...
28. I hate to get up in the dark. => I can't ...
29. Seeing Nelson Mandela will always in my memory. => I'll never ...
30. We couldn't drive because of the fog. => The fog prevented ...
31. I realized I had said something wrong. (**conscious**) => ...
32. Collecting stamps from foreign countries is one of Jane's interests.
=> Jane ...
33. He takes great delight in proving others wrong. (**enjoys**) => He
34. Reading scientific books is one of my interests. => I am ...
35. The tram couldn't run because of the storm. => The storm ...
36. My English friend finds using chopsticks difficult. => My English friend isn't ...
37. It won't be difficult to get a ticket for the game. => You won't have any ...
38. Driving on the left is strange and difficult for Americans. => Americans aren't ...
39. My aunt sent me a wonderful present. => I must write and thank ...
40. Some people ruin their own lives. => But you just can't prevent ...

41. There's no point in phoning Caroline – she's away. (**time**)
=> ...
42. You can try to get Tim to lend you his car but you won't succeed. (**point**)
=> ...
43. Maile was angry because his sister had broken his cassette player.
=> Maile was angry with ...
44. Six cars were stolen from the car park. A teenage boy is responsible.
=> A teenage boy is responsible ...
45. Zuthato likes visiting old churches. => Zuthato is ...
46. The manager insisted on our wearing dark suits. (**wear**)
=> ...
47. Ann paints her landscapes with great pleasure. => Ann takes ...
48. She was afraid. She did not spend the night alone. (**of**) => ...
49. Why don't we have a good time in the casino this night? => How ...
50. If I take the job I'll have to move to Paris. => Taking the job ...
51. It's very kind of you to give a lift. => I appreciate ...
52. It would be a good idea to use honey instead of sugar. => Why don't you try ...
53. I'm quite happy to look after the baby for you. => I don't mind ...
54. I'm sorry I didn't go to university. (**regret**) => ...
55. There is a risk that he will miss the plane if he waits. (**risks**) => ...
56. Calling Jim is pointless, because his phone is out of order. (**use**) => ...
57. He has refused to keep guard at night. (**an objection**)
58. You waste time if you copy your work out again, don't do it. => Don't ...
59. Brenda really hate staying in expensive hotels. => Brenda can't ...
60. If you work for this company, you have to travel a lot. => Working for this company involves ...
61. Joe doesn't like it when people treat him like a child. => Joe resents ...
62. You should go to the dentist at once. => Don't put ...
63. Dickens' last novel was unfinished when he died. (**without**)
=> ...
64. Be sure to say goodbye to your grandmother before you leave. (**without**)
=> ...
65. The professor has been occupied with preparing the exam questions. (**busy**)
66. The boys clearly intended to make trouble when they entered the hotel.
=> The boys were ...
67. Staying on late at work is becoming less of a problem for me. (**used**)
=> ...
68. She won't allow you to leave the building, will she? (**intent**)
=> ...
69. Andy is terribly bored with his new occupation. => Andy finds ...

(Andy finds **his new occupation terribly boring.**)

70. Although we sent a message, there was no reply. (**tried**) => ...

71. I have no memory of when I found this book. (**remember**) => ...

72. Perhaps finding someone to replace her is proving difficult for him.

=> He appears ...

73. I'm excited that the new theatre will be completed soon.

=> I'm looking ...

74. She took extra night classes, so as to have to repeat the course.

=> She avoided

75. He said that nobody had given him money. => He denied ...

76. It's not normal for me to have to work this hard. => I am not ...

77. Perhaps, I will spend this night in a hotel. (**thinking**) => ...

78. John was sorry to have made such a fuss at the party. => John regretted ...

79. They continued to suggest that I was lying. (**persist**) => ...

80. The accident victim was having increasing difficulty in breathing. (**DIFFICULT**)

81. You have done really well to pass your driving test so quickly.

=> She congratulated ...

82. "I wonder if you could possibly open the door for me?" (**MIND**)

=> ...

83. The children pestered us for sweets. (**KEPT**)

=> ...

84. Have they got anything against our sleeping in their tent? (**mind**)

=> ...

85. "I'm sorry I didn't ring you to say I'd be late."

=> He apologized

86. "I never told anyone about your scheme," he said.

=> He denied ...

187 Joan said she didn't usually drink coffee in the morning. (**accustomed**)

=> ...

88. We decided not to look for another flat for a couple of months. (**PUT**)

=> We decided to for another flat for a couple of months.

89. I wish I hadn't said I'd help Manuel move house this weekend. (**REGRET**)

=> I I'd help Manuel move house this weekend.

90. Treating her like that was very unfair. (**DESERVE**)

=> She treated like that.

91. I hope he wasn't offended when I told him I thought he was putting on weight.

=> I hope he didn't I thought he was putting on weight.

92. Mrs. Wilson says she's sorry she didn't attend the meeting yesterday morning.

=> Mrs. Wilson sends ...

93. For further information, please send a self-addressed envelope to the above address.

=> Further information can ...

94. There's no point in your phoning Caroline – she's away. (**TIME**)

=> ...

95. Clara said that she had not seen the missing letter. (**having**)

=> Clara the missing letter.

96. It took Layla five minutes to find her car keys. (**spent**)

=> Layla for her car keys.

97. Rosa found it very difficult to persuade her boss to give her a pay rise. (**great**)

=> Rosa had her boss to give her a pay rise.

98. Because of its price, the book may never become a bestseller. (**prevent**).

=> The price of the book may a bestseller.

99. Have you always been interested in hunting? (**fond**) => ...

100. We got started on the new project immediately. (**time**)

=> We lost on the new project.

101. He's likely to lose his job if he keeps disagreeing with his boss. (**danger**)

=> If he keeps disagreeing with his boss, he's from his job.

102. He no longer thinks he can find a job before the end of the year. (**hope**)

=> He has given a job before the end of the year.

103. There is no way Lisa will give up her independence to get married. (**of**)

=> Lisa has up her independence to get married.

104. Our son wants to see the military parade very much. (**anxious**)

=> ...

105. At the beginning of the program the panel of experts discussed the media and its importance in education. (**discussion**)

=> The panel of experts started the program the media and its importance in education.

106. The company is unable to guarantee an allocated car-park space to all employees. (**count**)

=> The company's employees shouldn't allocated a car-parking space.

107. The guide recommended we should leave very early. (**our**)

108. Mark doesn't like to be told what to do. => Mark hates ...

109. How did you manage to carry such a heavy suitcase? (**cope**) => ...

110. The pool closes in ten minutes, so there isn't enough time to go swimming now. (**WORTH**)

=> It now as the pool closes in ten minutes.

111. James would only speak to the head of department alone. (**ON**)

=> James to the head of department alone.

112. If you run every day, your breathing improves quickly. **running**
=> Daily your breathing.
113. The students regretted that they had missed the lecture. => The students regretted not ...
114. I write to him almost everyday. => Hardly ...
115. He was offered a job but rejected it so that he could carry on with his studies. **turned**
=> He was offered a job but order to carry on with his studies.
116. She says she finds nothing unusual about stormy weather in this country. (**used**)
=> ...
117. She hasn't decided yet whether to buy this house or not. (**hesitating**)
=> ...
118. I don't find it difficult to get up early any more. **used** => I
..... up early.
119. He really likes correcting her English. **pleasure** => He
..... correcting her English.
120. He locked the gate so that the dog wouldn't escape. **prevent**
=> He locked the gate escaping.
121. They did not like to pay extra taxes. **objected** => They
..... extra taxes.
122. It is often difficult to find an answer to a problem. **solution**
=> Finding a problem is often difficult.
123. I advised him to stop smoking. **suggested** => I
..... stop smoking.
124. My mother doesn't like us to stay out late. **approve**
=> My mother doesn't out late.
125. They could not understand what she said. **difficulty** => They
..... what she said.
126. She caught the early bus so that she would not be late for work. **avoid**
=> She caught the early bus late for work.
127. He found it hard to start the car. **difficulty** => He
..... the car.
128. 'You really must stay the night,' he said to us. **insisted** => He
..... the night.
129. 'Would you like to play tennis on Friday?' Emily asked Nick. **felt**
=> Emily asked Nick tennis on Friday.
130. We couldn't drive home because of heavy snow. **prevented**
=> Heavy snow home.
131. She didn't say goodbye when she left. **without** => She
..... goodbye.
132. Murat doesn't mind driving for two hours to work everyday. (**used**)

=> Murat _____ for two hours to work everyday.

133. He doesn't often find it difficult to earn money. (**trouble**) => He seldom

134. You're like another person I've met here recently. (**else**)
=> You remind I've met here recently.

135. I think it would be a good idea if you joined the beginner's class. **SUGGEST**
=> I the beginners class.

136. I'll help you with your homework. **MIND** => I you with your homework.

137. I hated driving on the left at first but now it's OK. **USED** => I on the left now.

138. I don't think it's a good idea to get married too early. **IN** => I don't too early.

139. Did you manage to convince him? **IN** => Did you him?

140. Do you mind if I come over to see you later? **OBJECTION**
=> Do you coming over to see you later?

141. If you must be noisy could you go outside and play. **INSIST**
=> If you noise could you go outside to play.

142. I want to go to university this year. **INTERESTED** => I to university this year.

143. Anthony claimed that the other man caused the collision. (**accused**)
=> ...

144. We demanded to see the hotel manager to make our complaint. **SEEING**
=> We the hotel manager to make our complaint.

145. The boss wouldn't object to you going early today. **OBJECTION**
=> The boss would not you going early today.

146. Did you manage to get in contact with the boss today? **getting**
=> Did you in contact with the boss today?

147. 'Why don't you come over for dinner at the weekend?' he asked her. **suggested**
=> He for dinner at the weekend.

148. Being rude is inexcusable. **excuse** => There is rude.

149. I find driving on the left in England very strange. **accustomed**
=> I on the left in England.

150. Do you mind if I come over to see you later? **OBJECTION**
=> Do you coming over to see you later?

151. Was it difficult for you to assemble the set? (**difficulty**) => ...

152. I was really bored by the film last night. **FOUND** => I
 last night.
153. They say they don't want to play cricket any more. (**bored**)
 => ...
154. I can't wait to see the sights in London. **FORWARD** => I am
 the sights in London.
155. Tom, wouldn't it be a good idea to take the students swimming tomorrow? **HOW**
 => Tom, the students swimming tomorrow?
156. I am starting to find watching television boring. **FED**
 => I am beginning to get television.
157. Looking back, I think I was right to study mathematics at university. **REGRET**
 => Looking back, I mathematics at university.
158. 'Do you want to go for a walk?' asked Bob. **FELT**
 => Bob asked me for a walk.
159. The children are always fascinated by nature programmes on TV. **FIND**
 => The children when they watch them on TV.
160. I am afraid I'm still having problems with understanding life in New York. **used**
 => I living in New York.
161. I'd prefer it if you didn't smoke in here. **mind** =>
 smoking in here.
162. Can I accompany you to the party? **mind** => Do you
 to the party?
163. He decided not to smoke any more as a result of his illness. **gave**
 => He _____ as a result of his illness.
164. I don't fancy going to the cinema this afternoon. **feel**
 => I _____ to the cinema this afternoon.
165. He finds it difficult to learn foreign languages. **problems**
 => He foreign languages.
166. They didn't manage to play tennis due to the bad weather. **prevented**
 => The bad weather _____ tennis.
167. The young clerk didn't know how to deal with this complicated matter. (**capable**)
 => ...
168. In spite of countless obstacles, Jim succeeded in building his own house. (**successful**)
 => ...
169. 'I didn't break the glass' said Paul. **denied** => Paul
 the glass.
170. It was hard for Sarah to understand him. **in** => Sarah
 understanding him.
171. I haven't smoked since 1990. **gave** => I 1990.
172. I would like you to help me do this English exercise. => Do you mind ...
173. It is interesting to go camping with friends in the summer. => Going

174. Little Tommy was expecting Christmas with real delight. (**forward to**)

=> ...

175. She was afraid. She did not spend the night alone. (**of**)

176. Have you always wanted to become a teacher of English? => Have you been ...?

177. Six cars were stolen from the car park. A teenage boy is responsible.

=> A teenage boy is responsible ...

178. Zuthato likes visiting old churches. => Zuthato is ...

179. Maile was angry because his sister had broken his cassette player. => Maile was angry with ...

180. My English friend finds using chopsticks difficult. => My English friend isn't ...

181. There were many noisy students in the hall. => The hall was crowded
.....

182. Reading scientific books is one of my interests. => I am ...

183. It's not a habit of mine to sleep in the afternoon. => I am ...

184. Collecting stamps from foreign countries is one of Jane's interests.

=> Jane ...

185. I realized I had said something wrong. (**conscious**) => ...

186. "Do you want to go and see the new play at the Arts Centre?" Petra asked her friend.
(**INTERESTED**)

=> Petra asked her friend whether to see the new play at the Arts Centre.
play at the Arts Centre.

187. Many people believe that Edilson has the ability to become world judo champion.
(**CAPABLE**)

=> Many people believe that Edilson the world championship in judo.

188. "I'm sorry, but there's no way I'm going to sleep on the floor," Naomi said. (**CLEAR**)

=> Naomi made prepared to sleep on the floor.

189. Mr. Porter has to lock all the doors at night after everyone has left. (**RESPONSIBLE**)

=> The person who all the doors at night after everyone has
left is Mr. Porter.

190. The mouse frightened him. **scared** => Hethe mouse.

PRACTICE: Phrases/Structures + Infinitives

1. After fighting the fire for twelve hours, the firemen succeeded in putting it out.

=> The firemen managed ...

2. I expect that he will get there by lunch time. => I expect him ...

3. Everyone heard about the accident before I did. => I was ...

4. I'd rather not see him tomorrow. => I don't ...

5. "You can leave early," Mr. Benson said to Alison. => Mr. Benson let ...

6. He failed to win the race. => He didn't ...

7. When we were teenagers, we went to a lot of summer camps. => We used ...

8. John smoked cigarettes when he was a young man. => John used ...
9. My father said I could use his car. => My father allowed ...
10. Don't stop him doing what he wants. => Let ...
11. I'll finish the work tonight if you like. => Would you like ...
12. The teacher didn't allow the class to leave before 4.30. => The teacher made ...
13. My lawyer said I shouldn't say anything to the police. => My lawyer advised ...
14. Climbing without a safety rope is forbidden. => You aren't ...
15. Walking home alone is not a good idea. => You ...
16. I don't want us to have a quarrel. (**you**) => ...
17. He couldn't play well in the last match because of his injured knee. => His injured knee made ...
18. It's not necessary for children to do homework every night. => Children ...
19. After a long chase, the police finally succeeded in arresting the thief. (**to**)
=> ...
20. You can trust me to finish the report on time. => I promise ...
21. My brother really wishes he could sing well. (**able**) => My brother regrets not well.
22. Mr. Pinchley doesn't allow his teenage children to go out in the evenings.
=> Mr. Pinchley makes ...
23. It is my impression that she is enjoying her new job a great deal.
=> She seems ...
24. The heavy snow made it impossible for them to have their picnic. => They were ...
24. I think going to see the match is preferable to staying at home in the afternoon.
=> Rather than ...
25. I preferred to take a course in psychology instead of wasting my time at the mathematics department.
=> **Rather** than ...
26. She earns too little to afford to buy expensive cosmetics. => She doesn't
27. She failed to get in touch with her solicitor. (**managed**)
28. I must see the manager! => I demand ...
29. You wouldn't know where the Hilton Hotel is, would you? => Do you happen ...
30. Winning the football pools meant we could buy a new car. (**enabled**)
=> ...
31. I believed you were the murderer because of this clue. (**led**) => ...
32. Does using the hotel swimming pool cost extra? (**pay**) => ...
33. I think that this is the right street. (**appears**) => ...
34. Jean succeeded in finishing all her work on time. (**managed**) =>
35. Is that the manager? I have a complaint about my room.
=> Is that the manager? I wish ...
36. I bet you wouldn't ask David to come with you to the party! => I dare ...

37. It was resolved that the matter would be brought up at the next meeting.
=> They resolved ...
38. The police were told that the use of unnecessary force was forbidden.
=> The police were instructed ...
39. All the hostages were released yesterday by the kidnappers. (**let**)
=> ...
40. Women are not allowed to enter the inner temple. (**let**)
=> ...
41. The censors regarded the film as not being suitable for young children.
=> The film was considered ...
42. The American champion is very tough; he'll never give up. (**too**)
43. I'm doing more work than I bargained for. => I didn't expect ...
44. I missed my train because of the heavy traffic. (**MADE**)
=> The heavy traffic my train.
45. I'm sorry that you've had to wait for me for so long. (**kept**)
=> ...
46. I have called this meeting in order to present the latest sales figures.
=> My purpose ...
47. I'll be happy to show you round the sights of my city when you come to visit me. (**take**)
=> It will be a sightseeing tour of my city when you come to visit me.
48. The region is rich in natural resources. (**offer**)
=> The region has a lot terms of natural resources.
49. Mark once worked for an international charity organization on a voluntary basis. (**as**)
=> Mark used with an international charity organization.
50. I didn't realize that she had decided to come to the meeting. (**decision**)
=> I was unaware attend the meeting.
51. Paul wasn't able to leave the house all day because of the terrible weather. (**impossible**)
=> The terrible weather Paul to leave the house all day.
52. She doesn't mind informing the rest of the party about the bad news. (**letting**)
=> ...
53. John thought it was very strange that Fred had not answered his letter. (**FAILURE**)
=> John thought that his letter was very strange.
54. I don't think you'll have much difficulty understanding the local dialect. (**FIND**)
=> I don't think to understand the local dialect.
55. Jack was worried that he couldn't think of any new ideas for the advertising campaign. (**INABILITY**)

=> What worried Jack up with any new ideas for the advertising campaign.

56. Now the tourists have seen how beautiful it is here, there's a very good chance they'll return. (**HAVING**)

=> The tourists are highly how beautiful it is here.

57. Yasmin's uncle said to her that she should stop her children eating junk food. (**LET**)

=> Yasmin's uncle told her junk food any more.

58. I want to buy a car but, without your financial help, I'll be unable to do it. (**ABLE**)

=> I want to buy a car but I won't you help me financially.

59. John didn't know he had to phone his teacher if he was going to miss a class. (**MEANT**)

=> John didn't know his teacher a ring if he was going to miss a class.

60. My dream was always to go on the stage. => It was ...

61. It looked as if the carrots were bad. **appeared** => The carrots bad.

62. Alexis has decided that he'll go on Tuesday. **planning** => Alexis go on Tuesday.

63. I started revising earlier so I could do more work. **order**

=> I started revising earlier do more work.

64. He invented an illness in order to avoid having to go to school. **so**

=> He invented an illness to go to school.

65. We won't get to the airport in less than 30 minutes. (least)

=> It will 30 minutes to get to the airport.

66. I was on the point of leaving the house when the telephone rang.

=> I was ...

67. It is difficult to tell the truth. => The ...

68. The peasants depend on a good harvest for their existence. (**continue**)

=> The peasants depend on a good harvest ...

69. "Why don't you relax for a while?" she said to me. (take) => She suggested easy for a while.

70. I don't want to go to the meeting. (**rather**) => ...

71. Read the instructions first in order to save time later. **as**

=> Read the instructions first waste time later.

72. My mother wouldn't give me permission to go to the disco. **let**

=> My mother to the disco.

73. "Why don't you buy a bigger house, Sue?" said Amos. **should**

=> Amos suggested a bigger house.

74. The organizing committee would be delighted if you would give the opening lecture at the conference. (**INVITE**)

=> The organizing committee are pleased the opening lecture at the conference.

75. You didn't tell me you were going to be away for a whole month. **(NEGLECTED)**
=> You you were going to be away for a whole month.
76. This water is too cold to brew tea. **(enough)** => ...
77. "If Brian doesn't train harder, I won't select him for the team." said the manager.
=> The manager threatened ...
78. The hijackers haven't set any of the hostages free. **(go)** => ...
79. I left without saying goodbye as I didn't want to disturb the meeting.
=> Rather ...
80. It's not possible to play tennis because of the rain. **makes**
=> The rain to play tennis.
81. Do your parents allow you to watch TV late at night? **let**
=> Do your parents TV late at night?
82. "I'll pick him up from the airport," she said. **offered** => She
from the airport.
83. I was so shocked that I couldn't react. **wasn't** I
..... react.
84. How much is the bus fare from London to Cambridge? **cost**
=> How much from London to Cambridge
by bus?
85. I can understand this quite well. **easy** => It's
understand this.
86. The shelf was so high that he couldn't reach it. **enough** => The shelf was not
..... reach.
87. We would rather stop than continue in this manner. **prefer**
=> We than to continue in this manner.
88. He is helping his mother so that they can finish quickly. **order**
=> He is helping his mother quickly.
89. You will have to pay at least £500 to get that watch. **impossible**
=> You'll find it that watch for less than £500.
90. I don't want to eat this now. **rather** => I eat this now.
91. Mother walked in quietly so as to avoid waking the baby. **order**
=> Mother walked in quietly the baby.
92. I couldn't concentrate fully because of the loud music. **difficult**
=> The loud music fully.
93. The tea is too hot to drink. **enough** => The tea
..... to drink.
94. Paul had difficulty in starting the car. **difficult** => Paul
..... the car.
95. David was too ill to go camping with us. **enough**

=> David _____ to go camping with us.

96. Why wouldn't she give you her telephone number? **refuse**

=> Why _____ give you her telephone number?

97. The pop star left by the back exit so as to avoid meeting the press. **order**

=> The pop star left by the back exit _____ the press.

98. I don't really want to go out tonight. **prefer** => I _____ go out tonight.

99. She couldn't concentrate because the room was so hot. **difficult**

=> The heat in the room _____ to concentrate.

100. We were surprised to see Pamela at the party. **expect**

=> We _____ to see Pamela at the party.

101. It's a four-hour journey from Swansea to London. **travel**

=> It _____ from Swansea to London.

102. I don't really want to leave yet. **rather** => I _____ leave yet.

103. Why are you interested in taking up a new hobby? **want** => Why _____ up a new hobby?

104. It was difficult for my mother to set up the new software. **(found)**

=> My mother _____ up the new software.

105. Shall I call Mr. Paro for you? **(me)**

=> Would _____ Mr. Paro for you?

106. Roberto took a month to design the concept car. **(him)**

=> It _____ to design the concept car.

107. It's not necessary to take a lot of luggage when going on holiday. **much**

=> _____ You _____ luggage when going on holiday.

108. "Don't open it!" he said. **warned** => He _____ open it.

109. Ask Paul to do it. You can rely on him. **let** => Ask Paul to do it. He _____

110. It's really important that you pay the bill today. **REMEMBER**
=> You must _____ the bill today.

111. Meeting John in town was really surprising. **EXPECT** => I _____ John in town.

112. In the future she became a successful business woman. **WENT**
=> She _____ a successful business woman.

113. It seemed that they had visited the place before. => They seemed
(They seemed **to have visited the place before.**)

114. Were you successful in passing the exam? **MANAGE**
=> Did the exam?
115. Making new friends was easy for her. **DIFFICULT** => She didn't
..... new friends.
116. Feel free to telephone if you have any further problems. **CALL**
=> Do not if you have any further
problems.
117. Could I borrow some change for the telephone? **LEND** => Could
..... some change for the telephone?
118. My teacher suggested that I spent the summer in England. **ADVISED**
=> My teacher the summer in England.
119. We are noticing a rise in the cost of living again. **APPEARS** => The cost of living
..... again.
120. I am so exhausted that I won't be able to go out tonight. **TOO**
=> I go out tonight.
121. One runner did not succeed in finishing the race. **ABLE**
=> One runner the race.
122. Remember to return the videos you have rented. **BACK**
=> Don't the videos you have rented.
123. 'What about going for a swim?' John said to me. **SHOULD** => John
..... for a swim.
124. They wanted to apologize for their behaviour: that's why they paid for dinner. **order**
=> They paid for dinner for their behaviour.
125. It isn't necessary to bring skis as they are included in the package. **have**
=> You bring skis as they are included in the package.
126. When I was a child, we would go to the local park every Saturday afternoon. **used**
=> When I was a child, the park every Saturday.
127. Magda allows her children to stay up to midnight on Saturday evenings. **let**
=> Magda late on Saturdays.
128. He couldn't find me at the exhibition. **find** => He wasn't able
..... me at the exhibition.
129. She let her son go to Poznan for the weekend. **allowed** => She
..... to Poznan.
130. Remind me to call Asia. **forget** => Don't let
.....
... Asia.
131. It doesn't need to be finished this afternoon. **finish** => It
..... this afternoon.
132. It isn't necessary to buy a first class ticket. **have** => You a
first class ticket.

133. They found it tiring working for him. **made** => Working for

134. Nobody managed to work out the correct answer. (**failed**) => ...

135. He told me he didn't want to play football with me. **rather**
=> He told me _____ football with me.

136. Maria doesn't want to go swimming today. **rather**
=> Maria _____ go swimming today.

137. 'I wouldn't touch that switch if I were you,' said Jane to her son. **warned**
=> Jane _____ touch the switch.

138. Could you ring me at 10 o'clock, please? **you**
=> I'd like _____ at 10 o'clock, please.

139. Why wouldn't your sister allow you to see her new house? **let**
=> Why wouldn't _____ see her new house?

140. David is too young to drive a car. **old** => David
..... drive a car.

141. The policeman told the thief to empty his pockets. => The policeman made ...

142. The robber came from the back door. => I could feel ...

143. It was so late that nothing could be done. => It was too late ...

144. Xuyên was too ill to go to school. => Xuyên was not ...

145. He learned to speak English well in only one year. => It took
_____.

146. Leaving the medicine around the house is not safe. => It is not

147. Apparently, Sheila wasn't listening to me. (**appear**) => Sheila
.....listening to me.

148. You shouldn't complain about the service here: it's not worth it.

=> It would be absurd for

149. What was the reason for his resignation? (**made**) => ...

150. You don't have to worry about the future. (**no need**) => There ...

151. The books were so dear that I couldn't afford them. **expensive**

=> The books were to buy.

152. We may come a bit late this evening. (**likely**)

153. Is there any likelihood of their passing the exams? => Are they likely ...

154. I'm certainly not going to give you any more money. => I have no ...

155. This factory needs to produce more if it is to survive. (**output**)

PRACTICE: Other Idiomatic Structures with V.ing/Infinitives

1. He told her the ghost story. He wanted to keep her at home at night. (with a view to)
=> ...

2. She didn't say a word as she left the room. => She left the room ...

3. Paul went to see the bank manager about getting a loan. (**view**)

=> ...

4. It's not a habit of mine to sleep in the afternoon. => I am ...
5. As I intended to expand my shop, I made an offer for the premises next door. (with a view to)
=> ...
6. Mark is a passionate skier and he also takes part in skateboarding tournaments.
=> Apart from ...
7. I support the notion to lift the trade embargo. (**for**) => ...
8. You may have serious problems if you don't have any health insurance. (**bound**)
=> ...
9. Can the conflict be only solved by force? => Isn't there ...
10. Do we have to work only night shifts all the time? => is there no alternative
11. I couldn't do anything but suspend the driver's licence. (**no option**)
=> I ...
12. Our grandfather cannot hear well because of his old age. (**hard**)
=> ...
13. I was just going to leave my office when the phone rang. (**about**)
14. Michael works overtime because he wants to pay off his debts. (**view**)
15. Alan is both a good sprinter and a skilled jumper. => Besides ...
16. Several workers refused to join the strike. (**opposed**)
17. With such a poor dealing with the matter he will not probably succeed. (**unlikely**)
18. She can't get into the habit of studying every evening.
=> She can't get used
19. I'm sure Charles bought them a lovely present for their wedding. (**bound**)
=> ...
20. The girl was about to leave when her boy friend finally entered the café. (**point**)
=> ...
21. We missed the bus because we had overslept. (**consequence**) => ...
22. You'll certainly encounter a lot of difficulties if you opt for a lone expedition. (**bound**)
=> ...
23. Defeat is inevitable if you play him at chess. (**BOUND**)
=> ...
24. You can't possibly expect me to have supper ready by eight o'clock. (**QUESTION**)
=> ...
25. He is unlikely to win the competition. (**CHANCE**)
=> ...
26. Sally was all ready to leave the office when her boss asked her to type up a report. (**point**)
=> Sally was the office when her boss asked her to type up a report.
27. I think learning to use a typewriter is a waste of time. (**point**)

=> I can't how to use a typewriter.

28. Nadia's friend arrived just as she was about to leave the restaurant. (**point**)

=> Nadia was just the restaurant when her friend arrived.

29. It's very unlikely that Martin will win the 100 metres, as he's out of training. (**chance**)

=> Martin has almost the 100 metres, as he's out of training.

30. Lisa was just about to leave when the phone rang. (**POINT**)

=> Lisa was the house when the phone rang.

31. Do you think Noelia is likely to win the competition? (**CHANCE**)

=> Do you think Noelia is in the competition?

(=> Do you think Noelia has the competition?)

32. I never intended to go to the meeting. => I never had ...

33. It is quite pointless to complain. => There's no ...

34. It is hardly likely that he took poison. => He is ...

35. You'll certainly meet lots of people in your new job. => You are ...

36. Andy didn't tell anybody that he was going on a lone expedition. (**without**)

=> Andy went ...

37. Don't bother to apply for the job. **POINT**

=> There for the job.

38. There's no point asking Lynda to help as she's really busy. **WASTE**

=> It's asking Lynda to help as she's really busy.

39. I'm sure it will be raining tomorrow. **BOUND** => It raining tomorrow.

40. Being rich has no connection with being happy. **NOTHING**

=> Being rich being happy.

41. He's not just a good teacher, but a good writer as well. **addition**

=> He's a good writer a good teacher.

42. He will lie on the sofa doing nothing all day round. (**nothing but**)

=> ...

43. He's so unhelpful that it's a waste of time asking him. **point**

=> He's so unhelpful that asking him.

44. My boss told me I could go home early. **permission**

=> My boss home early.

45. I have to book the hotel, and I have to make the travel arrangements. (**in addition to**)

=>

46. I'd better do this exercise now because there might not be time later. **case**

=> I'd better do this exercise now time later.

47. I don't usually sleep after work. (**in the habit**) => ...

48. It would be a good idea to have a code of advertising practice.

=> The introduction ...

49. I wish I hadn't told him what we were planning to do this evening. (regret)

=> I for this evening.

50. I fully intended to find out who is responsible for the graffiti. (**intention**)

=> ...

51. Jenny didn't feel like going to the party. (**mood**)

=> ...

52. I wish I'd paid more attention to his warnings. => I regret ...

=> I regret ...

53. I didn't find it any hard to translate this passage. (difficulty)

=> I had this passage.

54. When Sandra walked out of the meeting, she didn't say goodbye to anyone. (without)

=> Sandra left ...

ANSWER KEY

PRACTICE: IT +

a. It takes/ took ...

1. She traveled to Paris in two weeks.

=> It ...

(**took her two weeks to travel to Paris.**) (DH Can Tho – Chuyen Ban Khoi D 97-98, P.48)

2. We had to spend three hours to open the door.

=> It ...

(It took us three hours to open the door.) (DHDL Thang Long – Khoi D 97-98, P.119)

3. I had to spend 2 hours to finish my work.

=> It ...

(It took me 2 hours to finish my work.) (Hoc Vien Bao Chi va Tuyen Truyen – Khoi D 97-98, P.311)

4. The flight to Moscow lasted three and a half hours.

=> It took ...

(It took three and a half hours to fly to Moscow.) (HVCTQG – Phan Vien BCTT – 2001-2002, P. 129)

5. I spent an hour doing this exercise.

=> It took ...

(DHDL Hung Vuong – 2001-2002, P. 164)

6. The astronauts orbited the earth in two hours.

=> It took ...

(It took the astronauts two hours to orbit the earth.) (CHUYÊN ĐỀ SP Can Tho – 2001-2002, P. 228)

7. Mastering a second language takes time and patience.

=> It ...

(takes time and patience to master a second language.) (BT TA 11 – P.32)

b. Other Structures with IT and To Infinitive/V.ing ...

1. It is better to make a wrong decision than to make no decision at all.

=> Making a wrong decision ...

(DH Can Tho – Chuyen Ban Khoi D 97-98, P.48) => Comparison + (To Inf => V.ing)

2. Handicapped people find shopping in supermarkets difficult.

=> It is ...

(DH Hue – Khoi D – chuyen ban 97-98, P.180)

3. Living in the city is exciting.

=> Some people find it ...

(DH SP Quy Nhon – 97-98, P.243)

4. Safeguarding our natural resources is now a must.

=> It is ...

(It is now necessary/ now a must to safeguard our natural resources.) (DHSP TP.HCM – 2001-2002, P.82)

5. It is disappointing that we haven't heard from Molly.

=> We are ...

(disappointed not to have heard from Molly.) (BT TA 10 – P.8) (BT TA 11 – P.142)

6. We can't possibly work in this noise.

=> It's ...

(impossible for us to work in this noise./ not possible ...)

7. There is no point in asking her out. She never goes out to restaurants.

=> **It is useless**

(It is useless to ask/ asking her out. She never goes out to restaurants.)

8. If we wait long enough, we'll get what we want.

=> It's just ...

the matter of waiting long enough to get what we want. (It + be + a/the matter/question of (doing) St + to do St: Chỉ là vấn đề ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.57)

9. It is difficult to answer her question adequately.

=> Hers is ...

(a difficult question to answer adequately.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.140)

(Khó để trả lời câu hỏi của cô ấy một cách xác đáng. Câu hỏi của cô ấy khó mà trả lời một cách xác đáng.)

10. It is the responsibility of parents to monitor what young children watch on TV.

=> Monitoring ...

(Monitoring what young children watch on TV is the responsibility of parents.)

11. From Algiers to Niamey by road is a long and difficult journey.

=> It ...

(It is a long and difficult journey from Algiers to Niamey by road.)

12. I wish you hadn't thrown that out. **silly** => It was that out.

(It was **silly of you to throw** that out.)

13. I wish I'd told the others about this. **mistake** => It was the others about this.

(It was **a mistake not to tell** the others about this.)

14. Making a speech to a large audience can be very frightening.

=> It ...

(It can be very frightening to make a speech to a large audience.)

15. Inviting them to take part might be a good idea. => It ...

(It might be a good idea to invite them to take part.)

16. I am honoured to be here tonight on this very special occasion.

=> It ...

(It is an honour for me to be here tonight on this very special occasion.)

17. No one can predict the future accurately. => It ...

(It is impossible for anyone to predict the future accurately. / It is impossible for anyone to make accurate predictions about the future.)

18. Roses can't possibly grow in such poor land. => It's impossible

(It's impossible to grow roses in such poor land.) (CHUYÊN ĐỀ SP Dong Thap – 2001-2002, P.242)

19. The firemen had to break the door down. **necessary**

=> It to break the door down.

(.....**was necessary for the firemen**)

20. It's not common for women to be racing drivers. **seldom** => Racing drivers women.

(Racing drivers ...**are seldom** ... women.)

21. It's unusual for Jane to lose at backgammon. **hardly** => Janeat backgammon.

(Jane ... **hardly ever loses** ... at backgammon.)

22. It's rare for my sister to take a holiday. **goes** => My sister holiday.

(My sister ...**rarely goes on** ... holiday.)

23. Brian must do exercise to strengthen his back after the surgery. (**compulsory**)

=> It ...

(It is compulsory for Brian to do exercise to strengthen his back after the surgery.)

24. Can Mr Bailey deliver the letters by tomorrow? => Is it ...

(Is it possible for Mr. Bailey to deliver the letters by tomorrow?)

25. It's hardly possible to reach the peak of the mountain on foot.

=> It's nearly

(It's nearly impossible to reach the peak of the mountain on foot.)

26. Should you practice the piano so often? (**advisable**) => ...

(Is it advisable for you to practice the piano so often?)

27. We shouldn't have wasted so much time waiting for the film star to turn up. (**worth**)

=> It

(It was not worth wasting so much time waiting for the film star to turn up.)

PRACTICE : V/Phrases/Structures + V.ing

1. He stole some money and was arrested for it. => He was ...

(DHDL Dong Do – Khoi D 97-98, P.66)

2. I have to write letters, but I hate it. => I hate ...

(DHDL Dong Do – Khoi D 97-98, P.67)

3. John failed to find the source of the River Nile. => John did not succeed ...

(DH Hue – Khoi D – chuyen ban 97-98, P.180)

4. If I had worked hard, I wouldn't have failed the exam. => Tom regretted

(DH SP Quy Nhon – Khoi D 97-98, P.253)

8. Henry denied stealing Mary's handbag. => Henry said that ...

(he didn't steal Mary's handbag.)

(Hoc Vien KHQS – Khoi D 97-98, P.288)

9. We couldn't drive because of the fog. => The fog ...

(The fog prevented us from driving.) (Hoc Vien Bao Chi va Tuyen Truyen – Khoi D 97-98, P.311)

12. Richard reduced his intake of fatty food and lost seven kilos in a month!

=> Richard cut ...

(Richard cut **down his fatty food intaking and lost seven kilos in a month...**) (DH An Ninh – 2001-2002, P.18)

13. While mending the road, the accidentally blocked our water pipes.

=> They accidentally cut off ...

(They accidentally cut off our water supplying while mending the road.) (DH An Ninh – 2001-2002, P.18)

15. They always make fun of me and I hate it. => I hate ...

(I hate being made fun of.) (DH Ngoai Thuong – 2001-2002, P.72)

16. I don't see the point of redecorating this room. => Redecorating this room ...

(Redecorating this room is pointless.) (DH Thai Nguyen – 2001-2002, P.85)

17. I'm always nervous when I take exams. => Taking ...

(Taking exams always makes me nervous.) (DH Vinh – 2001-2002, P.91)

18. Mrs. Scott is proud of her cooking. => Mrs. Scott prides ...

(Mrs. Scott prides herself on her cooking.) (HV Ngan Hang Phan Vien TP. HCM – 2001-2002, P. 108)

19. You can try to get Tim to lend you his car but you won't succeed.

=> There's no point ...

(There's no point in getting Tim to lend you his car.) (HV Ngan Hang Phan Vien TP. HCM – 2001-2002, P. 108)

20. They were unable to finish their tennis game because of a heavy shower.

=> A heavy shower ...

(A heavy shower prevented them from finishing their tennis game./ A heavy shower put a stop to their tennis game.) (HVQHQT – 2001-2002, P. 117)

21. It's not worth trying to make her change her mind. => There's ...

(There's no point in making her change her mind.) (HVQHQT – 2001-2002, P. 117)

22. I'll be happy to give you a lift. => I don't mind ...

(I don't mind giving you a lift.) (HVKHQS – 2001-2002, P. 129)

23. He was sorry didn't say goodbye to her at the airport. => He regretted ...

(BTTA 10 – P.9)

24. Why not go there by bus? => Anne suggested ...

(BTTA 10 – P.9)

25. You can try to get Jim to lend you his car, but you won't succeed. => There's no point ...

(BTTA 10 – P.19)

26. Why don't you put your luggage under the seat? => He suggested ...

(BTTA 10 – P.19)

27. The driver said it was true that he didn't have a licence. => The driver admitted ...

(BTTA 10 – P.19)

28. I hate to get up in the dark. => I can't ...

(BTTA 10 – P.19)

29. Seeing Nelson Mandela will always in my memory. => I'll never ...

(BTTA 10 – P.20)

30. We couldn't drive because of the fog. => The fog prevented ...

(BTTA 10 – P.43)

31. I realized I had said something wrong. (**conscious**) => ...

(I was conscious of having said something wrong. (be conscious of (doing St): nhận thức, ý thức ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.43)

32. Collecting stamps from foreign countries is one of Jane's interests.

=> Jane ...

(Jane is interested in collecting stamps from foreign countries.. – BTTA 10 – P.155)

33. He takes great delight in proving others wrong. **(enjoys)** => He

(enjoys proving others wrong.) (take delight in = enjoy) (BTTH TA 10 – P.104)

34. Reading scientific books is one of my interests. => I am ...

(DHDL Dong Do – 2001-2002, P.178)

35. The tram couldn't run because of the storm. => The storm ...

(prevented the tram from running./ made it impossible for the tram to run./ made the tram stop running.) (BTTH TA 10 – P.85)

36. My English friend finds using chopsticks difficult. => My English friend isn't ...

(My English friend isn't used to using chopsticks.) (DH Ngoai Thuong – 2001-2002, P.71)

37. It won't be difficult to get a ticket for the game. => You won't have any ...

(difficulty in getting a ticket for the game.)

38. Driving on the left is strange and difficult for Americans. => Americans aren't ...

(used to driving ... left) (BTTA 11 – P.33)

39. My aunt sent me a wonderful present. => I must write and thank ...

(my aunt for sending/ having sent me a wonderful present.) (BTTH TA 12 – P.122)

40. Some people ruin their own lives. => But you just can't prevent ...

(people from ruining their own lives.) (BTTH TA 12 – P.122)

41. There's no point in phoning Caroline – she's away. **(time)**

=> ...

It's a waste of time to phone/ phoning Caroline – she's away. (there's no point in doing St = It's a waste of time to do/doing St: chẳng tác dụng gì, chẳng ích gì ...) (BDHSG TA 11 – P.7)

42. You can try to get Tim to lend you his car but you won't succeed. **(point)**

=> ...

There's no point in trying to get Tim to lend you his car/ in trying to borrow Tim's car. (BDHSG TA 11 – P.7)

43. Maile was angry because his sister had broken his cassette player.

=> Maile was angry with ...

(Be angry with sb for doing St: Maile was angry with his sister for having broken his cassette player.) (DHNN – 2001-2002, P.62)

44. Six cars were stolen from the car park. A teenage boy is responsible.

=> A teenage boy is responsible ...

(A teenage boy is responsible **for having stolen six cars from the car park./** A teenage boy is responsible for the six stolen car in/from the car park.) (DH Da Nang – 2001-2002, P.42)

45. Zuthato likes visiting old churches. => Zuthato is ...

(Zuthato is *interested in/ keen on/ fond of* visiting old churches.) (DHNN – 2001-2002, P.62)

46. The manager insisted on our wearing dark suits. (**wear**)

=> ...

(**The manager insisted that we wear dark suits.** (BDHSG TA 11 – P.17)

47. Ann paints her landscapes with great pleasure. => Ann takes ...

(Ann takes **great pleasure in painting her landscapes.**)

48. She was afraid. She did not spend the night alone. (of) => ...

(She was afraid of spending the night alone.) (DH Hang Hai – Khoi D 97-98, P.143)

49. Why don't we have a good time in the casino this night? => How ...

(How **about having a good time in the casino this night?**)

50. If I take the job I'll have to move to Paris. => Taking the job ...

(**will mean moving to Paris.**) (Nhận công việc đó có nghĩa là sẽ phải chuyển đến Paris/ sẽ gồm cả việc chuyển đến Paris – Vì will không chia được ở dạng Ing sau mean nên phải dùng will mean + V.ing) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.24)

51. It's very kind of you to give a lift. => I appreciate ...

(**your giving me a lift**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.24)

52. It would be a good idea to use honey instead of sugar. => Why don't you try ...

(**using honey instead of sugar?**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.24)

53. I'm quite happy to look after the baby for you. => I don't mind ...

(**looking after the baby for you.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.24)

54. I'm sorry I didn't go to university. (**regret**) => ...

(**I regret not going to university.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.24)

55. There is a risk that he will miss the plane if he waits. (**risks**) => ...

(**He risks missing the plane if he waits.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.24) (Nghĩa câu gốc: Có nguy cơ là anh ta sẽ trễ chuyến tàu nếu anh ta đợi => Câu viết lại: Anh ta có nguy cơ lỡ chuyến tàu nếu anh ta đợi. – RISK: (n) nguy cơ, (v) liều lĩnh, có nguy cơ về sự việc gì...)

56. Calling Jim is pointless, because his phone is out of order. (**use**) => ...

(**It's no use calling Jim – his phone is out of order.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.26)

57. He has refused to keep guard at night. (**an objection**)

(**He has made an objection to keeping guard at night.**)

58. You waste time if you copy your work out again, don't do it. => Don't ...

(**Don't waste time copying your work again.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.26)

59. Brenda really hate staying in expensive hotels. => Brenda can't ...

(**stand staying in expensive hotels.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.27)

60. If you work for this company, you have to travel a lot. => Working for this company involves ...

(**traveling a lot.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.27) (**Involve doing St = Mean doing St:** bao hàm, bao gồm, có nghĩa là phải ... - **be involved in doing St:** bị cuốn hút vào việc gì, dồn tâm trí vào việc gì – **mean to do St:** có ý định làm gì)

61. Joe doesn't like it when people treat him like a child. => Joe resents ...

(being treated like a child/ people treating him like a child.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.27)
(resent (doing) St: **bực tức, ghét, phẫn nộ ...**)

62. You should go to the dentist at once. => Don't put ...

(off (your) going to the dentist any longer.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.27) (bạn nên đến gặp nha sĩ ngay đi = đừng trì hoãn việc đến gặp nha sĩ thêm nữa)

63. Dickens' last novel was unfinished when he died. (**without**)

=> ...

(**Dicken died without finishing/having finished/being able to finish his last novel.** (BD HSG TA 11 – P.27)

64. Be sure to say goodbye to your grandmother before you leave. (**without**)

=> ...

Be sure not to leave/Don't leave without saying goodbye to your grandmother. (BD HSG TA 11 – P.68)

65. The professor has been occupied with preparing the exam questions. (**busy**)

(**The professor has been busy preparing the exam questions.**)

66. The boys clearly intended to make trouble when they entered the hotel.

=> The boys were ...

(**clearly intent on making trouble when they entered the hotel.**)

(**be intent on doing St: có ý định làm gì = intend to do St = have an intention of doing St**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.104)

67. Staying on late at work is becoming less of a problem for me. (**used**)

=> ...

I am getting used to staying on late at work. (be used to + V.ing: quen, get used to + V.ing: become ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.118)

68. She won't allow you to leave the building, will she? (**intent**)

=> ...

(**She appears/seems intent on making you stay in the building, doesn't she?** (BD HSG TA 11 – P.118)

=> **She is not intent on allowing you to leave the building, is she?** => acceptable (aim: to V => V(bare)) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.118)

69. Andy is terribly bored with his new occupation. => Andy finds ...

(Andy finds **his new occupation terribly boring.**)

70. Although we sent a message, there was no reply. (**tried**) => ...

Although we tried sending a message, there was no reply. (BD HSG TA 11 – P.130)

71. I have no memory of when I found this book. (**remember**) => ...

I don't remember finding this book. (**remember + V.ing: nhớ việc gì đã xảy ra trong quá khứ**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.130)

72. Perhaps finding someone to replace her is proving difficult for him.

=> He appears ...

(**to be having difficulty in finding someone to replace her.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.130)

(Có lẽ việc tìm một ai đó thay thế cô ta đang là vấn đề khó khăn đối với anh ta.)

73. I'm excited that the new theatre will be completed soon.

=> I'm looking ...

(forward to the completion of the new theatre.) (Tôi đang háo hức trông chờ ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.130)

74. She took extra night classes, so as to have to repeat the course.

=> She avoided

(having to repeat the course by taking extra night classes.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.131)

75. He said that nobody had given him money. => He denied ...

(being given money/ receiving money/having been given money.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.131)

76. It's not normal for me to have to work this hard. => I am not ...

(used to having to work this hard.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.131)

77. Perhaps, I will spend this night in a hotel. **(thinking)** => ...

(I am thinking of spending this night in a hotel.)

78. John was sorry to have made such a fuss at the party. => John regretted ...

(John regretted that he had made such a fuss at the party/ having made such a fuss at the party.)

79. They continued to suggest that I was lying. **(persist)** => ...

(They persisted in suggesting that I was lying. (họ vẫn khẳng khẳng cho rằng/ nghĩ rằng tôi đang nói dối => không phải giả định) => **persist in doing St:** khẳng khẳng, bền bỉ làm gì đó ... (BD HSG TA 11 – P.167)

80. The accident victim was having increasing difficulty in breathing. **(DIFFICULT)**

=> ...

(The accident victim was finding it increasingly difficult to breathe.) => V.ing => To Inf + style

- Have difficulty (in) doing St = Have trouble doing St: Gặp khó khăn trong việc gì

⇔ Find it hard/ difficult to do St: Thấy khó làm gì (BD HSG TA 12 – P.71)

(Nạn nhân của vụ tai nạn ngày càng gặp khó khăn trong việc hít thở)

81. You have done really well to pass your driving test so quickly.

=> She congratulated ...

(me on passing my driving test so quickly.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.84)

82. "I wonder if you could possibly open the door for me?" **(MIND)**

=> ...

(Would you mind/ Do you mind opening the door for me?) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.97)

83. The children pestered us for sweets. **(KEPT)**

=> ...

(The children keep asking us for sweets.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.97)

- Pester Sb for St = Keep asking Sb for St: Liên tục làm phiền ai đó bằng cách hỏi điều gì đó nhiều lần

84. Have they got anything against our sleeping in their tent? **(mind)**

=> ...

(Do they mind our sleeping in their tent?/ if we sleep in their tent?)

85. "I'm sorry I didn't ring you to say I'd be late."

=> He apologized

(for not ringing/having rung (me) to say he'd be late.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.97)

86. "I never told anyone about your scheme," he said.

=> He denied ...

(telling/having told anyone about my/our scheme.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.98)

187 Joan said she didn't usually drink coffee in the morning. (accustomed)

=> ...

(Joan said she was not accustomed to drinking coffee in the morning.)

88. We decided not to look for another flat for a couple of months. (PUT)

=> We decided to for another flat for a couple of months.

(put off looking) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.125)

89. I wish I hadn't said I'd help Manuel move house this weekend. (REGRET)

=> I I'd help Manuel move house this weekend.

(regret saying) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.125)

90. Treating her like that was very unfair. (DERSERVE)

=> She treated like that.

(didn't deserve being) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.125)

91. I hope he wasn't offended when I told him I thought he was putting on weight.

=> I hope he didn't I thought he was putting on weight.

(mind my/me telling him) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.125)

92. Mrs. Wilson says she's sorry she didn't attend the meeting yesterday morning.

=> Mrs. Wilson sends ...

(her apologies for not having attended the meeting yesterday morning.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.166)

- Send one's apologies for doing St = Apologize (to Sb) for doing St: Xin lỗi về điều gì

93. For further information, please send a self-addressed envelope to the above address.

=> Further information can ...

(be obtained by sending a self-addressed envelope to the above address.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.166)

94. There's no point in your phoning Caroline – she's away. (TIME)

=> ...

(It is/ would be a waste of time phoning Caroline – she's away.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.179)

95. Clara said that she had not seen the missing letter. (having)

=> Clara the missing letter.

(Clara **denied having seen** the missing letter. (CAE 1 – Test 1)

96. It took Layla five minutes to find her car keys. (spent)

=> Layla for her car keys.

(Layla **spent five minutes looking** for her car keys. (CAE 1 – Test 1)

97. Rosa found it very difficult to persuade her boss to give her a pay rise. (great)

=> Rosa had her boss to give her a pay rise.
(Rosa had **great difficulty (in) persuading** her boss to give her a pay rise. (**have difficulty (in) doing St**) (CAE 1 – Test 1)

98. Because of its price, the book may never become a bestseller. (**prevent**).

=> The price of the book may a bestseller.

(The price of the book may **prevent it from becoming/ its becoming** a bestseller. (CAE 1 – Test 1)

99. Have you always been interested in hunting? (**fond**) => ...

(**Have you always been fond of hunting?**)

100. We got started on the new project immediately. (**time**)

=> We lost on the new project.

(We lost **no time getting started/ starting** on the new project. (CAE 1 – Test 1)

101. He's likely to lose his job if he keeps disagreeing with his boss. (**danger**)

=> If he keeps disagreeing with his boss, he's from his job.

(**in danger of being sacked/dimissed/fined**) (CAE 1 – Test 1)

102. He no longer thinks he can find a job before the end of the year. (**hope**)

=> He has given a job before the end of the year.

(He has given **up his hope of finding** a job before the end of the year. (CAE 1 – Test 1)

103. There is no way Lisa will give up her independence to get married. (**of**)

=> Lisa has up her independence to get married.

(Lisa has **no intention of giving** up her independence to get married. : Chẳng có lý do gì mà Lisa từ bỏ quyền kết hôn cả (CAE 1 – Test 1)

104. Our son wants to see the military parade very much. (**anxious**)

=> ...

(Our son is anxious to see the military parade/ about seeing the military parade.)

105. At the beginning of the program the panel of experts discussed the media and its importance in education. (**discussion**)

=> The panel of experts started the program the media an its importance in education.

(The panel of experts started the program **with a discussion about/ on** the media an its importance in education.

=> The panel of experts started the program **by having a discussion about/ on** the media an its importance in education. (CAE 1 – Test 1)

106. The company is unable to guarantee an allocated car-park space to all employees. (**count**)

=> The company's employees shouldn't allocated a car-parking space.

(The company's employees shouldn't **count on being** allocated a car-parking space. (CAE 1 – Test 1)

107. The guide recommended we should leave very early. (**our**)

(**The guide recommended our leaving very early.**)

108. Mark doesn't like to be told what to do. => Mark hates ...

(**Mark hates being told what to do.**)

109. How did you manage to carry such a heavy suitcase? (**cope**) => ...

(**How did you cope with carrying such a heavy suitcase?**)

110. The pool closes in ten minutes, so there isn't enough time to go swimming now.

(**WORTH**)

=> It now as the pool closes in ten minutes.

(**It is not worth (our/us) going swimming** now as the pool closes in ten minutes. (CAE - 3)

- Be worth doing St: đáng để làm gì đó - Be busy (with) doing St: bận làm gì đó

111. James would only speak to the head of department alone. (**ON**)

=> James to the head of department alone.

(James **insisted on speaking** to the head of department alone. (CAE - 4)

112. If you run every day, your breathing improves quickly. **running**

=> Daily your breathing.

(Daily ... **running quickly improves** ... your breathing.)

113. The students regretted that they had missed the lecture. => The students regretted not ...

(**attending/ having attended/ going to/ having gone to the lectures.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.126)

114. I write to him almost everyday. => Hardly ...

(**a day passes/ goes by without my/me writing to him.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.126)

115. He was offered a job but rejected it so that he could carry on with his studies. **turned**

=> He was offered a job but order to carry on with his studies.

(He was offered a job but **(he) turned it down in** order to carry on with his studies.)

116. She says she finds nothing unusual about stormy weather in this country. (**used**)

=> ...

(**She says she is/ has got used to stormy weather in this country.**)

117. She hasn't decided yet whether to buy this house or not. (**hesitating**)

=> ...

(**She is (still) hesitating whether to buy this house or not.**)

118. I don't find it difficult to get up early any more. **used** => I up early.

(I **am used to getting** up early.)

119. He really likes correcting her English. **pleasure** => He correcting her English.

(He ... **takes pleasure in** ... correcting her English.)

120. He locked the gate so that the dog wouldn't escape. **prevent**

=> He locked the gate escaping.

(He locked the gate **to prevent the dog (from)** ... escaping.)

121. They did not like to pay extra taxes. **objected** => They
..... extra taxes.

(They **objected to paying** extra taxes.)

122. It is often difficult to find an answer to a problem. **solution**

=> Finding a problem is often difficult.

(Finding ... **a solution to** ... a problem is often difficult.)

123. I advised him to stop smoking. **suggested** => I
..... stop smoking.

(I **suggested (that) he** ... stop smoking.)

124. My mother doesn't like us to stay out late. **approve**

=> My mother doesn't out late.

(My mother doesn't **approve of us/our staying** out late.)

125. They could not understand what she said. **difficulty** => They
..... what she said.

(They **had difficulty in understanding** what she said.)

126. She caught the early bus so that she would not be late for work. **avoid**

=> She caught the early bus late for work.

(She caught the early bus ... **to avoid being** ... late for work.)

127. He found it hard to start the car. **difficulty** => He
_____ the car.

(He ____ **had difficulty in starting** ____ the car.)

128. 'You really must stay the night,' he said to us. **insisted** => He
_____ the night.

(He __ **insisted on us staying / that we stayed** ____ the night.)

129. 'Would you like to play tennis on Friday?' Emily asked Nick. **felt**

=> Emily asked Nick _____ tennis on Friday.

(Emily asked Nick __ **if he felt like playing** _ tennis on Friday.)

130. We couldn't drive home because of heavy snow. **prevented**

=> Heavy snow home.

(Heavy snow **prevented us from driving** ... home.)

131. She didn't say goodbye when she left. **without** => She **left without saying**
..... goodbye.

(She **left without saying** goodbye.)

132. Murat doesn't mind driving for two hours to work everyday. **(used)**

=> Murat _____ for two hours to work
everyday.

(Murat **is used to driving** for two hours to work everyday.)

133. He doesn't often find it difficult to earn money. **(trouble)** => He seldom
.....

(He seldom ... **has trouble earning money** ...)
134. You're like another person I've met here recently. (**else**)
=> You remind I've met here recently.

(You remind ... **me of someone/somebody else** I've met here recently.)
135. I think it would be a good idea if you joined the beginner's class. **SUGGEST**
=> I the beginners class.

(suggest joining/suggest you join/suggest that you join)

136. I'll help you with your homework. **MIND** => I you with your homework.

(do not mind helping/don't mind helping)

137. I hated driving on the left at first but now it's OK. **USED** => I on the left now.

(am used to driving/'m used to driving/'ve got used to driving/have got used to driving)

138. I don't think it's a good idea to get married too early. **IN** => I don't too early.

(believe in getting married/ believe in marrying (Verb change + verb form)

139. Did you manage to convince him? **IN** => Did you him?

(succeed in convincing) (Verb change + verb form)

140. Do you mind if I come over to see you later? **OBJECTION**
=> Do you coming over to see you later?

(have any objection to me)

141. If you must be noisy could you go outside and play. **INSIST**
=> If you noise could you go outside to play.

(insist on making a/insist upon making a)

142. I want to go to university this year. **INTERESTED** => I to university this year.

(am interested in going/'m interested in going)

143. Anthony claimed that the other man caused the collision. (**accused**)

=> ...

(Anthony accused the other man of causing the collision.)

144. We demanded to see the hotel manager to make our complaint. **SEEING**
=> We the hotel manager to make our complaint.

(insisted on seeing/insisted upon seeing)

145. The boss wouldn't object to you going early today. **OBJECTION**
=> The boss would not you going early today.

(have any objection to)

146. Did you manage to get in contact with the boss today? **getting**
=> Did you in contact with the boss today?

(succeed in getting)

147. 'Why don't you come over for dinner at the weekend?' he asked her. **suggested**

=> He for dinner at the weekend.
(suggested coming over/suggested that she came over/suggested coming/suggested that she came)

148. Being rude is inexcusable. **excuse** => There is
..... rude.

(no excuse for being)

149. I find driving on the left in England very strange. **accustomed**
=> I on the left in England.

(am not accustomed to driving/'m not accustomed to driving)

150. Do you mind if I come over to see you later? **OBJECTION**

=> Do you coming over to see you later?

(HAVE ANY OBJECTION TO ME)

151. Was it difficult for you to assemble the set? (**difficulty**) => ...

(Did you have any difficulty in assembling the set?)

152. I was really bored by the film last night. **FOUND** => I
..... last night.

(found the film really boring)

153. They say they don't want to play cricket any more. (**bored**)

=> ...

(They say they are/ have got bored with playing cricket.)

154. I can't wait to see the sights in London. **FORWARD** => I am
..... the sights in London.

(looking forward to seeing)

155. Tom, wouldn't it be a good idea to take the students swimming tomorrow? **HOW**

=> Tom, the students swimming tomorrow?

(how about taking/how about you take)

156. I am starting to find watching television boring. **FED**

=> I am beginning to get television.

(fed up with watching)

157. Looking back, I think I was right to study mathematics at university. **REGRET**

=> Looking back, I mathematics at university.

(do not/don't regret studying)

158. 'Do you want to go for a walk?' asked Bob. **FELT**

=> Bob asked me for a walk.

(if I felt like going)

159. The children are always fascinated by nature programmes on TV. **FIND**

=> The children when they watch them on TV.

(always find nature programmes fascinating)

160. I am afraid I'm still having problems with understanding life in New York. **used**

=> I living in New York.

(I **am not used to** living in New York.)

161. I'd prefer it if you didn't smoke in here. **mind** =>

..... smoking in here.

(**Would you mind not** smoking in here.)

162. Can I accompany you to the party? **mind** => Do you

..... to the party?

(Do you **mind my accompanying you** to the party?)

163. He decided not to smoke any more as a result of his illness. **gave**

=> He _____ as a result of his illness.

(He _____ **gave up smoking** _____ as a result of his illness.)

164. I don't fancy going to the cinema this afternoon. **feel**

=> I _____ to the cinema this afternoon.

(I _____ **don't feel like going** _____ to the cinema this afternoon.)

165. He finds it difficult to learn foreign languages. **problems**

=> He _____ foreign languages.

(He ... **has problems (with) learning** ... foreign languages.)

166. They didn't manage to play tennis due to the bad weather. **prevented**

=> The bad weather _____ tennis.

(The bad weather _____ **prevented them (from) playing** _____ tennis.)

167. The young clerk didn't know how to deal with this complicated matter. (**capable**)

=> ...

(**The young clerk was not capable of dealing with this complicated matter.**)

168. In spite of countless obstacles, Jim succeeded in building his own house. (**successful**)

=> ...

(**In spite of countless obstacles, Jim was successful in building his own house.**)

169 'I didn't break the glass' said Paul. **denied** => Paul

..... the glass.

denied breaking

170. It was hard for Sarah to understand him. **in** => Sarah

understanding him.

had difficulty in

171. I haven't smoked since 1990. **gave** => I 1990.

gave up smoking in

172. I would like you to help me do this English exercise. => Do you mind ...

(Do you mind **helping me do this English exercise?**)

173. It is interesting to go camping with friends in the summer. => Going

(**Going camping with friends in the summer is interesting.**)

174. Little Tommy was expecting Christmas with real delight. (**forward to**)

=> ...

(Little Tommy was looking forward to Christmas.)

175. She was afraid. She did not spend the night alone. (**of**)

(**She was afraid of spending the night alone.**) (DH Hang Hai – Khoi D 97-98, P.143)

176. Have you always wanted to become a teacher of English? => Have you been ...?

(**interested in becoming a teach of English?**) (DH SP Quy Nhon – Khoi D 97-98, P.243)

177. Six cars were stolen from the car park. A teenage boy is responsible.

=> A teenage boy is responsible ...

(A teenage boy is responsible **for having stolen six cars from the car park.**/ A teenage boy is responsible **for the six stolen car in/from the car park.**) (DH Da Nang – 2001-2002, P.42)

178. Zuthato likes visiting old churches. => Zuthato is ...

(Zuthato is **interested in/ keen on/ fond of visiting old churches.**) (DHNN – 2001-2002, P.62)

179. Maile was angry because his sister had broken his cassette player. => Maile was angry with ...

(Be angry with sb for doing St: Maile was angry with **his sister for having broken his cassette player.**) (DHNN – 2001-2002, P.62)

180. My English friend finds using chopsticks difficult. => My English friend isn't ...

(My English friend isn't **used to using chopsticks.**) (DH Ngoai Thuong – 2001-2002, P.71)

181. There were many noisy students in the hall. => The hall was crowded
.....

(The hass was crowded **with noisy students.**) (DHDL Hung Vuong – 2001-2002, P. 165)

182. Reading scientific books is one of my interests. => I am ...

(DHDL Dong Do – 2001-2002, P.178)

183. It's not a habit of mine to sleep in the afternoon. => I am ...

(**I am not used to sleeping** in the afternoon.) (CHUYÊN ĐỀ SP Vinh Phuc – 2001-2002, P.266)

184. Collecting stamps from foreign countries is one of Jane's interests.

=> Jane ...

(Jane is interested in collecting stamps from foreign countries.. – BTTA 10 – P.155)

185. I realized I had said something wrong. (**conscious**) => ...

(**I was conscious of having said something wrong.** (be conscious of (doing St): nhận thức, nhận ra) (BD HSG TA11–P.43)

186. “Do you want to go and see the new play at the Arts Centre?” Petra asked her friend.

(**INTERESTED**) (CAE-3)

=> Petra asked her friend whether to see the new play at the Arts Centre.

=> Petra asked her friend whether **she was interested in going / she would be interested in going** to see the new play at the Arts Centre.

187. Many people believe that Edilson has the ability to become world judo champion.

(**CAPABLE**) (CAE-3)

=> Many people believe that Edilson the world championship in judo.

- **Have ability to do St = Be Capable of doing St (be incapable of doing St)**

=> Many people believe that Edilson **is capable of winning** the world championship in judo.

188. "I'm sorry, but there's no way I'm going to sleep on the floor," Naomi said. (**CLEAR**) (CAE-3)

=> Naomi made prepared to sleep on the floor.

=> Naomi made **it clear that she wasn't** prepared to sleep on the floor.

- **Make it clear + that + clause:** nói rõ rằng ...

- **Be prepared to do St = Be ready to do St:** sẵn sàng làm gì đó

189. Mr. Porter has to lock all the doors at night after everyone has left. (**RESPONSIBLE**) (CAE-3)

=> The person who all the doors at night after everyone has left is Mr. Porter.

=> The person who **is responsible for locking** all the doors at night after everyone has left is Mr. Porter.

190. The mouse frightened him. **scared** => He

.....the mouse.

(..... **was scared of / by**)

PRACTICE: Phrases/Structures + Infinitives

1. After fighting the fire for twelve hours, the firemen succeeded in putting it out.

=> The firemen managed ...

(DH Van Hoa HN – Khoi D 97-98, P.270)

2. I expect that he will get there by lunch time. => I expect him ...

(Hoc Vien KHQS – Khoi D 97-98, P.275)

3. Everyone heard about the accident before I did. => I was ...

(I was the last to hear about the ...)

(Hoc Vien KHQS – Khoi D 97-98, P.279)

4. I'd rather not see him tomorrow. => I don't ...

(I don't want to see him tomorrow.) (CHUYÊN ĐỀ SP Ha Noi – P.330)

5. "You can leave early," Mr. Benson said to Alison. => Mr.Benson let ...

(DH An Giang – 97-98, P.10)

6. He failed to win the race. => He didn't ...

(He didn't win the race) (DH Hue – 2001-2002, P.55)

7. When we were teenagers, we went to a lot of summer camps. => We used ...

(We used to go to a lot of summer camps when we were teenagers.) (DHDL Hung Vuong – 2001-2002, P. 172)

8. John smoked cigarettes when he was a young man. => John used ...

(John used to smoke cigarettes when he was a young man.) (DHDL Phuong Dong – 2001-2002, P. 178)

9. My father said I could use his car. => My father allowed ...

(BT TA 10 – P.19)

10. Don't stop him doing what he wants. => Let ...

(BT TA 10 – P.19)

11. I'll finish the work tonight if you like. => Would you like ...

(BT TA 10 – P.19)

12. The teacher didn't allow the class to leave before 4.30. => The teacher made ...

(BT TA 10 – P.19)

13. My lawyer said I shouldn't say anything to the police. => My lawyer advised ...

(BT TA 10 – P.20)

14. Climbing without a safety rope is forbidden. => You aren't ...

(BT TA 10 – P.108)

15. Walking home alone is not a good idea. => You ...

(BT TA 10 – P.108)

16. I don't want us to have a quarrel. (**you**) => ...

I don't want to quarrel with you/ to have a quarrel with you. (to quarrel with Sb = to have a quarrel with Sb: cãi nhau với ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.43)

17. He couldn't play well in the last match because of his injured knee. => His injured knee made ...

(him not play well in the last match.) (BT TA 11 – P.32) (BT TA 10 – P.183)

18. It's not necessary for children to do homework every night. => Children ...

(BT TA 10 – P.194)

19. After a long chase, the police finally succeeded in arresting the thief. (**to**)

=> ...

(After a long chase, the police finally ... **(managed to arrest the thief.)** (BT TH TA 10 – P.94)

20. You can trust me to finish the report on time. => I promise ...

(to finish the report on time.) (BT TH TA 10 – P.56)

21. My brother really wishes he could sing well. (**able**) => My brother regrets not well.

(My brother regrets not **being able to sing** well. (BT TH TA 10 – P.71)

22. Mr. Pinchley doesn't allow his teenage children to go out in the evenings.

=> Mr. Pinchley makes ...

(his teenage children stay at home in the evenings.) (BT TA 10 – P.8)

23. It is my impression that she is enjoying her new job a great deal.

=> She seems ...

(to be enjoying her new job a great deal.) (BT TA 11 – P.117)

24. The heavy snow made it impossible for them to have their picnic. => They were ...

(prevented from having their picnic because of the heavy snow./ not able to have their picnic because of the heavy snow.) (BT TA 12 – P.57)

24. I think going to see the match is preferable to staying at home in the afternoon.

=> Rather than ...

(Rather than stay at home in the afternoon, I (would) prefer to go to see the match.) => thay vì ở nhà, ...

25. I preferred to take a course in psychology instead of wasting my time at the mathematics department.

=> **Rather** than ...

(Rather than waste my time at the mathematics department I preferred to take a course in psychology.)

26. She earns too little to afford to buy expensive cosmetics. => She doesn't
(She doesn't **earn (much) enough to afford to buy expensive cosmetics.**)

27. She failed to get in touch with her solicitor. (**managed**)

(**She did not manage to get in touch with her solicitor.**)

28. I must see the manager! => I demand ...

(**to see the manager.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.24)

29. You wouldn't know where the Hilton Hotel is, would you? => Do you happen ...

(**to know where the Hilton Hotel is?**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.24)

30. Winning the football pools meant we could buy a new car. (**enabled**)

=> ...

(**Winning the football pools enabled us to buy a new car. – enable Sb to do St: cho phép ai có thể làm gì.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.24)

31. I believed you were the murderer because of this clue. (**led**) => ...

(**This clue led me to believe you were the murderer.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.24) (**Lead Sb to do St:** làm cho, khiến cho, hướng dẫn, chỉ cho ai làm gì)

32. Does using the hotel swimming pool cost extra? (**pay**) => ...

(**Do I/we have to pay extra to use the hotel swimming pool?/ ... extra for using the hotel swimming pool?**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.24)

33. I think that this is the right street. (**appears**) => ...

(**This appears to be the right street.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.24)

34. Jean succeeded in finishing all her work on time. (**managed**) =>

(**Jean managed to finish all her work on time.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.24)

35. Is that the manager? I have a complaint about my room.

=> Is that the manager? I wish ...

(**to complain about my room/ to make a complaint about my room.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.26)

36. I bet you wouldn't ask David to come with you to the party! => I dare ...

(**you to ask David to come with you to the party.**) (Nghĩa câu gốc: Tôi đánh cược là bạn sẽ không mời được David đi tới bữa tiệc cùng với bạn. => Câu viết lại: Tôi thách bạn mời được David tới bữa tiệc cùng với bạn đấy.) (Bet St on St, Bet + (that) clause: đánh cược, cá cược ... => dare Sb to do St: thách đố ai làm gì ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.27)

37. It was resolved that the matter would be brought up at the next meeting.

=> They resolved ...

(**to bring the matter up/ bring up the matter at the next meeting.**) (resolve: kiên quyết) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.27)

38. The police were told that the use of unnecessary force was forbidden.

=> The police were instructed ...

(not to use unnecessary force. (BD HSG TA 11 – P.27)

39. All the hostages were released yesterday by the kidnappers. **(let)**

=> ...

(The kidnappers let all the hostages go/leave yesterday. (BD HSG TA 11 – P.68)

40. Women are not allowed to enter the inner temple. **(let)**

=> ...

They don't let women enter the inner temple./ women into the inner temple. (BD HSG TA 11 – P.68)

41. The censors regarded the film as not being suitable for young children.

=> The film was considered ...

((by the censors) not to be suitable for young children/ to be unsuitable for young children.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.131) **(Regard St/Sb as (doing) St = consider Sb/St to do St,** especially the passive form: **be considered to do St)**

42. The American champion is very tough; he'll never give up. **(too)**

(The American champion is too tough to ever give up.)

43. I'm doing more work than I bargained for. => I didn't expect ...

(to be doing so much work.) - bargain for St: dự tính (BD HSG TA 12 – P.43)

44. I missed my train because of the heavy traffic. **(MADE)**

=> The heavy traffic my train.

(made me miss) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.125)

45. I'm sorry that you've had to wait for me for so long. **(kept)**

=> ...

(I'm sorry to have kept you waiting for so long.)

46. I have called this meeting in order to present the latest sales figures.

=> My purpose ...

(in calling this meeting is to present the latest sales figures.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.165)

47. I'll be happy to show you round the sights of my city when you come to visit me. **(take)**

=> It will be a sightseeing tour of my city when you come to visit me.

(It will be a pleasure to take you on/ for a sightseeing tour of my city when you come to visit me. (CAE 1 – Test 1)

48. The region is rich in natural resources. **(offer)**

=> The region has a lot terms of natural resources.

=> The region has a lot **(of things) to offer in** terms of natural resources.

in terms of St: về mặt ... be on good terms with sb: có quan hệ tốt với ai

be on speaking terms with sb: quen biết ai, giao thiệp với ai (CAE 1 – Test 1)

49. Mark once worked for an international charity organization on a voluntary basis. **(as)**

=> Mark used with an international charity organization.

(Mark used **to work as a volunteer** with an international charity organization. (CAE 1 – Test 1)

50. I didn't realize that she had decided to come to the meeting. (**decision**)

=> I was unaware attend the meeting.

(I was unaware **of her decision to** attend the meeting. **be (un)aware of (doing) st** (CAE 1 – Test 1)

51. Paul wasn't able to leave the house all day because of the terrible weather. (**impossible**)

=> The terrible weather Paul to leave the house all day.

(The terrible weather **made it impossible for** Paul to leave the house all day. (CAE 1 – Test 1)

52. She doesn't mind informing the rest of the party about the bad news. (**letting**)

=> ...

(She doesn't mind letting the rest of the party know about the bad news.)

53. John thought it was very strange that Fred had not answered his letter. (**FAILURE**)

=> John thought that his letter was very strange.

(John thought that **Fred's failure to answer** his letter was very strange.)

- **Failure to do St**: Việc không thực hiện ..., việc không làm ... (CAE -3)

54. I don't think you'll have much difficulty understanding the local dialect. (**FIND**)

=> I don't think to understand the local dialect.

(I don't think **you will find it difficult/hard** to understand the local dialect. (CAE - 3)

- **Have difficulty (in) doing St = Find it hard/difficult to do St**: thấy khó làm gì đó, gặp khó khăn trong việc gì

55. Jack was worried that he couldn't think of any new ideas for the advertising campaign. (**INABILITY**)

=> What worried Jack up with any new ideas for the advertising campaign.

(What worried Jack **was his inability to come** up with any new ideas for the advertising campaign.)

- Think of St = Come up with St: nghĩ ra, nghĩ được ... (CAE - 3)

56. Now the tourists have seen how beautiful it is here, there's a very good chance they'll return. (**HAVING**)

=> The tourists are highly how beautiful it is here.

(The tourists are highly **likely to return after having seen** how beautiful it is here. (CAE - 3)

- There's a chance (that) + clause / - Have a chance of doing St/ - Stand a chance of doing St

- Be likely to do St: rất có thể

57. Yasmin's uncle said to her that she should stop her children eating junk food. (**LET**)

=> Yasmin's uncle told her junk food any more.

(Yasmin's uncle told her **not to let her children eat** junk food any more. (CAE - 3)

58. I want to buy a car but, without your financial help, I'll be unable to do it. (**ABLE**)

=> I want to buy a car but I won't you help me financially.

(I want to buy a car but I won't **be able to do it unless** you help me financially. (CAE - 4)

=> not be able to St ⇔ be unable to do St, Without + N ⇔ Unless + clause

59. John didn't know he had to phone his teacher if he was going to miss a class. (**MEANT**)

=> John didn't know his teacher a ring if he was going to miss a class.

(John didn't know **he was meant to give** his teacher a ring if he was going to miss a class. (CAE - 4)

- **Be meant to do St = Be supposed to do St = Should do St:** nên, phải làm gì ...

60. My dream was always to go on the stage. => It was ...

(**It was always my dream to go on the stage.**)

61. It looked as if the carrots were bad. **appeared** => The carrots bad.

(..... **appeared to be** => Seem/appear/happen)

62. Alexis has decided that he'll go on Tuesday. **planning** => Alexis go on Tuesday.

(Alexis ...**is planning to** ... go on Tuesday.)

63. I started revising earlier so I could do more work. **order**

=> I started revising earlier do more work.

(I started revising earlier **in order to/ in order that I could** do more work.)

64. He invented an illness in order to avoid having to go to school. **so**

=> He invented an illness to go to school.

(He invented an illness**so as not to have** to go to school.)

65. We won't get to the airport in less than 30 minutes. (least)

=> It will 30 minutes to get to the airport.

It will take at least 30 minutes to get to the airport.

66. I was on the point of leaving the house when the telephone rang. => I was ... (I was just about to leave the house when the telephone rang.) (HV Ngan Hang – 2001-2002, P. 102)

67. It is difficult to tell the truth. => The ... (**truth is difficult to tell.**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.121)

68. The peasants depend on a good harvest for their existence. (**continue**) => The peasants depend on a good

harvest ... (**in order to continue to live**). (BTTH TA 10 – P.104)

69. "Why don't you relax for a while?" she said to me. (take) => She suggested easy for a while.

She suggested that I should take it easy for a while.

70. I don't want to go to the meeting. (**rather**) => ...

71. Read the instructions first in order to save time later. **as**

=> Read the instructions first waste time later.

(Read the instructions first **so as not to** waste time later.)

72. My mother wouldn't give me permission to go to the disco. **let**

=> My mother to the disco.

(My mother **wouldn't let me go** to the disco.)

73. "Why don't you buy a bigger house, Sue?" said Amos. **should**

=> Amos suggested a bigger house.

(Amos suggested **(that) Sue should buy** a bigger house.)

74. The organizing committee would be delighted if you would give the opening lecture at the conference. **(INVITE)**

=> The organizing committee are pleased the opening lecture at the conference.

(to invite you to give) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.125)

75. You didn't tell me you were going to be away for a whole month. **(NEGLECTED)**

=> You you were going to be away for a whole month.

(neglected to tell me) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.125) - Neglect (to do) St: Sao lãng, thờ ơ, hững hờ

76. This water is too cold to brew tea. **(enough)** => ...

(This water is not hot enough to brew tea.)

77. "If Brian doesn't train harder, I won't select him for the team." said the manager.

=> The manager threatened ...

(not to select Brian for the team if he didn't train harder/unless he trained harder.)

(The manager threatened ... (that he wouldn't select Brian for the team if he didn't train harder/unless he trained harder.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.153)

(The manager threatened ... (that Brian wouldn't be selected for the team if he didn't train harder/unless he trained harder.)

78. The hijackers haven't set any of the hostages free. **(go)** => ...

(The hijackers haven't let any of the hostages go.)

79. I left without saying goodbye as I didn't want to disturb the meeting.

=> Rather ...

(than disturb the meeting, I left without saying goodbye.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.153)

- **Rather than do** St: Để khỏi, để tránh, thay vì, ...

80. It's not possible to play tennis because of the rain. **makes**

=> The rain to play tennis.

(The rain **makes it impossible**.... to play tennis.)

81. Do your parents allow you to watch TV late at night? **let**

=> Do your parents TV late at night?

(Do your parents ... **let you watch** ... TV late at night?)

82. "I'll pick him up from the airport," she said. **offered** => She from the airport.

(She ... **offered to pick him up** ... from the airport.)

83. I was so shocked that I couldn't react. **wasn't** =>

..... react.

(I **wasn't calm enough to** react.)

84. How much is the bus fare from London to Cambridge? **cost**

=> How much from London to Cambridge by bus?

(How much ... **does it cost to go/travel** from London to Cambridge by bus?)

85. I can understand this quite well. **easy** => It's understand this.

(It's ... **easy for me to** ... understand this.)

86. The shelf was so high that he couldn't reach it. **enough** => The shelf was not reach.

(The shelf was not ... **low enough for him to** ... reach.)

87. We would rather stop than continue in this manner. **prefer**

=> We than to continue in this manner.

(We ... **'d prefer to stop** than to continue in this manner.)

88. He is helping his mother so that they can finish quickly. **order**

=> He is helping his mother quickly.

(He is helping his mother ... **in order to finish** ... quickly.)

89. You will have to pay at least £500 to get that watch. **impossible**

=> You'll find it _____ that watch for less than £500.

(You'll find it ____ **impossible to get/buy** ____ that watch for less than £500.)

90. I don't want to eat this now. **rather** => I _____ **'d rather not** _____ eat this now.

(I _____ **'d rather not** _____ eat this now.)

91. Mother walked in quietly so as to avoid waking the baby. **order**

=> Mother walked in quietly _____ the baby.

(Mother walked in quietly ____ **in order not to wake** ____ the baby.)

92. I couldn't concentrate fully because of the loud music. **difficult**

=> The loud music _____ fully.

(The loud music ____ **made it difficult to concentrate** ____ fully.)

93. The tea is too hot to drink. **enough** => The tea _____ to drink.

(The tea ____ **isn't cool/cold enough** ____ to drink.)

94. Paul had difficulty in starting the car. **difficult** => Paul _____ the car.

(Paul ____ **found it difficult to start** ____ the car.)

95. David was too ill to go camping with us. **enough**

=> David _____ to go camping with us.

(David ____ **was not well/fit enough** ____ to go camping with us.)

96. Why wouldn't she give you her telephone number? **refuse**

=> Why _____ give you her telephone number?

(Why ____ **did she refuse to** ____ give you her telephone number?)

97. The pop star left by the back exit so as to avoid meeting the press. **order**

=> The pop star _____ the press.

(The pop star left by the back exit **in order not to meet / in order to avoid (meeting)** the press.)

98. I don't really want to go out tonight. **prefer** => I _____ go out tonight.

(I **would prefer not to** go out tonight.)

99. She couldn't concentrate because the room was so hot. **difficult**

=> The heat in the room _____ to concentrate.

=> The heat in the room **made it difficult (for her)** to concentrate.

100. We were surprised to see Pamela at the party. **expect**

=> We _____ to see Pamela at the party.

(We **did not expect to** see Pamela at the party.)

101. It's a four-hour journey from Swansea to London. **travel**

=> It _____ from Swansea to London.

(It **takes four hours to travel** from Swansea to London.)

102. I don't really want to leave yet. **rather** =>

I

..... leave yet.

(I **would rather not** ... leave yet.)

103. Why are you interested in taking up a new hobby? **want** =>

Why

..... up a new hobby?

(Why **do you want | to take** up a new hobby?)

104. It was difficult for my mother to set up the new software. **(found)**

=> My mother _____ up the new software.

(My mother **found it difficult to set up** the new software.)

105. Shall I call Mr. Paro for you? **(me)**

=> Would _____ Mr. Paro for you?

(Would **you let me to call** Mr. Paro for you?)

106. Roberto took a month to design the concept car. **(him)**

=> It _____ to design the concept car.

(It **took him a month** to design the concept car.)

107. It's not necessary to take a lot of luggage when going on holiday. **much**

=> You ... **don't need much / needn't take much / don't have to take much** ... luggage when going on holiday.

(You ... **don't need much / needn't take much / don't have to take much** ... luggage when going on holiday.)

108. "Don't open it!" he said. **warned** =>

He

..... open it.

(He **warned me not to** ... open it.)

109. Ask Paul to do it. You can rely on him. **let** => Ask Paul to do it. He

(Ask Paul to do it. He **will not let you down**.)

110. It's really important that you pay the bill today. **REMEMBER**
=> You must the bill today.

(**remember to pay**)

111. Meeting John in town was really surprising. **EXPECT** => I
..... John in town.

(**did not expect to meet/didn't expect to meet**)

112. In the future she became a successful business woman. **WENT**
=> She a successful business woman.

(**went on to become**)

113. It seemed that they had visited the place before. => They seemed

(They seemed **to have visited the place before.**)

114. Were you successful in passing the exam? **MANAGE**
=> Did the exam?

(**you manage to pass**)

115. Making new friends was easy for her. **DIFFICULT** => She didn't
..... new friends.

(She didn't **FIND IT DIFFICULT TO MAKE** new friends.)

116. Feel free to telephone if you have any further problems. **CALL**
=> Do not if you have any further problems.

(**HESITATE TO CALL**)

117. Could I borrow some change for the telephone? **LEND** => Could
..... some change for the telephone?

(**you lend me**)

118. My teacher suggested that I spent the summer in England. **ADVISED**
=> My teacher the summer in England.

(**advised me to spend**)

119. We are noticing a rise in the cost of living again. **APPEARS** => The cost of living
..... again.

(**appears to be rising/going up**)

120. I am so exhausted that I won't be able to go out tonight. **TOO**
=> I go out tonight.

(**am too exhausted to**)

121. One runner did not succeed in finishing the race. **ABLE**
=> One runner the race.

(**was not/wasn't able to finish**)

122. Remember to return the videos you have rented. **BACK**
=> Don't the videos you have rented.

(**forget to take/bring back**)

123. 'What about going for a swim?' John said to me. **SHOULD** => John
..... for a swim.

(suggested (that) we should go)

124. They wanted to apologize for their behaviour: that's why they paid for dinner. **order**
=> They paid for dinner for their behaviour.

(They paid for dinner **in order to apologize** for their behaviour.)

125. It isn't necessary to bring skis as they are included in the package. **have**

=> You bring skis as they are included in the package.

(You **don't have to** bring skis as they are included in the package.)

126. When I was a child, we would go to the local park every Saturday afternoon. **used**

=> When I was a child, the park every Saturday.

(When I was a child, **we used to go** the park every Saturday.)

127. Magda allows her children to stay up to midnight on Saturday evenings. **let**

=> Magda late on Saturdays.

(Magda **lets her children stay up** late on Saturdays.)

128. He couldn't find me at the exhibition. **find** => He wasn't able
..... me at the exhibition.

(He wasn't able **to find** me at the exhibition.)

129. She let her son go to Poznan for the weekend. **allowed** => She
..... to Poznan.

(She **allowed her son to go** to Poznan.)

130. Remind me to call Asia. **forget** => Don't let
.....
... Asia.

(Don't let **me forget to call** Asia.)

131. It doesn't need to be finished this afternoon. **finish** => It
..... this afternoon.

(It **isn't necessary to finish** this afternoon.)

132. It isn't necessary to buy a first class ticket. **have** => You a
first class ticket.

(You **don't have to buy** a first class ticket.)

133. They found it tiring working for him. **made** => Working for

(Working for **made them (feel) tired** ..) .)

134. Nobody managed to work out the correct answer. (**failed**) => ...

(**Everybody failed in working out the correct answer/ to work out the correct answer.**)

135. He told me he didn't want to play football with me. **rather**
=> He told me football with me.

(He told me **he would rather not play** football with me.)

136. Maria doesn't want to go swimming today. **rather**
=> Maria go swimming today.

(Maria **would rather not** go swimming today.)

137. 'I wouldn't touch that switch if I were you,' said Jane to her son. **warned**
=> Jane _____ touch the switch.

(Jane _____ **warned her son not to** _____ touch the switch.)

138. Could you ring me at 10 o'clock, please? **you**
=> I'd like _____ at 10 o'clock, please.

(I'd like _____ **you to ring me** _____ at 10 o'clock, please.)

139. Why wouldn't your sister allow you to see her new house? **let**
=> Why wouldn't _____ see her new house?

(Why wouldn't _____ **your sister let you** _____ see her new house?)

140. David is too young to drive a car. **old** => David
..... drive a car.

isn't old enough to

141. The policeman told the thief to empty his pockets. => The policeman made ...

(The policeman **made the thief empty his pockets**)

142. The robber came from the back door. => I could feel ...

(=> I could feel **the robber come from the back door**)

143. It was so late that nothing could be done. => It was too late ...

(It was too **late to do anything**.)

144. Xuyên was too ill to go to school. => Xuyên was not ...

(=> **Xuyên was not healthy enough to go to school**.)

145. He learned to speak English well in only one year. => It took
_____ .

(**It took him only one year to learn to speak English well**.)

146. Leaving the medicine around the house is not safe. => It is not

(**It is not safe to leave the medicine around in the house**.)

147. Apparently, Sheila wasn't listening to me. (**appear**) => Sheila
.....listening to me.

(Sheila **didn't appear to be** listening to me.)

148. You shouldn't complain about the service here: it's not worth it.

=> It would be absurd for

(**It would be absurd for you to complain about the service here**.)

149. What was the reason for his resignation? (**made**) => ...

(**What made him resign?**)

150. You don't have to worry about the future. (**no need**) => There ...

(**There is no need for you to worry about the future**.)

151. The books were so dear that I couldn't afford them. **expensive**

=> The books were to buy.

(..... **too expensive for me**)

152. We may come a bit late this evening. (**likely**)

(We are likely to come a bit late this evening. /Or: It is likely that we will come a bit late this evening.)

153. Is there any likelihood of their passing the exams? => Are they likely ...

(Are they likely to pass their exams? => There + be + likelihood of one's doing St $\Leftrightarrow$ S + be + likely + to do St: có thể, có khả năng ...) (DH Ngoại Thương – 2001-2002, P.66)

154. I'm certainly not going to give you any more money. => I have no ...

(I have no certainty to give you any more money.)

155. This factory needs to produce more if it is to survive. **(output)**

(This factory needs to increase its output if it is to survive.)

PRACTICE: Other Idiomatic Structures with V.ing/Infinitives

1. He told her the ghost story. He wanted to keep her at home at night. (with a view to)

=> ...

(He told her the ghost story with a view to keeping her at home at night.) (DH Văn Hóa HN – Khoa D 97-98, P.266)

2. She didn't say a word as she left the room. => She left the room ...

(without saying a word.) (Hoc Văn THPT – Khoa D 97-98, P.302) (BTĐA 10 – P.108)

3. Paul went to see the bank manager about getting a loan. **(view)**

=> ...

(Paul went to see the bank manager with a view to getting a loan. (with a view to + V.ing: với mục đích)

(BD HSG TA 11 – P.43)

4. It's not a habit of mine to sleep in the afternoon. => I am ...

(I am not used to sleeping in the afternoon./I am not in the habit of sleeping in the afternoon.) (CHUYÊN ĐỀ SP Vinh Phúc – 2001-2002, P.266)

5. As I intended to expand my shop, I made an offer for the premises next door. (with a view to)

=> ...

I made an offer for the premises next door with a view to expanding my shop. (with a view to (doing) St: nhằm mục đích gì đó ...) (BDHSG TA 11 – P.7)

6. Mark is a passionate skier and he also takes part in skateboarding tournaments.

=> Apart from ...

(Apart from **being a passionate skier, Mark also takes part in skateboarding tournaments.**)

7. I support the notion to lift the trade embargo. **(for)** => ...

(I am for lifting the trade embargo.)

8. You may have serious problems if you don't have any health insurance. **(bound)**

=> ...

(You are bound to have serious problems if you don't have any health insurance.)

9. Can the conflict be only solved by force? => Isn't there ...

(Isn't there **any other way of solving the conflict than by force?**)

10. Do we have to work only night shifts all the time? => is there no alternative

(Is there no alternative **to our working night shifts?**)

11. I couldn't do anything but suspend the driver's licence. (**no option**)

=> I ...

(**I had no option but suspend the driver's licence.**)

12. Our grandfather cannot hear well because of his old age. (**hard**)

=> ...

(**Our grandfather is hard of hearing because of his old age.**)

13. I was just going to leave my office when the phone rang. (**about**)

(**I was about to leave my office when the telephone rang.**)

14. Michael works overtime because he wants to pay off his debts. (**view**)

(**Michael works overtime with a view to paying off his debts.**)

15. Alan is both a good sprinter and a skilled jumper. => Besides ...

(Besides being a good sprinter, Alan is also a skilled jumper.) (= **in addition to**)

16. Several workers refused to join the strike. (**opposed**)

(**Several workers (were) opposed (to) joining the strike.**)

17. With such a poor dealing with the matter he will not probably succeed. (**unlikely**)

(**With such a poor dealing with the matter he is unlikely to succeed.**)

18. She can't get into the habit of studying every evening.

=> She can't get used

(De TSDH 2002)

19. I'm sure Charles bought them a lovely present for their wedding. (**bound**)

=> ...

(**Charles is bound to have bought them a lovely present for their wedding.**)

(be bound to do St = be sure to do St) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.118)

20. The girl was about to leave when her boy friend finally entered the café. (**point**)

=> ...

(**The girl was on the point of leaving when her boy friend finally entered the café.** (BD HSG TA 11 – P.155)

21. We missed the bus because we had overslept. (**consequence**) => ...

(**We missed the bus as a consequence of oversleeping.** => **as a consequence of = because of = as a result of**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.167)

22. You'll certainly encounter a lot of difficulties if you opt for a lone expedition. (**bound**)

=> ...

(**You are bound to encounter a lot of difficulties if you opt for alone expedition.**)

23. Defeat is inevitable if you play him at chess. (**BOUND**)

=> ...

(**You are bound to lose if you play him at chess.** (Thất bại là khó tránh khỏi/ chắc chắn nếu bạn chơi cờ với anh ta) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.71)

24. You can't possibly expect me to have supper ready by eight o'clock. (**QUESTION**)

=> ...

(It is **out of question** (for me) to have supper ready by eight o'clock. (BD HSG TA 12 – P.97)

- **be out of question = be impossible**

25. He is unlikely to win the competition. (**CHANCE**)

=> ...

(**He stands a little chance of winning the competition.** (Anh ta ít có cơ may thắng trận)

=> **He has a little chance chance of winning the competition.** (Anh ta khó có khả năng thắng trận)

=> **There is a little chance of his winning the competition.** (Anh ta khó có khả năng thắng trận)

- Stand a chance of (doing) St: Có cơ may làm gì ...

- Have a chance of (doing) St: Có khả năng làm gì, có thể làm gì

- There is a chance of doing St: Có khả năng làm gì ... (BD HSG TA 12 – P.111)

26. Sally was all ready to leave the office when her boss asked her to type up a report. (**point**)

=> Sally was the office when her boss asked her to type up a report.

(Sally was **on the point of leaving** the office when her boss asked her to type up a report. (CAE 1 – Test 1)

be (just) about to do st = be (just) ready to do st = be (just) on the point of doing st: định làm gì

27. I think learning to use a typewriter is a waste of time. (**point**)

=> I can't how to use a typewriter.

(I can't **see the point of learning** how to use a typewriter. (the point of: điểm nói, điểm lý thú ...)) (CAE 1 – Test 1)

28. Nadia's friend arrived just as she was about to leave the restaurant. (**point**)

=> Nadia was just the restaurant when her friend arrived.

(Nadia was just **on the point of leaving** the restaurant when her friend arrived. (CAE 1 – Test 1)

29. It's very unlikely that Martin will win the 100 metres, as he's out of training. (**chance**)

=> Martin has almost the 100 metres, as he's out of training.

(Martin has almost **no chance of winning** the 100 metres, as he's out of training. (CAE 1 – Test 2)

30. Lisa was just about to leave when the phone rang. (**POINT**)

=> Lisa was the house when the phone rang.

=> Lisa was **on the point of leaving** the house when the phone rang. (CAE -3)

31. Do you think Noelia is likely to win the competition? (**CHANCE**)

=> Do you think Noelia is in the competition?

(Do you think Noelle is in **any chance of winning** the competition? (CAE -3)

(=> Do you think Noelle has the competition?)

(=> Do you think Noelle has **any chance of winning** the competition?)

32. I never intended to go to the meeting. => I never had ...

(**intention of going to the meeting.** (BD HSG TA 12 – P.126)

33. It is quite pointless to complain. => There's no ...

(**point/sense in complaining.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.126)

34. It is hardly likely that he took poison. => He is ...

(**hardly likely to have taken poison.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.140)

- It + be + likely + that clause ⇔ S + be + likely + to Infinitive: rat co the, co kha nang

35. You'll certainly meet lots of people in your new job. => You are ...

(**sure/certain/bound/ certainly going to meet lots of people in your new job.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.153)

36. Andy didn't tell anybody that he was going on a lone expedition. (**without**)

=> Andy went ...

(Andy went **on a lone expedition without telling anybody about it.**)

37. Don't bother to apply for the job. **POINT**

=> There for the job.

(**is no point in applying/'s no point in applying/is no point applying**)

38. There's no point asking Lynda to help as she's really busy. **WASTE**

=> It's asking Lynda to help as she's really busy.

(**a waste of time**)

39. I'm sure it will be raining tomorrow. **BOUND** => It
raining tomorrow.

(**is/'s bound to be**)

40. Being rich has no connection with being happy. **NOTHING**

=> Being rich being happy.

(**has nothing to do with**)

41. He's not just a good teacher, but a good writer as well. **addition**

=> He's a good writer _____ a good teacher.

(He's a good writer **in addition to being** _____ a good teacher.)

42. He will lie on the sofa doing nothing all day round. (**nothing but**)

=> ...

(**He will do nothing but lie on the sofa all day round.**)

43. He's so unhelpful that it's a waste of time asking him. **point**

=> He's so unhelpful that _____ asking him.

(He's so unhelpful that _____ **there's no point in** _____ asking him.)

44. My boss told me I could go home early. **permission**

=> My boss _____ home early.

(My boss **gave me permission to go** _____ home early.)

45. I have to book the hotel, and I have to make the travel arrangements. (**in addition to**) (BT TA 12 – P.143)

=> **I have to book the hotel in addition to making the travel arrangements./ In addition to booking the hotel, I have to make the travel arrangements.**

46. I'd better do this exercise now because there might not be time later. **case**

=> I'd better do this exercise now time later.

(I'd better do this exercise now**in case there is no** time later.)

47. I don't usually sleep after work. (**in the habit**) => ...

(I'm not in the habit of sleeping after work.)

48. It would be a good idea to have a code of advertising practice.

=> The introduction ...

(The introduction of a code of advertising practice would be a good idea.)

49. I wish I hadn't told him what we were planning to do this evening. (regret)

=> I for this evening.

(BT TA 10 – P.94) (**regret not telling him what we were planning to do this evening.**)

50. I fully intended to find out who is responsible for the graffiti. (**intention**)

=> ...

I had a full/ every intention of finding who is responsible for the graffiti. (BDHSG TA 11 – P.7)

51. Jenny didn't feel like going to the party. (**mood**) (BDHSG TA 11 – P.7)

=> ...

(Jenny wasn't in the mood for going to the party/ in the mood to go to the party.)

(Be in the mood for (doing) St – Be in the mood to do St: (cảm thấy) thích làm gì)

52. I wish I'd paid more attention to his warnings. => I regret ... (BD HSG TA 11 – P.130)

=> I regret ... (**not paying more attention to his warnings.**)

53. I didn't find it any hard to translate this passage. (difficulty)

=> I had this passage.

I had no difficulty in translating this passage.

54. When Sandra walked out of the meeting, she didn't say goodbye to anyone. (without)

(BT TA 12 – P.124)

=> Sandra left ... (**the meeting without saying goodbye to anyone.**)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 12: BỒI DƯỠNG KIẾN THỨC NÂNG CAO VỀ LIÊN TỪ CẶP ĐÔI (PAIRED CONJUNCTIONS)

PRACTICE ON PAIRED CONJUNCTIONS

either ... (or) (hoặc ... hoặc ...), **neither ... (nor)** (không ... cũng không ...), **not only ... but also, both ... and**

1. She said she would contact me but she didn't write and she didn't phone. (neither ... nor)

=> ...

2. The library doesn't have the book I need. The bookstore doesn't have the book I need. (neither ... nor)

=> ...

3. Your sister will meet you at the airport, or your brother will meet you there. (either ... or)

=> ...

4. I know he bought a coat. Did he buy a new pair of shoes too? (Yes. ... not only ... but also ...)

=> ...

5. The driver was injured in the accident. The passengers were injured in the accident. (both ... and)

=> ...

6. He buys used cars. He also sells cars. (both ... and)

=> ...

7. I haven't got the time to go on holiday. And I haven't got the money. (neither ... nor)

=> ...

8. His cousin is living with him. His mother-in-law is living with him too. (not only ... but also)

=> ...

9. Jim hasn't got a car. Carol hasn't got a car. (neither ... nor) => ...

10. We could fly, or we could take the train. (either ... or) => ...

11. Her room-mates don't know where she is. Her brother doesn't know where she is. (Neither ...)

=> ...

12. The article was both interesting and informative, you know. => The article was not ...

13. I don't like keeping fish. My sister doesn't like keeping fish either. => Neither ...

14. I haven't seen him and I haven't heard him speak either. => Neither ...

15. I did not know what would happen, and I did not care what would happen.

=> I neither ...

16. This product is cheap, and it's effective. (**as well as**) => ...

17. I haven't got a car, and I haven't got a bike. (**either**) => ...

18. I was quoted in the newspapers and interviewed on TV. (**not only, but, also**)

=> ...

ANSWER KEY

either ... (or) (hoặc ... hoặc ...), **neither ... (nor)** (không ... cũng không ...), **not only ... but also, both ... and**

1. She said she would contact me but she didn't write and she didn't phone. (neither ... nor)

=> ...

(**She said she would contact me but she neither wrote nor phoned.**) (DH Hang Hai – Khoi D 97-98, P.143)

2. The library doesn't have the book I need. The bookstore doesn't have the book I need. (neither ... nor)

=> ...

(Neither the library nor the bookstore has the book I need.) (DH Hang Hai – Khoi D – chuyen ban 97-98, P.149)

3. Your sister will meet you at the airport, or your brother will meet you there. (either ... or)

=> ...

(Either your sister or your brother will meet you at the airport.) (DH Hang Hai – Khoi D – chuyen ban 97-98, P.149)

4. I know he bought a coat. Did he buy a new pair of shoes too? (Yes. ... not only ... but also ...)

=> ...

(Yes. He bought not only a coat but also a new pair of shoes.) (DH Hang Hai – Khoi D – chuyen ban 97-98, P.149)

5. The driver was injured in the accident. The passengers were injured in the accident. (both ... and)

=> ...

(Both the driver and the passengers were injured in the accident.) (DH Hang Hai – Khoi D – chuyen ban 97-98, P.149)

6. He buys used cars. He also sells cars. (both ... and)

=> ...

(DH Hang Hai – Khoi D – chuyen ban 97-98, P.156)

7. I haven't got the time to go on holiday. And I haven't got the money. (neither ... nor)

=> ...

(DH Hang Hai – Khoi D – chuyen ban 97-98, P.156)

8. His cousin is living with him. His mother-in-law is living with him too. (not only ... but also)

=> ...

(DH Hang Hai – Khoi D – chuyen ban 97-98, P.161)

9. Jim hasn't got a car. Carol hasn't got a car. (neither ... nor) => ...

(DH Hang Hai – Khoi D – chuyen ban 97-98, P.161)

10. We could fly, or we could take the train. (either ... or) => ...

(DH Hang Hai – Khoi D – chuyen ban 97-98, P.161)

11. Her room-mates don't know where she is. Her brother doesn't know where she is. (Neither ...)

=> ...

(Neither her room-mates nor her brother knows where she is.) (DH SP Quy Nhon – Khoi D 97-98, P.247)

12. The article was both interesting and informative, you know. => The article was not ...

(The article was not only interesting but also informative.) (DH Vinh – 2001-2002, P.91)

13. I don't like keeping fish. My sister doesn't like keeping fish either. => Neither ...

(I nor my sister likes keeping fish.) (BT TA 11 – P.171)

14. I haven't seen him and I haven't heard him speak either. => Neither ...

(I have seen him and nor have I heard him speak.) (BT TA 11 – P.184)

15. I did not know what would happen, and I did not care what would happen.

=> I neither ...

(knew nor cared what would happen.) (BT TA 11 – P.184)

16. This product is cheap, and it's effective. **(as well as)** => ...

(This product is cheap as well as effective. (BT TA 12 – P.143)

17. I haven't got a car, and I haven't got a bike. **(either)** => ...

(I haven't got a car, and I haven't got a bike either. (BT TA 12 – P.143)

18. I was quoted in the newspapers and interviewed on TV. **(not only, but, also)**

=> ...

(I was not only quoted in the newspaper but I was also interviewed on TV. (BT TA 12 – P.143)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 13: BỒI DƯỠNG KIẾN THỨC NÂNG CAO VỀ MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ

Relative Clauses

I. N => The + N (mối quan hệ giữa mạo từ THE và MĐQH)

E.g.

- I go to a girl's party. She phoned me. **(whose)** → The girl **(The girl whose party I go to phoned me.)**

- I live in a town not far from the capital. => The town ...

(The town where I live is not far from the capital.) (BT TA 10 – P.117)

- My father bought a car with a sun roof. => The car ...

(The car which my father bought had a sun roof.) (BTTA 10 – P.194)

PRACTICE

1. Children are taken home by bus. Their parents work late.

=> The children ...

2. This is a French paper. I can't understand a word. (**which**)

=> The ...

3. I was sitting on a chair. It suddenly collapsed.

=> The chair ...

4. Graham took us to his office. It was filled with books. => The office

5. You sent me a present. Thank you very much for it. => Thank you ...

7. We want to visit a museum. It opens at 12.00. (**that**) => The ...

8. A boy's bike was taken. He visited the police station. (**whose**)

→ The boy

9. A friend met me at the airport. He carried my suitcase. (**who**)

→ The friend

10. Tom cooked a meal. It was delicious. (**that**)

→ The meal

11. The friend is staying with me. She comes from Paris. (**who**)

→ The friend

12. I found man's wallet. He gave me a reward. (**whose**)

→ The man

13. I go to the shop in the centre. It is cheaper. (**that**)

→ The shop in the centre.....

14. The manager wrote a long ungrammatical report. => The report ...

15. The motorcyclist rounded the corner at a quite unbelievable speed. (**which**)

=> ...

16. He had some hair-raising stories to tell. => Some of ...

(the stories he had to tell were hair-raising.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.140)

II. Others

1. He met his wife when he was in the South. I have never seen her. (Use a relative pronoun)

=> ...

2. I have two sisters. I like them both very much. (Use a relative pronoun)

=> ...

3. He sat on the table. One leg of the table was nearly broken down. (of which)

=> ...

4. I was born and grew up in Hanoi. (**Hanoi is**) => ...

5. The woman felt lonely after her children had gone back to school. (**whose**)

=> The woman ...

6. His latest play has been a great success. It was well reviewed by the critics. (**which**)
=> His latest play ...
7. All of them laughed when I told the joke.
=> The joke ...
8. All of those present were in agreement with the proposal.
=> Everyone ...
9. Mr. Smith said he was too busy to speak to me. I had come specially to see him. (Use a relative pronoun)
=> Mr. Smith ...
10. Mr. Marks is unhappy about the plans for the new dam. The stream flows across his farm. (Use a relative pronoun)
=> Mr. Marks ...
11. Tom came to the party in patched jeans. This surprised the other guests. Most of the other guests were wearing evening dress.
=> Tom ...
12. A friend of mine helped me to get a job. His father is the manager of a company. (Use a relative pronoun)
=> A friend of mine ...
13. Mike gave half of the \$50000 he won to his parents. (Use a relative pronoun)
=> Mike won \$50000, ...
14. London was once the largest city in the world, but the population is now falling.
=> The population ...
15. A number of suggestions were made at the meeting, but most of them were not very practical.
=> Most of the ...
16. It is a medieval palace. The king hid in its tower during the civil war.
=> It ...
17. Dr Andy Todd is head of Downlands Hospital. He has criticized government plans to cut health funding.
=> Dr Andy Todd
18. They are choosing the boys for the school's football team. All of them are under 9.
=> All of the boys ...
19. I know this reporter's background well and he's 100% honest.
=> This reporter, ...
20. Both the doctors I consulted were confident of curing me.
=> I consulted ...
21. He met Jane, whom he later married, when he was at Cambridge.
=> He met Jane, who was
22. That man's opinion means more to me than any other person's. (**WHOSE**)
=>
23. English is my favourite subject. => The subject ...

ANSWER KEY

PRACTICE

1. Children are taken home by bus. Their parents work late.

=> The children ...

(The children, whose parents work late, are taken home by bus.) (DHDL Phuong Dong – Khoi D 97-98, P.110)

2. This is a French paper. I can't understand a word. (**which**)

=> The ...

(The paper which I can't understand a word is French. (DH Thai Nguyen – Khoi D – 97-98, P.259)

3. I was sitting on a chair. It suddenly collapsed.

=> The chair ...

(**which/that I was sitting on suddenly collapsed./ on which I was sitting suddenly collapsed.**) (BTTA 11 – P.128)

4. Graham took us to his office. It was filled with books. => The office
(which Graham took us to was filled with books.) (BTTA 11 – P.128)
5. You sent me a present. Thank you very much for it. => Thank you ...
(very much for the present you sent me.) (BTTA 11 – P.159)
7. We want to visit a museum. It opens at 12.00. **(that)** => The ...
(The museum that we wanted to visit opens at 12.00.)
8. A boy's bike was taken. He visited the police station. **(whose)**
 → The boy
(The boy whose bike was taken visited the police station.)
9. A friend met me at the airport. He carried my suitcase. **(who)**
 → The friend
(The friend who met me at the airport carried my suitcase.)
10. Tom cooked a meal. It was delicious. **(that)** → The meal

(The meal which Tom cooked was delicious.)
11. The friend is staying with me. She comes from Paris. **(who)**
 → The friend
(The friend who is staying with me comes from Paris.)
12. I found man's wallet. He gave me a reward. **(whose)** → The man

(The man whose wallet I found gave me a reward.)
13. I go to the shop in the centre. It is cheaper. **(that)**
 → The shop in the centre.....
(The shop in the centre which I go to is cheaper.)
14. The manager wrote a long ungrammatical report. => The report ...
((which was) written by the manager was long and ungrammatical.
 => Vì S câu viết lại là the report => passive voice) (BDHSG TA 11 – P.104)
15. The motorcyclist rounded the corner at a quite unbelievable speed. **(which)**
 => ...

(The speed at which the motorcyclist rounded the corner was quite unbelievable.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.155)

16. He had some hair-raising stories to tell. => Some of ...
(the stories he had to tell were hair-raising.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.140)
 (Anh ta có một số câu chuyện kể dựng tóc gáy. => Một số câu chuyện anh ta kể dựng cả tóc gáy.)

II. Others

1. He met his wife when he was in the South. I have never seen her. (Use a relative pronoun)
 => ...
 (DH Tai Chinh Ke Toan HN – Khoi D 97-98, P.252) (He met his wife, whom I have never seen, when he was in the South.)
2. I have two sisters. I like them both very much. (Use a relative pronoun)

=> ...

(I have two sisters, who/whom/both of whom I like very much. (CHUYÊN ĐỀ SP Ha Noi – P.330)

3. He sat on the table. One leg of the table was nearly broken down. (of which)

=> ...

(CHUYÊN ĐỀ SP Dong Nai – 2001-2002, P.231)

4. I was born and grew up in Hanoi. (**Hanoi is**) => ...

(Ha noi is (the place) where I was born and grew up.) (CHUYÊN ĐỀ SP HN – 2001-2002, P.250)

5. The woman felt lonely after her children had gone back to school. (**whose**)

=> The woman ...

(BTTA 10 – P.118)

6. His latest play has been a great success. It was well reviewed by the critics. (**which**)

=> His latest play ...

(BTTA 10 – P.118)

7. All of them laughed when I told the joke. => The joke ...

(The joke (that) I told them made all of them laugh) (BTTA 10 – P.155)

8. All of those present were in agreement with the proposal. => Everyone ...

(**who was present agreed with the proposal.**) (BTTA 10 – P.117)

9. Mr. Smith said he was too busy to speak to me. I had come specially to see him. (Use a relative pronoun)

=> Mr. Smith ...

(**, whom I had come specially to see, was too busy to speak to me.**) (BTTA 11 – P.128)

10. Mr. Marks is unhappy about the plans for the new dam. The stream flows across his farm. (Use a relative pronoun)

=> Mr. Marks ...

(**, whose farm the stream flows across, is unhappy about the plans for the new dam.**) (BTTA 11 – P.128)

11. Tom came to the party in patched jeans. This surprised the other guests. Most of the other guests were wearing evening dress.

=> Tom ...

(**came to the party in patched jeans, which surprised the other guests, most of whom were wearing evening dress.**) (BTTA 11 – P.128)

12. A friend of mine helped me to get a job. His father is the manager of a company. (Use a relative pronoun)

=> A friend of mine ...

(**, whose father is the manager of a company, helped me to get a job.**) (BTTA 11 – P.159)

13. Mike gave half of the \$50000 he won to his parents. (Use a relative pronoun)

=> Mike won \$50000, ...

(**, half of which he gave to his parents.**) (BTTA 11 – P.159)

14. London was once the largest city in the world, but the population is now falling.

=> The population ...

(of London, which was once the largest city in the world, is now falling.) (BT TA 11 – P.159)

15. A number of suggestions were made at the meeting, but most of them were not very practical.

=> Most of the ...

(suggestions which/ that were made at the meeting were not practical./ suggestions made at the meeting were not practical.) (BT TA 11 – P.159)

16. It is a medieval palace. The king hid in its tower during the civil war.

=> It ...

(is a medieval palace, in whose tower the king hid during the civil war.) (BT TA 11 – P.159)

17. Dr Andy Todd is head of Downlands Hospital. He has criticized government plans to cut health funding.

=> Dr Andy Todd

(, (who is) head of Downlands Hospital, has criticized government plans to cut health funding). (BT TA 11 – P.159)

18. They are choosing the boys for the school's football team. All of them are under 9.

=> All of the boys ...

((who are) being chosen for the school's football team are under 9./ they are choosing for the school's football team are under 9.) (BT TA 11 – P.159)

19. I know this reporter's background well and he's 100% honest.

=> This reporter, ...

(whose background I know well, is 100% honest. (BT TA 12 – P.220)

20. Both the doctors I consulted were confident of curing me.

=> I consulted ...

(two doctors, both of whom were confident of curing me.) (BDHSG TA 11 – P.104)

21. He met Jane, whom he later married, when he was at Cambridge.

=> He met Jane, who was

(later to become his wife, when he was at Cambridge.) (BDHSG TA 11 – P.142)

22. That man's opinion means more to me than any other person's. **(WHOSE)**

=>

(That is the man whose opinion means more to me than any other person's) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.126)

23. English is my favourite subject. => The subject ...

(The subject I like best is English.) (DH Can Tho – 2001-2002, P.28)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 14: BỒI DƯỠNG KIẾN THỨC NÂNG CAO VỀ CÁC DẠNG ĐẢO NGỮ

INVERSIONS

34.3B Subject-auxiliary inversion	We sometimes put an auxiliary (<i>do, have, should, can, etc.</i>) before the subject in statements; the rest of the verb phrase follows the subject. We use this pattern of inversion for emphasis in the following cases:
after adverbs with 'restrictive' / negative meaning (e.g. <i>hardly, scarcely, rarely, little, never</i>)	<i>Little did we realise the true extent of his involvement. Never have I seen such a disturbing sight. Hardly had I arrived when Suzy collared me.</i>
<i>only</i> + time expression or prepositional phrase	<i>Only later did he manage to get permission. Only with a great deal of effort was he able to escape.</i>
(<i>in</i>) <i>no way, at no time, under no circumstances, on no account</i>	<i>No way am I going to wear that! (informal) Under no circumstances can refunds be given.</i>
<i>not</i> + <i>only</i> /time expression/ person or thing	<i>Not only is he late, he hasn't even brought a present. Not since the sixties has a pop group won such acclaim. Not a single stone was left unturned in the search.</i>
<i>no sooner ... than</i>	<i>No sooner had we set out than the skies opened.</i>
clauses beginning with <i>neither</i> or <i>nor</i>	<i>They have no intention of paying and neither have we. We couldn't face the customers and nor could the boss.</i>
clauses beginning with <i>may</i> which describe a strong wish	<i>May he live to regret this decision!</i>
after fronted comparisons, <i>also, such</i> and <i>so</i> (► 34.2B)	<i>The captain is refusing to play under these conditions and so is the rest of the team.</i>

PRACTICE

I. Hardly/Scarcely/Barely ... when

1. Somebody opened the door just after she rang the bell.
=> She had hardly ...
2. We had only just arrived home when the police called.
=> Scarcely ...
3. Just after the play started there was a power failure.
=> Hardly ...
4. I just touched the handle and the burglar alarm went off.
=> Hardly ...
5. His mood began to improve as soon as he drank a glass of wine.
=> Scarcely ...
6. The judge was taken ill just after the trial proceedings began.
=> Barely ...
7. As soon as I locked all the doors, the door bell rang.
=> Hardly ...

II. No sooner ... than ...

1. He had no sooner got home than it began to rain. => No sooner ...
2. He had no sooner arrived home than he was wanted on the phone. (No sooner)

=> ...

3. Immediately after his arrival, things went wrong. => No sooner ...

4. Someone rang the alarm as soon as the burglars left the building.

=> No sooner ...

7. Right after our departure Tommy came down with a cold. => No sooner ...

8. As soon as he received the message, he hurried to the hospital to see what had happened.

=> No sooner ...

9. Hardly had the ship left port, when a violent storm developed. (**NO SOONER**)

=>

10. As soon as I got into the bath, someone knocked at the door.

=> No sooner ...

11. As soon as he shut the door, he realized that he had left the key inside.

=> No sooner ...

III. It was not until ... that .../ Not until .../ Until ...

1. It was not until mid-night that I finished the homework.

=> I ...

2. The men continued to feel *unsafe* until they had crossed the border.

=> Not until ...

4. I met him for the first time in 1997. => I had not ...

5. The electric guitar was developed for pop music in the 1930s.

=> It was not ...

6. She promised to come at seven o'clock, but she showed up at half past seven.

=> It was not ...

7. I have only recently started wearing glasses. => I didn't ...

8. James spoke to his lawyer before signing the contract.

=> James didn't ...

9. When I noticed it was formal dress, it was too late. (**until**)

=> ...

10. I only recognized him when he came into the light.

=> Not until ...

11. I can't move until I've sold my house. **unable**

=> Until I've sold my house move.

12. We started eating when all the guests had arrived. **until**

=> We _____ all the guests had arrived.

13. I didn't discover there was a snake in the basket until I opened the lid.

=> Not until ...

14. The whole truth didn't come out until after the governor's death.

=> It wasn't ...

15. We hadn't been told about the removal until last Friday.

=> It was not ...

16. There will be no change to the policy before everyone has voted the proposal.

=> Not until ...

17. It was only when the office phoned me that I found out about the meeting.

=> Not until ...

18. A work permit will only be issued on receipt of the correct documents.

=> Not ...

19. He was unable to take up the post until early the following year.

=> Not until ...

20. Three days passed before we arrived at the first oasis. (**NOT UNTIL**)

=> ...

IV. Only ...

1. The only way you can become a good athlete is by training hard everyday.

=> Only by ...

2. They decided to go not until after the storm. => Only when ...

3. He must practice it every day. That is the only way for him to be successful.

=> Only by ...

4. If you want to save your eyesight, we must operate immediately.

=> Only by ...

5. The facts were not all made public until later.

=> Only ...

6. You won't be allowed in until your identity has been checked.

=> Only ...

7. It was only when I stopped that I realized something was wrong. (**DID I**)

=> ...

8. If you want to save your eyesight, we must operate immediately.

=> Only by ...

9. The truth only came out on the publication of the general's personal diaries.

=> Only when ...

10. They had to wait for twelve hours before their flight left.

=> Only after a...

11. I didn't realize who he was until later. => Only later ...

12. We didn't realize the girl was Polish until she started speaking with the other guests.

=> Only when ...

13. I won't fry the fish until they are scaled. => Only when ...

14. Malcolm had to stay in prison until the trial came to a definite end.

=> Only after ...

V. Not only ...

7. I know little about computer. (little) => ...
8. The police didn't at all suspect that the judge was the murderer.
=> Little ...
9. She hasn't spoken much since the accident.
=> Little ...

VIII. So/Such ...

1. She looked so ridiculous that everybody burst out laughing. => So ...
2. The Picasso painting was so expensive that nobody could buy it. => So ...
3. The response to our appeal was so great that we had to take on more staff.
=> Such ...
4. The snowfall was so heavy that all the trains had to be cancelled.
=> So ...
- 5(*). There was so much uncertainty that the final markets remained closed.
=> Such ...
6. Such was the demand for tickets that people queued day and night. (**GREAT**)
=>
7. So exhausted were the runners that none of them finished the race. (**TOO**)
=> ...
8. This matter is so complicated that we don't know how to deal with it.
=> So ...

IX. ... NO ...

1. I have not see a more wonderful building anywhere. => Nowhere ...
2. I have not seen a more wonderful building anywhere. => Nowhere ...
3. The bus driver cannot be blamed for the accident in any way.
=> In ...
4. Press photographers are banned from taking photographs backstage.
=> On no ...
5. The money is not to be paid under any circumstances. (**NO**)
=> ...
6. The manager is not to be disturbed. => On no account ...
7. It is essential that this door is kept unlocked. (**should**)
=> On no ...
8. Your mobile phone should be switched off at all times during the performance. (**should**)
=> Under no your mobile phone switched on during the performance.
9. You shouldn't forget about your grandmother's birthday in any circumstances.
=> Under no ...
10. We aren't responsible for the assembly line in Bristol any longer.
=> No longer control.

11. Women in developed countries no longer bear many children.

=> No longer ...

12. He used to depend on his parents for money. => No longer ...

X. NOT ...

1. I didn't think of giving up going on the expedition for a single moment.

=> Not for a single moment

2. The collision didn't damage my car much. => Not a great ...

3. She didn't shed a tear when the story ended in tragedy.

→ Not ...

XI. Others ...

1. There aren't many other books which explain this problem so well.

=> In few other books ...

ANSWER KEY

I. Hardly/Scarcely/Barely ... when

1. Somebody opened the door just after she rang the bell. => She had hardly ...

(DHDL Dong Do – Khoi D 97-98, P.67)

2. We had only just arrived home when the police called.

=> Scarcely ...

(had we arrived home when the police called.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.53)

3. Just after the play started there was a power failure.

=> Hardly ...

(had the play started when there was a power failure.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.53)

4. I just touched the handle and the burglar alarm went off.

=> Hardly ...

(Hardly had I touched the handle when the burglar alarm went off.)

5. His mood began to improve as soon as he drank a glass of wine.

=> Scarcely ...

(Scarcely had he drunk a glass of wine when his mood began to improve.)

6. The judge was taken ill just after the trial proceedings began.

=> Barely ...

(had the trial proceedings begun when the judge was taken ill.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.53)

7. As soon as I locked all the doors, the door bell rang.

=> Hardly ...

(Hardly had I locked all the doors when the door bell rang.) (DH Ngoai Thuong – 2001-2002, P.71)

II. No sooner ... than ...

1. He had no sooner got home than it began to rain. => No sooner ...

(DHDL Phuong Dong – Khoi D 97-98, P.110)

2. He had no sooner arrived home than he was wanted on the phone. (No sooner)

=> ...

3. Immediately after his arrival, things went wrong. => No sooner ...

(No sooner had he arrived than things went wrong.) (Hoc Vien QHQT – Khoi D 97-98, P.294) => + Style

4. Someone rang the alarm as soon as the burglars left the building.

=> No sooner ...

(No sooner had the burglars left the building than someone rang the alarm.) (DHDL Dong Do – 2001-2002, P. 158)

7. Right after our departure Tommy came down with a cold. => No sooner ...

(No sooner had we departed than Tommy came down with a cold.)

8. As soon as he received the message, he hurried to the hospital to see what had happened.

=> No sooner ...

(No sooner had he received the message than he hurried to the hospital to see what had happened.)

9. Hardly had the ship left port, when a violent storm developed. (**NO SOONER**)

=>

(**No sooner had the ship left port than a violent storm developed.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.54)

10. As soon as I got into the bath, someone knocked at the door.

=> No sooner ...

(**had I got into the bath than someone knocked at the door.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.52)

11. As soon as he shut the door, he realized that he had left the key inside.

=> No sooner ...

(**No sooner had he shut the door than he realized that he had left the key inside.**) (BT TA 10 – P.143)

III. It was not until ... that .../ Not until .../ Until ...

1. It was not until mid-night that I finished the homework.

=> I ...

(I couldn't finish/ didn't finish the homework until midnight.) (DHDL Thang Long – Khoi D 97-98, P.119)

2. The men continued to feel *unsafe* until they had crossed the border.

=> Not until ...

(Not until they had crossed the border did the men feel *safe*.) (Hoc Vien QHQT – Khoi D 97-98, P.294)

4. I met him for the first time in 1997. => I had not ...

(I had not met him until 1997.) (DHDL Phuong Dong – 2001-2002, P. 178)

5. The electric guitar was developed for pop music in the 1930s.

=> It was not ...

(BT TA 10 – P.152)

6. She promised to come at seven o'clock, but she showed up at half past seven.

=> It was not ...

(BT TA 10 – P.152)

7. I have only recently started wearing glasses. => I didn't ...

(**wear glasses until recently.**) (BT TA 12 – P.8)

8. James spoke to his lawyer before signing the contract.

=> James didn't ...

(**sign the contract until he spoke/had spoken to his lawyer.**) (BT TA 12 – P.8)

9. When I noticed it was formal dress, it was too late. (**until**)

=> ...

(**It was not until it was too late that I noticed it was formal dress. /**

=> Not until it was too late did I notice it was formal dress.

=> I didn't notice it was formal dress until it was too late. (BD HSG TA 11 – P.78)

10. I only recognized him when he came into the light.

=> Not until ...

(he came into the light did I recognize him) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.126)

11. I can't move until I've sold my house. **unable**

=> Until I've sold my house move.

(..... I'm / I shall be unable to)

12. We started eating when all the guests had arrived. **until**

=> We _____ all the guests had arrived.

(We ***did not start eating until*** all the guests had arrived.)

13. I didn't discover there was a snake in the basket until I opened the lid.

=> Not until ...

(Not until I opened the lid did I discover there was a snake in the basket.)

14. The whole truth didn't come out until after the governor's death.

=> It wasn't ...

(It wasn't until after the governor's death that the whole truth came out.)

15. We hadn't been told about the removal until last Friday.

=> It was not ...

(It was not until last Friday that we were told about the removal.)

16. There will be no change to the policy before everyone has voted the proposal.

=> Not until ...

(Not until everyone has voted on the proposal will there be a change in policy)

17. It was only when the office phoned me that I found out about the meeting.

=> Not until ...

(the office phoned me Did I find out about the meeting.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.52)

18. A work permit will only be issued on receipt of the correct documents.

=> Not ...

(until the correct documents are received/have been received will a work permit be issued. => Style + Inversion + passive voice + Not until Inversion) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.69)

19. He was unable to take up the post until early the following year.

=> Not until ...

(BTTA 10 – P.155)

20. Three days passed before we arrived at the first oasis. **(NOT UNTIL)**

=> ...

(Not until three days passed DID we arrive at the first oasis. – oasis – pl. oases: ốc đảo)

(Compare: We didn't arrive at the first oasis until three days passed.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.54)

21. I only know this when he has told me about it. **(do)**

=> Not until ...

(BTTA 10 – P.118)

IV. Only ...

1. The only way you can become a good athlete is by training hard everyday.

=> Only by ...

(Hoc Vien KHQS – Khoi D 97-98, P.275)

2. They decided to go not until after the storm. => Only when ...

(Only when the storm had finished did they decide to go.) (DHDL Dong Do – 2001-2002, P. 157)

3. He must practice it every day. That is the only way for him to be successful.

=> Only by ...

(Only by practicing it every day can he be successful./ is he able to be successful.) (CHUYÊN ĐỀ SP Dong Nai – 2001-2002, P. 230)

4. If you want to save your eyesight, we must operate immediately.

=> Only by ...

(operating immediately can we save your eyesight.) (BTTA 12 – P.220)

5. The facts were not all made public until later.

=> Only ...

(later were the facts all made public.) (Mãi sau này sự thực mới được đưa ra trước công chúng.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.52)

6. You won't be allowed in until your identity has been checked.

=> Only ...

(when your identity has been checked WILL you be allowed in.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.53)

7. It was only when I stopped that I realized something was wrong. **(DID I)**

=> ...

(Only when I stopped DID I realize something was wrong.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.55)

8. If you want to save your eyesight, we must operate immediately.

=> Only by ...

(operating immediately can we save your eyesight) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.72)

(= Only by being operated immediately can your eyesight be saved. => đồng chủ ngữ)

9. The truth only came out on the publication of the general's personal diaries.

=> Only when ...

(the general's personal diaries were published did the truth come out.) => Inversion + style

(Sự thật chỉ sáng tỏ khi xuất bản các cuốn nhật ký của người chỉ huy. => Chỉ khi các cuốn nhật ký của ngài chỉ huy được xuất bản thì sự thật mới được sáng tỏ **(come out)**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.180)

10. They had to wait for twelve hours before their flight left.

=> Only after a...

(twelve-hour wait did their flight leave./ delay of twelve hours did their flight leave.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.195)

11. I didn't realize who he was until later. => Only later ...

(Only later did I realize who he was.)

12. We didn't realize the girl was Polish until she started speaking with the other guests.

=> Only when ...

(Only when **the girl started speaking with the other guests did we realize she was Polish.**)

(Only when **the fish are scaled** will I fry them.)

=> Only after ...

(Only after the trial had come to a definite end and was Malcolm discharged/ set free from prison.)

1. They are very efficient and proud. => Not only

2. Harry broke his leg, and also injured his shoulder. => Not only ...

3. Tom arrived late and started complaining. => Not only ...

4. She not only passed the exam but also got a prize. => Not only ...

5. Ann is good-looking and well-behaved. => Not only ...

6. She is not only a famous singer, she's also an actress. => Not only ... (BTTA 10 – P.194)

1. We never lost hope that the our missing son would return some day.

(At no time **did we lose hope that our missing son would return some day.**)

$\Rightarrow$ At no time ...

(At no time ... **(was there any likelihood of the two sides reaching an agreement.)**)

- It + be + likely + that clause $\Leftrightarrow$ S + be + likely + to Inf $\Leftrightarrow$ There + be + likelihood of (Sb) doing St

=> He is likely to resign => There is likelihood of his resigning. => Có khả năng ta sẽ ...

 $\Rightarrow \dots$

(At no time did the accused express regret for what he had done.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.55)

4. He never expressed regret for what he had done. => At no time ...
(At no time did he express regret for what he had done.) (DH Ngoai Thuong – 2001-2002, P.71)
5. He never suspected that she was a witch. => At no time ...
(At no time did he suspect that she was a witch.) (HVQHQT – 2001-2002, P. 117)
6. I have not experienced such a storm since I was a child.
=> Not ...
(**since I was a child have I experienced such a storm. <=> Never before ...**) (BTTA 11 – P.172)
7. We have never visited a more charming place before. => Never ...
(**Never before have we visited a more charming place.**)
8. We don't ever have time to play with the children in the afternoon.
=> Never ...
(**Never do we have time play with the children in the afternoon.**)
9. I have never heard such a beautiful song. => Never ...
(**Never have I heard such a beautiful song.**)
10. The way so much money has been spent to so little purpose must be a record!
=> Never before ...
(**has so much money been spent to so little purpose!**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.53)
(Việc sử dụng nhiều tiền như thế vào mục đích quá nhỏ cần phải có hồ sơ - record)
(Compare: Câu gốc ⇔ So much money has *never* been spent to so little purpose *before!*)

VII. Little/Rarely/Seldom ...

1. Mike doesn't use his tape recorder very often. => Hardly ever ...
(Hardly ever **does Mike use his tape recorder.**)
2. It's not common for there to be so much rain in March.
=> Seldom ...
(**IS THERE so much rain in March.**) (So sánh câu gốc với dạng thông thường: There is seldom so much rain in March.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.52)
3. The Prime Minister has hardly ever made a speech as inept as this.
=> Rarely ...
(**has the Prime Minister made a speech as inept as this.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.53)
4. We didn't go sunbathing very often during our holidays in Italy.
=> Rarely ...
(Rarely **did we go sunbathing during our holidays in Italy.**)
5. He would never have guessed that at the age of 17 he would be playing for his country.
LITTLE
=> that at the age of 17 he would be playing for his country.
(**little did he know/ little did he realize**)
6. He would never have guessed that at the age of 17 he would be playing for his country.
LITTLE

=> that at the age of 17 he would be playing for his country.

(LITTLE DID HE KNOW)

7. I know little about computer. (little) => ...

(Little do I know about computer./ I have little knowledge of computer.)

8. The police didn't at all suspect that the judge was the murderer. (BD HSG TA 12 – P.52)

=> Little ... **(did the police suspect that the judge was the murderer.)**

9. She hasn't spoken much since the accident.

=> Little ...

(Little has she spoken since the accident.)

VIII. So/Such ...

1. She looked so ridiculous that everybody burst out laughing. => So ...

(BTTA 10 – P.143)

2. The Picasso painting was so expensive that nobody could buy it. => So ...

(BTTA 10 – P.208)

3. The response to our appeal was so great that we had to take on more staff.

=> Such ...

(was the response to our appeal that we had to take on more staff.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.52)

- appeal: yêu cầu, quỵến rũ, kêu gọi

- response: sự hưởng ứng

- take on: choáng váng, đảm nhiệm (trách nhiệm, công việc); nhận thêm, thuê thêm

4. The snowfall was so heavy that all the trains had to be cancelled.

=> So ...

(heavy was the snowfall that all the trains had to be cancelled.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.52)

5(*). There was so much uncertainty that the final markets remained closed.

=> Such ...

(WAS THE CERTAINTY that the final markets remained closed.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.52)

6. Such was the demand for tickets that people queued day and night. **(GREAT)**

=>

(The demand for tickets was so great that people queued day and night.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.54)

7. So exhausted were the runners that none of them finished the race. **(TOO)**

=> ...

(The runners were too exhausted to finish the race.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.55)

8. This matter is so complicated that we don't know how to deal with it.

=> So ...

(So complicated is this matter that we don't know how to deal with it.)

IX. ... NO ...

1. I have not see a more wonderful building anywhere. => Nowhere ...

(have I seen a more wonderful building.) (BTTA 11 – P.142)

2. I have not seen a more wonderful building anywhere. => Nowhere ...

(BTTA 10 – P.77)

3. The bus driver cannot be blamed for the accident in any way.

=> In ...

(no way can the bus driver be blamed for the accident.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.52)

4. Press photographers are banned from taking photographs backstage.

=> On no ...

(account are press photographers allowed to take photographs backstage.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.53)

- **On no account:** Không có lý do nào mà, trong hoàn cảnh nào cũng không ...

5. The money is not to be paid under any circumstances. **(NO)**

=> ...

(Under no circumstances is the money to be paid.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.54)

- **Under no circumstances:** dù trong hoàn cảnh nào cũng không

6. The manager is not to be disturbed. => On no account ...

(is the manager to be disturbed.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.98)

(On no account **must/should the manager be disturbed.**) (Giám đốc không muốn bị làm phiền)

7. It is essential that this door is kept unlocked. **(should)**

=> On no ...

(account should this door be (kept) locked.(on no account: không vì 1 lý do gì, on account of = because of)

(CAE - 1)

8. Your mobile phone should be switched off at all times during the performance. **(should)**

=> Under no your mobile phone switched on during the performance.

(Under no **circumstances should you have/keep** your mobile phone switched on during the performance.)

(St should be + Vp2 => have St done) (CAE - 2)

9. You shouldn't forget about your grandmother's birthday in any circumstances.

=> Under no ...

(Under no circumstances should you forget about your grandmother's birthday.)

10. We aren't responsible for the assembly line in Bristol any longer.

=> No longer control.

(No longer **is the assembly line in Bristol under our** control.) => Inversion + style

11. Women in developed countries no longer bear many children.

=> No longer ...

(No longer **do women in (the) developed countries bear many children.**) (DHSP TP.HCM – 2001-2002, P.82)

12. He used to depend on his parents for money. => No longer ...
(BT TA 10 – P.43)

X. NOT ...

1. **I** didn't think of giving up going on the expedition for a single moment.

=> Not for a single moment

(Not for a single moment **did I think of giving up going on the expedition.**)

2. The collision didn't damage my car much. => Not a great ...

(**deal/amount of damage was done/caused to my car by the collision./ did the collision do/cause to my car.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.79)

3. She didn't shed a tear when the story ended in tragedy.

→ Not ... (**a tear did she shed when the story ended in tragedy.**)

XI. Others ...

1. There aren't many other books which explain this problem so well. => In few other books ...

(**is this problem explained so well**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.153)

(In few other books ... (**is there such a good explanation/ so good an explanation of this problem**))

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 15: BỒI DƯỠNG KIẾN THỨC NÂNG CAO VỀ MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ KẾT QUẢ

PRACTICE ON So ... that/ Such ... that/ Too/Enough

1. This bag is too heavy for me to carry. (so ... that) => ...
2. They ran fast. I couldn't catch them. (so ... that) => ...
3. This was an interesting television program. It satisfied everybody. (such ... that)
=> ...
4. The bridge was so low that the bus couldn't go under it. => It was ...
5. The test was so difficult, we were unable to do it. => It was such ...
6. It was such a cold day yesterday that I wore my winter coat. => I felt ...
7. I can't afford to buy the house. => The house ...
8. I can't get my feet into these shoes. => These shoes ...
9. The car is cheap enough for Jim to buy. => The car is so ...
10. Sally can't get into the dress because it's very tight. => The dress is too ...
11. I last read the book a long time ago. Now I have forgotten what it's about. (such ... that)
=> ...
12. The information I got from the assistant was so confusing that I didn't know what to do.
(such)
=> The assistant ...
13. I didn't arrive in time to see her. => I wasn't early ...
14. One runner was too exhausted to complete the last lap of the race.
=> One runner was so ...
15. I couldn't stay on to find out because I didn't have enough time.
=> I had too _____
16. He is such a slow speaker that his students get bored. => He speaks ...
17. Huynh Duc plays so well that we all admire him. => He is ...
18. His handwriting is so small I can hardly read it. (**such**)
=> He I can hardly read it.
19. The Presidential visit attracted such an enormous crowd that all traffic came to a standstill.
=> So many ...
20. The weather was so appalling that we came home early. (**such**)
=> ...
21. Their dog was so fierce that no one would visit them.
=> They had ...
22. Pavel's advice helped me so much that I was able to solve the problem immediately.
(**SUCH**)
=> Pavel that I was able to solve the problem immediately.
23. I'm hungry enough to eat two lunches. **so** I'm
..... two lunches.
24. I don't think I can afford to buy this dress. **have** => I don't think I
money to buy this dress.
25. Would you like some more sauce with your meat? **enough**
=> Have _____ with your meat?

26. Suzanne was too excited to sleep. **that** => Suzanne was not sleep.
27. The meal we had in the restaurant was so nice. **such** => It meal in the restaurant.
28. It is so chilly we'd better go by underground.
=> It is such
29. I went to Italy with the intention of learning Italian. **THAT** => I went to Italy Italian.
30. He couldn't read the cup because it was too high. **low** => He cup wasn'tfor him to reach.

ANSWER KEY

1. This bag is too heavy for me to carry. (so ... that) => ...
(That the concert was boring was true./ It was true that the concert was boring.)
(DH Hang Hai – Khoi D Phan ban 97-98, P.150)

2. They ran fast. I couldn't catch them. (so ... that) => ...
(DH Hang Hai – Khoi D – chuyen ban 97-98, P.161)
3. This was an interesting television program. It satisfied everybody. (such ... that)
=> ...
(DH Hang Hai – Khoi D – chuyen ban 97-98, P.161)
4. The bridge was so low that the bus couldn't go under it. => It was ...
(It was such a low bridge that the bus couldn't go under it./It was impossible for the bus to go under the low bridge.
(DH Hue – Khoi D – chuyen ban 97-98, P.171)
5. The test was so difficult, we were unable to do it. => It was such ...
(a difficult test that we were unable to do it.) (Hoc Vien KHQS – Khoi D 97-98, P.288)
6. It was such a cold day yesterday that I wore my winter coat. => I felt ...
(I felt so cold yesterday that I wore my winter coat.) (DH Da Nang – 2001-2002, P.42)
7. I can't afford to buy the house. => The house ...
(The house is too expensive for me to buy.) (DH Ngoai Thuong – 2001-2002, P.66)
8. I can't get my feet into these shoes. => These shoes ...
(These shoes are too small/ not big enough for me to get my feet into.) (DHDL Duy Tan – 2001-2002, P. 153)
9. The car is cheap enough for Jim to buy. => The car is so ...
(DHDL Hung Vuong – 2001-2002, P. 172)
10. Sally can't get into the dress because it's very tight. => The dress is too ...
(The dress is too tight for Sally to get into it.) (DHDL Hung Vuong – 2001-2002, P. 172)
11. I last read the book a long time ago. Now I have forgotten what it's about. (such ... that)
=> ...
(I read the book such a long time ago that (now) I have forgotten what it's about.) (CHUYÊN ĐỀ SP Dong Nai – 2001-2002, P.231)
12. The information I got from the assistant was so confusing that I didn't know what to do. (such)
=> The assistant ...
(BTTHA 10 – P.118)
13. I didn't arrive in time to see her. => I wasn't early ...
(enough to see her.) (BTTH TA 10 – P.85)
14. One runner was too exhausted to complete the last lap of the race.
=> One runner was so ...
(exhausted that he couldn't complete the last lap of the race.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.126)
15. I couldn't stay on to find out because I didn't have enough time.
=> I had too _____
(I had too **little time so I couldn't stay on to find out / to stay on to find out.**)
16. He is such a slow speaker that his students get bored. => He speaks ...
(He speaks so slowly that his students get bored.) (Hoc Vien Bao Chi va Tuyen Truyen – Khoi D 97-98, P.312)

=> Such + So + Style

17. Huynh Duc plays so well that we all admire him. => He is ...

(He is such a good player/footballer that we all admire him.) (DHSP TP.HCM – 2001-2002, P.82) => Such + So + Style

18. His handwriting is so small I can hardly read it. (**such**)

=> He I can hardly read it.

(**has such small writing that**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.95)

19. The Presidential visit attracted such an enormous crowd that all traffic came to a standstill.

=> So many ...

(**people turned out (tap hop lai) to see the President that all traffic came to a standstill.**) (BTTH TA 12 – P.57)

20. The weather was so appalling that we came home early. (**such**)

=> ...

(**It was such appalling weather that we came home early./ We had such appalling weather that we ...**)

- appalling (a): kinh khủng - appall (v.t): làm kinh khủng

- appealing (a): hấp dẫn, lôi cuốn - appeal to Sb: cầu khẩn, lôi cuốn (BD HSG TA 11 – P.155)

21. Their dog was so fierce that no one would visit them.

=> They had ...

(**such a fierce dog/so fierce a dog that no one would visit them.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.195)

22. Pavel's advice helped me so much that I was able to solve the problem immediately. (**SUCH**)

=> Pavel that I was able to solve the problem immediately.

(Pavel **gave me such helpful advice** that I was able to solve the problem immediately. (CAE - 3)

- **Give Sb (a piece of/ a word of) advice** = Advise Sb: khuyên ai

- **Act on/ Follow/ Take one's advice**: nghe theo lời khuyên của ai đó

23. I'm hungry enough to eat two lunches. **so** =>

I'm

..... two lunches.

(**..... so hungry (that) I could eat**)

24. I don't think I can afford to buy this dress. **have** => I don't think I money to buy this dress.

(I don't think I ... **have enough** money to buy this dress.)

25. Would you like some more sauce with your meat? **enough**

=> Have _____ with your meat?

(Have **you got/had enough sauce** with your meat?)

26. Suzanne was too excited to sleep. **that** =>

Suzanne

was

..... not sleep.

(Suzanne was**so excited that | she could**..... not sleep.)

27. The meal we had in the restaurant was so nice. **such** => It
meal in the restaurant.
(**was such a nice**)

28. It is so chilly we'd better go by underground. => It is such

(It is such **chilly weather / a chilly day, we'd better go by underground.**)

29. I went to Italy with the intention of learning Italian. **THAT** => I went to Italy
..... Italian.

(**so that I could learn**)

30. He couldn't read the cup because it was too high. **low** => He cup wasn't **low enough**
for him to reach.

(He cup wasn't **low enough** for him to reach.)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 14: BỒI DƯỠNG KIẾN THỨC NÂNG CAO VỀ MỆNH ĐỀ CHẾ

Cleft Sentences

- Cleft means divided. In a cleft sentence, information which could be given in one clause is divided into two parts, each with its own verb. This way you give extra emphasis to part of the sentence

It was Tom who didn't want to come.

SENTENCE Mike took Sally to the party on Saturday.

EMPHASIS ON THE SUBJECT It was Mike who took Sally to the party on Saturday.

EMPHASIS ON THE OBJECT It was Sally that Mike took to the party on Saturday.

EMPHASIS ON THE ADVERBIAL It was on Saturday that Mike took Sally to the party.

EMPHASIS ON THE PREP. PHRASE It was to the party that Mike took Sally on Saturday.

EMPHASIS ON THE ACTION What Mike did was (to) take Sally to the party

- In these sentences WHAT means THE THING(S) THAT. The WH-clause must contain a verb. To highlight the action we use a form of DO in the WH-clause. The highlighted phrase usually contains a bare infinitive or TO + INF.

If the highlighted verb is in the continuous or perfect, the form of DO matches it.

The boys are taking Sandy to the match □ What the boys are doing is taking Sandy to the match.

The thing that I most disliked was the colour of her dress.

The only thing I won't do is phone her again.

All you need is love.

- WH- cleft sentences:

WH- Clause + BE + EMPHASISED WORD / PHRASE

It Cleft sentences:

IT + BE (+ NOT AND/OR ADVERB) + EMPHASISED WORD/PHRASE + THAT (WHO) CLAUSE

EXERCISE 1:

READ THE INFORMATION IN *italicized* THEN COMPLETE THE REPLIES. EACH REPLY MUST CONTAIN A CLEFT SENTENCE.

Nick turned up late for work on Monday because he got stuck in a traffic jam on the ring road.

Luckily Nick has a mobile phone so he was able to phone his boss and warn her that he would be late. She was furious but managed to reschedule an important meeting for the afternoon.

1. Nick was late because he overslept, wasn't he?

No, it _____ that he was late.

2. How on earth did Nick let the boss know he'd be late?

Well, what _____ call her from his mobile phone.

3. Wasn't Nick late on Wednesday?

No, _____ that he was late.

4. Nick's boss had to start the meeting without him, didn't she?

No, what she _____ the afternoon.

5. Didn't Nick get stuck in a traffic jam in the town centre?

No, not in the town centre; it _____ got stuck.

6. I heard the boss was a little annoyed with Nick for being late.

No, she wasn't "a little annoyed". What _____!

EXERCISE 2:

FOR EACH OF THE SENTENCES BELOW, WRITE A NEW SENTENCE AS SIMILAR AS POSSIBLE IN MEANING TO THE ORIGINAL SENTENCE, BUT USING THE WORDS GIVEN IN BOLD.

1. We just need 5 minutes to fix it. **ALL**

2. I'm not questioning his dedication. **ISN'T**

3. These men are totally ruthless. **WHAT**

4. We inherited everything except the house. **ONLY THING**

5. You know the sales assistant told me exactly the same thing. **THAT'S**

6. We're taking the au-pair with us. **DOING**

EXERCISE 3:

1. The Democratic Republic of VN came into existence in 1945. => It was ...

2. I want to see the manager. => It is ...

3. I suppose the hope of easy money tempts them. => I suppose it ...

4. We only learnt the truth yesterday. => It ...

5. I'd like to visit India more than any other country in the world. => It's India ...

6. I'm more interested in the people than the job.

=> It's not the ...

7. He didn't understand exactly what was wrong until he read Julie's letter. (**only**)

=> It he read Julie's letter that he understood exactly what was wrong.

8. Most of the problems arose because there was no leadership on the committee. (**caused**)

=> It was the most of the problems on the committee.

9. The house collapsed because of faulty building work.

=> It was ...

10. Many people died because of the lack of medical facilities. => It ...

11. Nobody except the English tourists goes out in the midday sun. (**it is ...**)

=> ...

12. I didn't realize how short the singer was until I saw him onstage. (**made**)

=> It was only me realize how short the singer was.

EXERCISE 4: Other cleft sentences

2

34.1

For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence, but using the words given in bold.

0 Sebastian left the job because of the long working hours.

why

The reason why Sebastian left the job was the long working hours.

1 We have to wait here.

this

2 We just need five minutes to fix it.

all

3 Jennifer started the strike.

person

4 I'm not questioning his dedication.

isn't

5 These men are totally ruthless.

what

6 I used to live around the corner.

the place

7 It was your next door neighbour who complained.

the one

8 We inherited everything except the house.

only thing

9 You know the sales assistant told me exactly the same thing.

that's

10 I want you to copy this down in your notebooks.

to do

11 First of all we checked the insurance details.

first thing

12 The climbers reached the peak at six o'clock.

was

- 13 We're taking the au-pair with us.
doing
- 14 Before leaving we switched off the power supply.
last thing
- 15 They moved to Andalucia because of the climate.
reason
- 16 The company has imposed a ban on private e-mails.
has done
- 17 The only thing we want is our money back.
all
- 18 Our boss told us the news.
it
- 19 I want you to appreciate that it's not my fault.
what
- 20 The introduction of stamp duties led to the loss of the American colonies.
that

ANSWER KEY

EXERCISE 1:

1. Nick was late because he overslept, wasn't he?

No, it **WAS BECAUSE OF THE TRAFFIC JAM** that he was late.

2. How on earth did Nick let the boss know he'd be late?

Well, what **HE DID WAS (TO)** call her from his mobile phone.

3. Wasn't Nick late on Wednesday?

No, **IT WAS ON MONDAY** that he was late.

4. Nick's boss had to start the meeting without him, didn't she?

No, what she **DID WAS (TO) RESCHEDULE THE MEETING FOR** the afternoon.

5. Didn't Nick get stuck in a traffic jam in the town centre?

No, not in the town centre; it **WAS ON THE RING ROAD THAT NICK** got stuck.

6. I heard the boss was a little annoyed with Nick for being late.

No, she wasn't "a little annoyed". What **SHE WAS WAS FURIOUS!**

EXERCISE 2:

FOR EACH OF THE SENTENCES BELOW, WRITE A NEW SENTENCE AS SIMILAR AS POSSIBLE IN MEANING TO THE ORIGINAL SENTENCE, BUT USING THE WORDS GIVEN IN BOLD.

1. We just need 5 minutes to fix it. **ALL**

ALL WE NEED IS 5 MINUTES (TO FIX IT)

2. I'm not questioning his dedication. **ISN'T**

IT ISN'T HIS DEDICATION THAT I'M QUESTIONING.

3. These men are totally ruthless. **WHAT**

WHAT THESE MEN ARE IS TOTALLY RUTHLESS.

4. We inherited everything except the house. **ONLY THING**

THE ONLY THING WE DIDN'T INHERIT WAS THE HOUSE.

5. You know the sales assistant told me exactly the same thing. **THAT'S**

THAT'S EXACTLY WHAT THE SALES ASSISTANT TOLD ME.

6. We're taking the au-pair with us. **DOING**

WHAT WE ARE DOING IS TAKING THE AU-PAIR WITH US.

EXERCISE 3:

1. The Democratic Republic of VN came into existence in 1945. => It was ...

(It was in 1945 that the Democratic Republic of VN came into existence. - BTTN Viet Cau TA – P.40)

2. I want to see the manager. => It is ...

(It is the manager that I want to see. - BTTN Viet Cau TA – P.40)

3. I suppose the hope of easy money tempts them. => I suppose it ...

(is the hope of easy money that tempts them.) (BTTA 11 – P.172)

4. We only learnt the truth yesterday. => It ...

(was only yesterday that we learnt the truth.)

5. I'd like to visit India more than any other country in the world. => It's India ...

(that I'd like to visit more than any other in the world.) (BT TA 11 – P.184)

6. I'm more interested in the people than the job.

=> It's not the ...

(job I'm interested, it's the people.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.118)

7. He didn't understand exactly what was wrong until he read Julie's letter. **(only)**

=> It he read Julie's letter that he understood exactly what was wrong.

(It was only when/after he read Julie's letter that he understood exactly what was wrong.)

S + didn't + V ... until + Clause/ Time

It was **only when/after** + clause/Time + that + S + V.ed <=> It was **not until** + clause/ Time + that + S + V.ed

Note: She failed to recognize him until she sat next to him.

=> It was not until she sat next to him that she recognized him.

8. Most of the problems arose because there was no leadership on the committee. **(caused)**

=> It was the most of the problems on the committee.

(It was the lack of leadership that caused most of the problems on the committee.)

It + be + n + that + V: chính ... => dụng để nhấn mạnh lack of st: thiếu ...

9. The house collapsed because of faulty building work.

=> It was ...

(faulty building work that caused the house to collapse/ the collapse of the house.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.84)

- cause Sb (to do) St: gây ra cho ai điều gì ...

10. Many people died because of the lack of medical facilities. => It ...

(was the lack of medical facilities that caused many people to die/the death of many people.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.84)

11. Nobody except the English tourists goes out in the midday sun. **(it is ...)**

=> ...

(It is the English tourists who go out in the midday sun. (CHUYÊN ĐỀ SPHN – 2001-2002, P.250))

12. I didn't realize how short the singer was until I saw him onstage. **(made)**

=> It was only me realize how short the singer was.

(It was only seeing him onstage that made me realize how short the singer was. (CAE - 2))

EXERCISE 4: Other cleft sentences

2

34.1

For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence, but using the words given in bold.

- 0 Sebastian left the job because of the long working hours.
why *The reason why Sebastian left the job was the long working hours.*
- 1 We have to wait here.
this
- 2 We just need five minutes to fix it.
all
- 3 Jennifer started the strike.
person
- 4 I'm not questioning his dedication.
isn't
- 5 These men are totally ruthless.
what
- 6 I used to live around the corner.
the place
- 7 It was your next door neighbour who complained.
the one
- 8 We inherited everything except the house.
only thing
- 9 You know the sales assistant told me exactly the same thing.
that's
- 10 I want you to copy this down in your notebooks.
to do
- 11 First of all we checked the insurance details.
first thing
- 12 The climbers reached the peak at six o'clock.
was

- 13 We're taking the au-pair with us.
doing
- 14 Before leaving we switched off the power supply.
last thing
- 15 They moved to Andalucia because of the climate.
reason
- 16 The company has imposed a ban on private e-mails.
has done
- 17 The only thing we want is our money back.
all
- 18 Our boss told us the news.
it
- 19 I want you to appreciate that it's not my fault.
what
- 20 The introduction of stamp duties led to the loss of the American colonies.
that

BÀI TẬP CHUYÊN SÂU BỒI DƯỠNG HỌC SINH GIỎI – MÔN TIẾNG ANH
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 17: BỒI DƯỠNG KIẾN THỨC NÂNG CAO VỀ CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ

PRACTICE

1. Without tourism, this area wouldn't have much income. (**depends**)
=> This area ...
2. Jane didn't expect to win the competition, but she entered it anyway. (**went**)
=> Jane didn't expect to win the competition, but she it any way.
3. That isn't my car. => That car ...
4. The hotel gives you everything except a toothbrush! => It provides ...
5. She looks like my cousin. => She reminds me ...
6. It's wrong to keep offering people drinks. => Don't keep plying ...
7. I'd like to meet your parents. => Please introduce ...
8. \$100 sounds reasonable for that camera. Have you looked at prices in other shops?
=> Have you compared ...
9. We've been considering the matter carefully and have finally come to a decision. (**over**)
=> We've ...
10. Everyone congratulated the champion when he won. (**victory**)
=> ...
11. The winners were given a trophy. (**presented**) => ...
12. They've made luxury apartments out of the old hospital. (**turned**)
=> ...
13. Two boys were begging money from tourists. (**asking**)
=> Two boys were ...
14. Peter always trusts me with his secrets. (**in**) =>
15. A true story forms the basis of Mary's new novel. (**on**)
=>
16. I don't understand the reference of this phrase. (**to**)
=>
17. There were a lot of people on the bus. (**with**) =>
18. You were in my dreams last night. (**about**) => ...
19. Danny was asked to leave the school for bad behaviour. (**from**)
=> ...
20. This house brings home to mind! (**of**) => ...
21. Tina rewrote the French book in Spanish. (**from**) => ...
22. Christmas and roast turkey go together in my mind. (**with**)
=> ...
23. I think a rest would do you good. (**from**) => ...
24. When he has to face a crisis, Tony panics. (**faced**) => ...
25. Collecting stamps gives me a lot of pleasure. (**derive**) => ...

26. The arrested man did not look the same as the wanted man. (**answer**)
=> ...
27. The facts of the case were familiar to the lawyer. (**acquainted**)
=> ...
28. The deaths of over fifty people were caused by the storm. (**resulted**)
=> ...
29. We have given winter equipment to all the soldiers. (**provide**)
=> ...
30. You haven't explained exactly how the money disappeared. (**accounted**)
=> ...
31. We can only make a guess about the real truth. (**guessed**) => ...
32. Brian is good at looking after the sick. (**care**) => ...
33. That sort of behaviour is deplorable, in my opinion. (**approve**) => ...
34. The new lecturer was unpopular with his students. (**take**) => ...
35. We wouldn't want to restrict the freedom of the students in any way. (**impose**)
=> ...
36. I suddenly realized the meaning of a "freebie". (**dawn**) => ...
37. His charming manners deceived several people, including me. (**taken**)
=> ...
38. I don't think this record will ever be popular. (**catch**) => ...
39. A police car has just stopped outside. (**up**) => ...
40. They didn't punish Karen, only gave her a warning. (**got**) => ...
41. What are you trying to say? (**at**) => ...
42. Graham stopped talking to deal with a customer. (**off**) => ...
43. I have to leave early because something has happened. (**up**)
=> ...
44. John is a bit too ill to go out. (**up**) => ...
45. You can rely on Susan for help. (**count**)
=> ...
46. What sort of progress are you making in your new job? (**getting**)
=> ...
47. Because it was late, I had to walk home in the end. (**up**)
=> ...
48. Ted's illness was caused by overwork. (**on**)
=> ...
49. Carol has trouble communicating her ideas to others. (**across**)
=> ...
50. Some men are coming to decorate our bed room. (**done**)
=> ...
51. How exactly did this situation happen in the first place? (**come**)

=> ...

52. What happened confirmed the truth of Jack's prediction. (**borne**)

=> ...

53. This could be a vital clue so you should investigate it. (**up**)

=> ...

53. Let's give this business our serious attention. (**get**) =>

54. It was a simple trick, but the teacher was taken in by it. (**fell**)

=> ...

55. They laid most of the blame on Margaret. (**for**) => ...

56. Our lawyers are working on the agreement at the moment. (**up**)

=>

57. You have broken your word. (**gone**) => ...

58. I can't bear your constant complaining. (**with**) => ...

59. The box smelled faintly of fish. (**gave**) => ...

60. I couldn't make Julie give a definite answer. (**pin**) => ...

61. I think that my boss is prejudiced against me. (**it**) => ...

62. The holiday wasn't as good as we expected. (**live**) => ...

63. You're kidding! (**on**) => ...

64. It was a risky robbery, but the thieves managed it. (**pulled**)

=> ...

65. In the end I just didn't have any strength left. (**gave**) => ...

66. Eventually I aired my grievances with my boss. (**out**)

=> ...

67. Is there enough juice for everyone? (**go**) => ...

68. Have you decided to enter the poster competition? (**go**)

=> ...

69. The smell of drains stopped me eating my breakfast. (**put**)

=> ...

70. Alan is a strange person. I can't understand his character. (**make**)

=> ...

71. A rather nasty problem has appeared. => We've come ...

72. The sooner this job is over, the better. => Let's ...

73. Brenda doesn't get on with her next-door neighbour any more.

=> Brenda has ...

74. I burst into tears when I heard the bad news. => I broke ...

75. Jean persuaded the others to agree with her point of view.

=> Jean brought ...

76. I'll do the ironing in the end. => I'll get ...

76. The arrangements for our holiday didn't come to anything. => Our holiday ...

77. The best solution was thought of by Sally. => Sally came ...

78. Gerry has applied for the job of financial director. => Gerry has put ...
79. Our teacher used Sophia as an example of a good student.
=> Our teacher held ...
80. I'm not much interested in sports. => I don't really go ...
81. Terry was rude but Anne got her revenge on him. => Anne paid ...
82. You can stay with us for a week. => We can ...
83. The police only warned Sally because it was her first offence.
=> Sally was let ...
84. Sue drew attention to the flaw in the plan. => Sue pointed ...
85. We can say that hard work was what caused Jill's success.
=> Jill's success can ...
- ng
90. Harry swore he would stand by his promise. => Harry swore that he would not ...
91. The terms of the agreement are set out in this document. => This document ...
92. The full truth is only just beginning to sink in. => I am only just beginning to ...
93. Sue talked me into acting in this play. => Sue persuaded ...
94. Tony stood in for me at the meeting. => Tony took ...
95. Nobody helped me at all. (**FINGER**) => ...
96. I was there when he admitted the truth. (**PRESENCE**) => ...
97. He is unlikely to carry out the plan. (**PRACTICE**)
=> ...
98. Anne is proud of her ability to speak five languages fluently. (**PRIDES**)
=> ...
99. Please pour yourself a drink while I'm getting ready. (**YOURSELF**)
=> ...
100. You shouldn't feel that what happened was your fault. (**FOR**)
=> ...
101. She doesn't want to be involved in the scandal caused by her husband's remarks.
(**DISTANCE**) 12 – P.83)
=> ...
102. Were the children good while the baby-sitter was here? (**THEMSELVES**)
=> ...
103. If only you had tried harder, you might have passed the exam. (**EFFORT**)
=> ...
104. Please excuse Jane's poor typing: she's only been learning for a month.
(**ALLOWANCES**)
=> ...
105. They will try Abrams for murder at the High Court next week. (**TRIAL**)
=> ...
106. After such a long time together they are still happily married. (**TEST**)

=> ...

107. He got over his operation very quickly. (**RECOVERY**)

=> ...

108. He makes sure that he isn't associated with policies he disagrees with. (**DISTANCES**)

=> ...

109. Although the children weren't listening, the teacher didn't get angry. (**attention**)

=> Although the children weren't saying, the teacher didn't get angry.

110. Given that he has no experience, will Glyn be able to do this job? (**affect**)

=> Will Glyn's ability to do this job?

111. "Remember to write or phone," Marta said as she wave goodbye to her friend. (**touch**)

=> "Don't,," Marta said as she waved goodbye to her friend.

112. No changes will be made to this project. (**ahead**)

=> This project will to plan.

113. Simon really ought to make a decision about his future. (**mind**)

=> It's high time Simon about his future.

114. Pay claims must be submitted before the end of the month. (**put**)

=> You have your pay claims before the end of the month.

115. If you don't pay on time, your booking will be cancelled. (**result**)

=> Failure to your booking being cancelled.

116. Darius soon recovered after the operation on his knee and was able to rejoin the team. (**made**)

=> After the operation on his knee, Darius and was able to rejoin the team.

117. Most of the children ignored what the teacher had told them. (**notice**)

=> Few of the children what the teacher had told them.

118. It's so difficult to create new ideas for the festival every year! (**come**)

=> How difficult with new ideas for the festival every year!

119. Barbara's parents were certain that she would be a great tennis player. (**doubt**)

=> Barbara's parents were that she would be a great tennis player.

120. My grandfather had completely forgotten that he phoned me last night. (**recollection**)

=> My grandfather didn't
phoning me last night.

121. If Marc hadn't taken up politics, he might have become a famous art historian. (**name**)

=> If Marc hadn't taken up politics, he might have himself as
an art historian.

122. Delia said that she would no longer tolerate her colleagues being rude. (**put**)

=> "I'm not willing from my colleagues any
longer," said Delia.

123. Georgia hasn't written to me recently. (**HEARD**)

=> I a while.

124. Dr. Sharp wants you to look after his patients while he's away. (**CARE**)

=> Dr. Sharp would like you to his absence.

125. The huge traffic jam on the motorway delayed us for several hours. (**HELD**)

=> The huge traffic jam on the motorway for several hours.

126. Our plane's departure time is 10.00 am. **takes** => Our plane
..... 10.00 am.

127. She owns all this land now. **belongs** => All
..... now.

128. He failed the test because he did not study enough. **attributed**

=> His failure in the test not studying enough.

129. I wonder if you can lend me something to wear tonight. **mind**

=> Would something to wear tonight?

130. We can't decide where to go on holidays. **decision** => We can't
where to go on holidays.

131. Can you take me to the station by car? **give** => Can you
..... to the station?

132. Sally has not come to school because she has been sick. **absent**

=> Sally school because she has been sick.

133. There is no sugar left. **run** => We have sugar.

134. I'll never be able to persuade her to agree with the idea. **bring** => I'll never
..... to the idea.

135. I found my old diary by chance. **came** => I my old
diary by chance.

136. The football match was postponed due to the rain. **put** => The football match was
_____ due to the rain.

137. He went to Spain to try to speak Spanish better. **brush** => => He went to Spain
_____ Spanish.

138. It's a very formal dinner party. **dress** => We are expected
_____ for the dinner party.

139. An ankle injury prevented her from taking part in the race. **drop**

- => She had to _____ the race because of an ankle injury.
140. It was nearly midnight when John arrived. **turn** => John _____ until nearly midnight.
142. I'm not very confident of passing my driving test. **get** => I _____ don't _____ my driving test.
143. The meeting went on until 11.30. **break** => The meeting _____ until 11.30.
144. Unless business improves soon, we'll be bankrupt by the end of the year. **pick**
=> If business _____ soon, we'll be bankrupt by the end of the year.
145. The last time my rent rose was three years ago. **put**
=> They haven't _____ for three years.
146. You will support me at the meeting, won't you? **back** => You will _____ at the meeting, won't you?
147. Unless it stops raining soon, we'll have to cancel the picnic. **clear**
=> If it _____ soon we'll have to cancel the picnic.
148. I don't smoke as many cigarettes as I used to. **cut**
=> I've managed to _____ cigarettes I smoke.
149. How much did that jacket cost? **pay** => _____ How _____ much _____ that jacket?
150. Do you want a sandwich? **care** => _____ a sandwich?
151. Is this pen yours? **belong** => Does _____ you?
152. John and I last quarrelled over a week ago. **fallen** => John and I _____ for over a week.
153. After nearly an hour the coach had still not arrived. **sign**
=> After nearly an hour _____ of the coach.
154. Our driving laws and theirs are not the same. **different** => Our driving laws _____ theirs.
155. They make 2,000 cars a week at that factory. **turns** => That factory _____ 2,000 cars a week.
156. We hired a private nurse to look after my mother when she broke her leg. **care**
We hired a private nurse _____ my mother when she broke her leg.
157. He's only now beginning to recover from his illness. **get** => It's taken him until _____ his illness.
158. My parents don't like us smoking at home. **approve** => _____ My _____ parents _____ smoking at home.
159. Did Angela say why she arrived late? **reason** => _____ Did _____ Angela _____ late?
160. If you pay no attention to him, he'll soon go away. **notice**
=> If you _____ him, he'll soon go away.

161. John Lennon was forty when he died. **age** => John Lennon
 _____ forty.
162. You can stay with my sister if you're ever in Brighton. **put**
 => My sister will _____ if you're ever in Brighton.
163. I haven't smoked for six years. **gave** => Six years _____ smoking.
164. The clients demanded to stay in a first-class hotel. **staying**
 => The clients _____ in a first-class hotel.
165. I don't object to the council building a new road here. **objection**
 => I _____ the council building a new road here.
166. The newspaper offered Lynda £5,000 for her story, but she refused. **turned**
 => Lynda _____ of £5,000 from the newspaper for her story.
167. They cancelled the flight because of thick fog. (**off**) => The flight _____ because of the thick fog.
168. The summit meeting will be held in Istanbul. (**place**) => The summit meeting _____ in Istanbul.
169. I'm really excited about the holiday. **LOOKING** => I _____ the holiday.
170. The bomb exploded early this morning. **OFF** => The bomb _____ early this morning.
171. Why don't you start doing a sport? **TAKE** => Have you thought about _____ a sport?
172. His parents raised him very strictly. **UP** => His parents _____ very strictly.
173. They've cancelled the wedding. **OFF** => They have _____ the wedding.
174. I don't think they should abolish military service. **AWAY**
 => They shouldn't _____ military service.
175. I've got to reduce the amount of sweets I eat. **DOWN**
 => I must _____ the number of sweets I eat.
176. My host family will let you stay with us. **UP** => My host family will _____
177. Two men robbed John of his briefcase. => John's briefcase _____
178. Is your uncle the owner of this Rolls Royce? (**belong**) => ...
179. The building designer doesn't like the idea of a complete reconstruction. (**approve**)
180. Sarah's illness has made her unable to do anything. (**action**) => ...
181. It's not safe these days to make remarks about a woman's appearance.
 => Feminists think it is "sexist" to compliment ...

182. I didn't mean to break the vase. (**purpose**) => I ...

183. I don't know them to speak to, though I've seen them. (**sight**) => I only
.....

184. It is unusual for Carol to get angry with her staff. (**hardly**) => Carol
temper with her staff.

185. "Is it or is it true that you have been misappropriating company funds?" the manager
asked the accountant.

=> The manager wanted ...

ANSWER KEY:

1. Without tourism, this area wouldn't have much income. (**depends**)

=> This area ...

(This area **depends (mostly) on tourism for its income.**) (BT TA 10 – P.118)

2. Jane didn't expect to win the competition, but she entered it anyway. (**went**)

=> Jane didn't expect to win the competition, but she it any way.

(**went in for**) (go in for: theo, tham gia) (BT TH TA 10 – P.130)

3. That isn't my car. => That car ...

(**doesn't belong to me**) (BT TH TA 10 – P.56)

4. The hotel gives you everything except a toothbrush! => It provides ...

(**you with everything except a toothbrush.**) (BT TH TA 12 – P.122)

5. She looks like my cousin. => She reminds me ...

(**of my cousin.**) (BT TH TA 12 – P.122)

6. It's wrong to keep offering people drinks. => Don't keep plying ...

(**people with drinks.**) (BT TH TA 12 – P.122)

(Thật sai lầm khi cứ liên tục mời người khác uống rượu bia. – **offer Sb St = ply Sb with St:** mời, tiếp ai ...)

7. I'd like to meet your parents. => Please introduce ...

(**me to your parents.**) (BT TH TA 12 – P.122)

8. \$100 sounds reasonable for that camera. Have you looked at prices in other shops?

=> Have you compared ...

(**prices of that camera with those in other shops?**) (BT TH TA 12 – P.122)

9. We've been considering the matter carefully and have finally come to a decision. (**over**)

=> We've ...

(**been thinking the matter over and have finally come to a decision.**) (BT TA 12 – P.220)

10. Everyone congratulated the champion when he won. (**victory**)

=> ...

(**Everyone congratulated the champion on his victory.**) (BT TA 12 – P.240)

11. The winners were given a trophy. (**presented**) => ...

(**The winners were presented with a trophy./ A trophy was presented to the winners.**)

(BT TA 12 – P.241)

12. They've made luxury apartments out of the old hospital. (**turned**)

=> ...

They've turned the old hospital into luxury apartments./ The old hospital has been turned into luxury apartments. (make St out of St: làm ... từ ... ⇔ turn St into St: chuyển/biến ... thành ...) (BT TA 12 – P.241)

13. Two boys were begging money from tourists. (**asking**)

=> Two boys were ...

(**asking tourists for money/ to give them money. (beg (St) from Sb ⇔ ask Sb for St)**

(BT TA 12 – P.241)

14. Peter always trusts me with his secrets. (**in**) =>

(**Peter always confide in me.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.39)

(**trust Sb with St**: tin ai về điều gì – **confide in Sb**: tin ai đủ để giải bày tâm sự, kể bí mật của mình ...)

15. A true story forms the basis of Mary's new novel. (**on**)

=> (**Mary's new novel is based on a true story.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.39)

16. I don't understand the reference of this phrase. (**to**)

=> (**I don't understand what this phrase refers to.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.39)

17. There were a lot of people on the bus. (**with**) =>

(**The bus was crowded/packed with people.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.39) (be crowded with = be packed with = be full of: đầy, nhiều, đông đúc, ...)

18. You were in my dreams last night. (**about**) => ...

(**I dreamt about you last night.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.39)

19. Danny was asked to leave the school for bad behaviour. (**from**)

=> ...

(**Danny was expelled from the school for bad behaviour.**) (Expel Sb from a place: trục xuất ai ra khỏi nơi nào đó – be expelled from a place: bị đuổi, bị trục xuất ra khỏi ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.39)

20. This house brings home to mind! (**of**) => ...

(**This house reminds me of home.** => bring home to ...**làm cho thấy rõ, làm hiểu rõ, làm nhận ra ... remind Sb of Sb/St: nhắc ai nhớ đến ...** => Nghĩa câu gốc: *Ngôi nhà này làm tôi nhớ đến quê hương*) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.39)

21. Tina rewrote the French book in Spanish. (**from**) => ...

(**Tina translated the book from French into Spanish.**) (Translate St from ... into ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.39)

22. Christmas and roast turkey go together in my mind. (**with**)

=> ...

(**I associate Christmas with roast turkey.**) (Associate: liên tưởng, kết hợp => Tôi liên tưởng Giáng sinh tới món gà nướng) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.39)

23. I think a rest would do you good. (**from**) => ...

(**I think you would benefit from a rest.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.39)

24. When he has to face a crisis, Tony panics. (**faced**) => ...

(**When faced with a crisis, Tony panics./ Faced with a crisis, Tony panics. (face (with) st, be faced with st)**

(BD HSG TA 11 – P.39)

25. Collecting stamps gives me a lot of pleasure. (**derive**) => ...

(**I derive a lot of pleasure from collecting stamps.**) (**derive St from St**: thu được, nhận được, tìm thấy được ... từ ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.39)

26. The arrested man did not look the same as the wanted man. (**answer**)

=> ...

(**The arrested man did not answer to the description of the wanted man.**) (**answer to the description**: hợp với/ đúng với miêu tả) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.39)

27. The facts of the case were familiar to the lawyer. (**acquainted**)

=> ...

(The lawyer was acquainted with the facts of the case. (be acquainted with St: be familiar with) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.39)

28. The deaths of over fifty people were caused by the storm. **(resulted)**

=> ...

(The deaths of over fifty people resulted from the storm. (result from: bắt nguồn từ # result in: dẫn đến)

(The storm resulted in the deaths of over fifty people. (BD HSG TA 11 – P.39)

29. We have given winter equipment to all the soldiers. **(provide)**

=> ...

(We have provided all the soldiers with winter equipment.) (provide Sb with St, provide St for Sb: cung cấp) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.39)

30. You haven't explained exactly how the money disappeared. **(accounted)**

=> ...

You haven't accounted exactly for how the money disappeared. (account for St: giải thích lý do cho ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.39)

31. We can only make a guess about the real truth. **(guessed)** => ...

(The real truth can only be guessed at.) (guess at St: đoán ... - make a guess about St: đoán ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.39)

32. Brian is good at looking after the sick. **(care)** => ...

(Brian is good at caring for the sick./ Brian is good at taking care of the sick./ Brian is well able to care for the sick.) (care for = look after = take care of, care for St = would like (to do) St = want St) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.39)

33. That sort of behaviour is deplorable, in my opinion. **(approve)** => ...

(I don't approve of that sort of behaviour.) (Thái độ đối xử đó thật đáng trách/tê hại => Tôi không tán thành ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.68)

34. The new lecturer was unpopular with his students. **(take)** => ...

(The students didn't take to the new lecturer. (take to Sb: ưa thích, yêu mến, có cảm tình, gần gũi với ai đó – be unpopular with: không phổ biến, không được ưa chuộng, không được yêu mến # be popular with: được ưa chuộng, được mến mộ) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.68)

35. We wouldn't want to restrict the freedom of the students in any way. **(impose)**

=> ...

(We wouldn't want to impose any restrictions on the freedom of the students.) (impose St on St/Sb: áp đặt) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.78)

36. I suddenly realized the meaning of a "freebie". **(dawn)** => ...

(It suddenly dawned on me what the meaning of a "freebie" was./The meaning of a "freebie" dawned on me.) (dawn on Sb: bừng sáng, lóe lên – It + dawn + on + Sb: chợt nhận ra được ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.78)

37. His charming manners deceived several people, including me. **(taken)**

=> ...

(Several people were taken in by his charming manners, including me.)

- charming (a): duyên dáng, quyến rũ (BD HSG TA 11 – P.155) - deceive (v): đánh lừa, lừa gạt

- **take in** (phr.v): tiếp nhận (công việc, con nuôi); thu nhỏ lại (quần áo); hiểu/đánh giá đúng (tình hình); lừa gạt

38. I don't think this record will ever be popular. (**catch**) => ...

(**I don't think this record will ever catch on.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.42)

- catch on: become popular: trở thành mốt, được ưa chuộng (colloquial)

E.g. This new hair style is beginning to *catch on*.

39. A police car has just stopped outside. (**up**) => ...

(**A police car has just drawn up outside.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.42)

- **draw up**: come to a stop: stop: dừng (xe) lại, đỗ lại; soạn thảo một văn bản, ...

E.g. - A white sports car *drew up* outside the door.

- The contract is being *drawn up* at the moment.

40. They didn't punish Karen, only gave her a warning. (**got**) => ...

(**Karen got off with a warning.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.42)

- **get off with St**: avoid punishment: thoát khỏi sự trừng phạt, thoát hiểm ... chỉ bị ...

E.g. They were lucky to **get off with** such light sentences. (Họ thật may mắn khi đã thoát được sự trừng phạt và chỉ bị phải nhận những mức án nhẹ như thế.)

41. What are you trying to say? (**at**) => ...

(**What are you getting at?**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.42)

- **get at**: imply: ám chỉ, ngụ ý, ám ý E.g. What are you *getting at* exactly?

42. Graham stopped talking to deal with a customer. (**off**) => ...

(**Graham broke off to deal with a customer.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.42)

- **break off**: stop talking E.g. He *broke off* to answer the phone.

43. I have to leave early because something has happened. (**up**)

=> ...

(**I have to leave early because something has come up/ cropped up.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.42)

- come up: occur (a problem): xuất hiện

- crop up: happen unexpectedly: bất ngờ xảy ra

E.g. - Look, something has *come up*, and I can't meet you. (Bạn thấy đấy, lại có chuyện xảy ra, vì vậy tôi ...)

- I can't come to your party, something has *cropped up*.

44. John is a bit too ill to go out. (**up**) => ...

(**John doesn't feel up to going out.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.42)

- feel up to doing St: feel capable of doing St: cảm thấy đủ sức để làm gì

E.g. Old Mr. Smith didn't *feel up to* walking all that way.

45. You can rely on Susan for help. (**count**)

=> ...

(**You can count on Susan for help.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.42)

- **count on**: rely on: nhờ vào, dựa vào, trông chờ vào, hy vọng ở

E.g. Don't worry, you can *count on* me.

46. What sort of progress are you making in your new job? (**getting**)

=> ...

(**How are you getting on in your new job?**) (what sort of progress ... make => How ... get)

- **get on**: make progress: tiến bộ, tiến triển (BD HSG TA 12 – P.42)

E.g. Sue is *getting on very well* in her new job.

- **get on well with**: hòa đồng, có mối quan hệ tốt với ...

E.g. She has a good relationship with her neighbours. => She *gets on well with* her neighbours.

47. Because it was late, I had to walk home in the end. (**up**)

=> ...

(**Because it was late, I ended up walking home.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.42)

(Vì đã muộn nên cuối cùng tôi phải đi bộ về nhà)

- **end up** (doing St): cuối cùng, kết thúc bằng việc gì ...

E.g. - We *ended up* staying there for lunch. (Cuối cùng chúng tôi đã ở lại đó ăn trưa/ Chúng tôi kết thúc bằng việc ở lại đó ăn trưa.)

- The car *ended up* in a ditch. (Cuối cùng chiếc xe bị lật xuống hào.)

48. Ted's illness was caused by overwork. (**on**)

=> ...

(**Ted's illness was brought on by overwork.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.42)

- **Bring on St: cause one's illness**: gây bệnh, làm phát bệnh; gây rắc rối cho ai

E.g. - Sitting in the damp *brought on his rheumatism*. (ngồi ở nơi ẩm thấp khiến anh ta bị bệnh thấp khớp)

- You have *brought this on/upon yourself*. (Bạn đã tự gây rắc rối cho mình.)

49. Carol has trouble communicating her ideas to others. (**across**)

=> ...

(**Carol has trouble getting her ideas across.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.43)

- **get across**: trình bày, giải thích rõ ràng, làm cho người khác hiểu

E.g. I had the feeling I wasn't getting across. (Tôi có cảm giác là tôi đang trình bày không rõ ràng lắm)

50. Some men are coming to decorate our bed room. (**done**)

=> ...

(**We are having our bed room done up.** => have St done + phrasal verb)

- **do up**: decorate (BD HSG TA 12 – P.43) E.g. We are having our living room *done up*.

51. How exactly did this situation happen in the first place? (**come**)

=> ...

(**How exactly did this situation come about?**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.43)

- **come about**: diễn ra từ đâu, bắt đầu diễn ra

E.g. Let me explain how the situation

came about.

52. What happened confirmed the truth of Jack's prediction. (**borne**)

=> ...

(**The truth of Jack's prediction was *borne out* by what happened.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.43)
- **bear out** (bore, born/borne): confirm the truth: xác minh sự thực, chứng thực, khẳng định sự thực

E.g. Helen's alibi was *borne out* by her sister. (bằng chứng ngoại phạm của Helen đã được chị gái cô xác thực)

53. This could be a vital clue so you should investigate it. (**up**)

=> ...

(**This could be a vital clue so you should *follow it up*.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.43)

- **follow up St/ follow it up**: bám sát, tiếp tục, làm tiếp, làm theo cái gì có sẵn ...

E.g. Thanks for the information about that book. I'll *follow it up*.

53. Let's give this business our serious attention. (**get**) =>

(**Let's *get down to* this business.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.43)

- **get down to**: bắt tay vào việc một cách nghiêm túc E.g. It's time we *got down to* some real work.

54. It was a simple trick, but the teacher was taken in by it. (**fell**)

=> ...

(**It was a simple trick, but the teacher *fell for* it.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.43)

- **fall for St**: bị lừa, bị gạt (= **be deceived by/ be taken in by**); phải lòng, yêu ai đó

E.g. - It was an unlikely story but he *fell for it*. (Đó là câu chuyện không thật nhưng anh ta đã bị đánh lừa.)

- I *fell for* you the moment I saw you. (Anh đã yêu em ngay giây phút nhìn thấy em.)

55. They laid most of the blame on Margaret. (**for**) => ...

(**Margaret *came in for* most of the blame.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.43)

- **come in for**: chịu trách nhiệm, nhận lời chỉ trích/trách nhiệm

- **lay/ shift the blame on Sb**: quy trách nhiệm cho ai

E.g. The government has *come in for* a lot of criticism over the decision. (Chính phủ chịu nhiều chỉ trích về quyết định đó)

56. Our lawyers are working on the agreement at the moment. (**up**)

=>

(**Our lawyers are *drawing up* the agreement at the moment.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.43)

- **draw up**: dừng lại, soạn thảo (xem câu 45)

57. You have broken your word. (**gone**) => ...

(**You have *gone back on* your word.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.43)

- **Go back on St**: break a/one's promise/ word: thất hứa, không giữ lời ...

E.g. The manager has *gone back on* his promise.

58. I can't bear your constant complaining. (**with**) => ...

(**I can't *put up with* your constant complaining.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.43)

- **Put up with**: tolerate, bear: chịu đựng E.g. I can't *put up with* all this noise!

59. The box smelled faintly of fish. (**gave**) => ...

(**The box *gave off* a faint smell of fish.** => phrasal verb + style (BD HSG TA 12 – P.43)

- **Give off**: bốc mùi E.g. The cheese had begun to *give off* a strange smell.

60. I couldn't make Julie give a definite answer. (**pin**) => ...

(**I couldn't pin Julie down to a definite answer.** (Tôi không thể bắt Julie tìm ra câu trả lời chắc chắn được.)

- **Pin someone down to St**: bắt buộc ai nói rõ .../ giữ lời/ phải làm gì/ theo hợp đồng, ... (BD HSG TA 12 – P.43)

E.g. - Pin Sb down to a promise - Pin Sb down to a contract

61. I think that my boss is prejudiced against me. (**it**) => ...

(**I think that my boss has it in for me.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.43)

- **Have a prejudice against Sb = be prejudiced against Sb**: có thành kiến với ai

- **Have it in for**: có thành kiến với, cố ý trừng phạt/ đối xử không tốt với ...

E.g. My teacher *has it in for* me. (Thầy giáo có thành kiến với tôi.)

62. The holiday wasn't as good as we expected. (**live**) => ...

(**The holiday didn't live up to our expectations.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.43)

- **Live up to St**: reach an expected standard: thỏa mãn sự mong đợi, thỏa long mong ước.

E.g. The play *lived up to* my expectations.

63. You're kidding! (**on**) => ...

(**You are having me on!**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.43)

- **Have Sb on**: deceive/ take in: lừa gạt ai E.g. I don't believe you. You're *having me on*.

64. It was a risky robbery, but the thieves managed it. (**pulled**)

=> ...

(**It was a risky robbery, but the thieves pulled it off.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.43)

- **Pull off**: manage to succeed: thắng lợi

E.g. It was a tricky plan, but we *pulled it off*.

(Đó là một kế hoạch đầy chông gai nhưng chúng tôi cũng đã thắng lợi)

65. In the end I just didn't have any strength left. (**gave**) => ...

(**In the end my strength just gave out.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.43)

- **Give out**: be exhausted: hết, cạn, kiệt sức ... E.g. When our money *gave out* we had to borrow.

66. Eventually I aired my grievances with my boss. (**out**)

=> ...

(**Eventually I had it out with my boss.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.43)

- **Have it out with**: thổ lộ lời phàn nàn/lý lẽ ... để giải quyết sự bất bình, bất đồng, tranh cãi; dàn xếp ổn thỏa

E.g. I *put up with* the problem for a while but in the end I *had it out with* her. (Tôi đã chịu đựng vấn đề này một thời gian nhưng cuối cùng tôi đã dàn xếp ổn thỏa với cô ấy.)

67. Is there enough juice for everyone? (**go**) => ...

(**Is there enough juice to go round.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.43)

- **Go round**: có đủ ... cho mọi người. E.g. There weren't enough life-jackets to *go round*.

68. Have you decided to enter the poster competition? (**go**)

=> ...

(**Have you decided to go in for the poster competition?**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.43)

- **Go in for St**: make a habit of St, enter a competition: ưa chuộng, quen làm; tham gia ...

E.g. - I don't *go in for* that kind of thing. - Are you thinking of *going in for* the race?

69. The smell of drains stopped me eating my breakfast. (**put**)

=> ...

(**The smell of drains *put me off* my breakfast.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.43)

- **Put Sb off (St)**: discourage, upset: làm ai phát ón với ... điều gì, làm ai nhụt chí, làm ai không muốn làm việc gì đó nữa

E.g. The crowd *put* the gymnast *off*, and he fell.

70. Alan is a strange person. I can't understand his character. (**make**)

=> ...

(**Alan is a strange person. I can't *make him out*.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.43)

- **Make Sb out**: understand one's behaviour: hiểu ai đó, ...

E.g. Janet is really odd. I can't *make her out*. (Janet thật kỳ cục, tôi không thể hiểu được cô ấy)

71. A rather nasty problem has appeared. => We've come ...

(**(up against a rather nasty problem.)**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.46)

- **Come up against**: meet a difficulty: gặp khó khăn, gặp rắc rối

E.g. We've *come up against* a bit of a problem. (Chúng tôi vừa gặp một chút rắc rối.)

72. The sooner this job is over, the better. => Let's ...

(BD HSG TA 12 – P.46) (Công việc này càng qua nhanh càng tốt.)

(**(get this job over with as soon as possible.)**) (Hãy kết thúc công việc này càng nhanh càng tốt.)

- **Get over with**: come to the end of something (usually unpleasant): kết thúc, hoàn thành, qua đi

E.g. I'll be glad to *get this awful business over with*. (Tôi rất mừng là đã kết thúc công việc tồi tệ này.)

73. Brenda doesn't get on with her next-door neighbour any more.

=> Brenda has ...

(**(fallen out with her next-door neighbour.)**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.46)

- **Fall out with**: quarrel with: cãi nhau với

E.g. Peter has *fallen out with* his boss.

74. I burst into tears when I heard the bad news. => I broke ...

(**(down when I heard the bad news.)**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.46)

- **Break down**: burst into tears: không kìm nổi cảm xúc, òa ra khóc

E.g. David *broke down* and wept when he heard the news.

75. Jean persuaded the others to agree with her point of view.

=> Jean brought ...

(**(the others round to her point of view.)**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.46)

- **Bring Sb round to St**: thuyết phục/ Làm cho ai thay đổi ý kiến theo quan điểm của mình

E.g. After much discussion, I *brought* the committee *round to* my point of view. (Sau một hồi thảo luận, tôi đã thuyết phục được UB thay đổi theo ý kiến của tôi.)

76. I'll do the ironing in the end. => I'll get ...

(**round to the ironing in the end.**) (Tôi sẽ thu xếp thời gian là quần áo vào những phút cuối.)

- **Get round to (doing) St:** thu xếp thời gian để làm gì, có thời gian để làm gì

E.g. Sorry, but I haven't *got round to* fixing the tap yet. (BD HSG TA 12 – P.46) (Sau cùng tôi sẽ làm công việc giặt là)

76. The arrangements for our holiday didn't come to anything. => Our holiday ...

(**fell through.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.46)

- **Fall through:** fail to come to completion: thất bại, không đi đến kết quả gì.

E.g. The plan *fell through* at the last minute.

77. The best solution was thought of by Sally. => Sally came ...

(**up with the best solution.**) => phrasal verb + passive

- **Come up with:** think of (answer, plan, solution) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.46)

E.g. We still haven't *come up with* a solution to the problem.

78. Gerry has applied for the job of financial director. => Gerry has put ...

(**in for the job of financial director.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.46)

- **Put in for:** apply for a job: nộp đơn xin việc E.g. Helen has *put in for* a teaching job.

79. Our teacher used Sophia as an example of a good student.

=> Our teacher held ...

(**up Sophia as an example of a good student.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.46)

- **Hold Sb up:** delay, use as an example: đình trệ, trì hoãn; nêu gương, làm tấm gương

E.g. - Sorry I'm late, I was *held up* in the traffic. (Xin lỗi, tôi bị kẹt xe.)

- Jack was always *held up* as an example to me. (Jack thường được nêu ra như một tấm gương tốt cho tôi noi theo.)

80. I'm not much interested in sports. => I don't really go ...

(**in for sports**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.46) - **Go in for St:** yêu thích, ưa chuộng; tham gia (Xem câu 75)

81. Terry was rude but Anne got her revenge on him. => Anne paid ...

(**Terry back for being rude to her.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.46)

- **Pay Sb back** (for (doing) St): trả đũa, trả thù

E.g. She *paid him back* for all his insults. (Cô ta trả đũa lại tất cả những gì anh ta đã xúc phạm cô ta)

82. You can stay with us for a week. => We can ...

(**put you up for a week.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.47)

- **Put Sb up:** offer accommodation: cho ở lại nhà

E.g. We can *put you up* for a few days.

83. The police only warned Sally because it was her first offence.

=> Sally was let ...

(**off with a warning because it was her first offence.**)

- **Let Sb off with St:** excuse from punishment: tha, phạt nhẹ với hình thức ...

E.g. As Dave was young, the judge *let him off* with a fine. (Vì Dave còn nhỏ, quan tòa chỉ xử phạt anh ta với số tiền nhẹ) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.47)

84. Sue drew attention to the flaw in the plan. => Sue pointed ...

(**out the flaw in the plan.**) (flaw = shortcoming: thiếu sót, hạn chế) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.47)

- **Point out St: draw attention to St, pay attention to St:** lưu ý, chú ý tới điều gì, chỉ ra

E.g. I *pointed out* that I would be on holiday anyway.

85. We can say that hard work was what caused Jill's success.

=> Jill's success can ...

(**be put down to hard work.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.47)

(Chúng ta có thể nói rằng, chính sự miệt mài trong công việc/ làm việc miệt mài là tất cả những gì đã tạo nên thành công của Jill.)

- **Put down to St:** explain the cause of: giải thích lý do/ nguyên nhân/nguồn gốc cho ..., nhờ có ...

E.g. Diane's poor performance was *put down to* nerves. (Diễn xuất kém của anh ta được cho là do sự căng thẳng)

86. Brian takes off the French teacher really well. => Brian does ...

(**a good imitation of the French teacher.**) => phrasal verb + style

- **take off:** cất cánh; tháo, cởi ra; bắt chước, làm theo (BD HSG TA 12 – P.47)

- **do an imitation of Sb = take off Sb:** bắt chước ai, làm theo ai

87. Tina saw through Peter's plan at once. => Tina realized ...

(**at once what Peter was planning to do.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.47)

- **See through:** nhìn thấy rõ bản chất của ...

88. The effect of these pills wears off after three hours.

=> The effect of these pills only ...

(**lasts three hours.**) (Tác dụng của loại thuốc này giảm dần sau 3 tiếng.)

- **wear off:** giảm dần, mòn, phai, hết tác dụng (BD HSG TA 12 – P.47)

89. Her face had taken on a strange expression. => She had a ...

(**strange expression on her face.**) (Cô ấy biểu lộ nét mặt rất lạ) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.47)

- **take on:** đảm nhận (trách nhiệm, công việc); biểu hiện sự xúc động, hoảng loạn, choáng váng

90. Harry swore he would stand by his promise. => Harry swore that he would not ...

(**go back on his promise.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.47)

- **Go back on St:** break a/one's promise/ word: thất hứa, không giữ lời ...

E.g. The manager has *gone back on* his promise.

(Xem câu 64: You have broken your word. (**gone**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.43)

=> **You have gone back on your word.**)

91. The terms of the agreement are set out in this document. => This document ...

(**give the details of the terms of the agreement.**) (Văn bản này cung cấp các chi tiết của điều luật hợp đồng.)

(BD HSG TA 12 – P.47)

- **Set out:** trình bày

92. The full truth is only just beginning to sink in. => I am only just beginning to ...

(**realize the full truth.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.47)

- **Sink in:** được nhận ra, được thấm nhuần, được hiểu hoàn toàn

93. Sue talked me into acting in this play. => Sue persuaded ...

(**me to act in this play.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.48)

- **Talk Sb into (doing) St:** giỡn dảnh/ thuyết phục ai làm gì = **Persuade Sb to do St**

94. Tony stood in for me at the meeting. => Tony took ...

(**my place at the meetinng.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.48)

- **Stand in for Sb:** đại diện cho ai = **Take one's place**

95. Nobody helped me at all. (**FINGER**) => ...

(**Nobody lifted a finger to help me.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.72)

- **Lift a finger:** Nhích ngón tay

96. I was there when he admitted the truth. (**PRESENCE**) => ...

(**He admitted the truth in my presence.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.72)

- **In one's presence:** Khi ai đó có mặt, trong sự có mặt của ...

97. He is unlikely to carry out the plan. (**PRACTICE**)

=> ...

(**He is unlikely to put the plan into practice./ It is unlikely that he will put the plan into practice**)

- **Put St into practice:** thực hiện ... = Carry out St (BD HSG TA 12 – P.72)

98. Anne is proud of her ability to speak five languages fluently. (**PRIDES**)

=> ...

(**Anne prides herself on her ability to speak five languages fluently.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.83)

- Be proud of (doing) St = pride oneself on (doing) St: Tự hào về việc gì, điều gì ...

99. Please pour yourself a drink while I'm getting ready. (**YOURSELF**)

=> ...

(**Help yourself to a drink while I'm getting ready.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.83)

- Help Yourself!: Tự nhiên như ở nhà = Make yourself at home!

- Help yourself to St: Tự nhiên (lấy gì đó) như ở nhà

100. You shouldn't feel that what happened was your fault. (**FOR**)

=> ...

(**You shouldn't blame yourself for what happened.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.83)

(Xem Câu 13 – Idioms: All the witnesses said the accident was my fault. (**blame**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.95)

=> All the witnesses said that the accident. (**I was to blame for**)

- **to blame somebody for something:** đổ lỗi cho ai về việc gì

- **to blame something on somebody:** đổ lỗi về việc gì là do ...)

E.g. He blamed me for his joblessness = He blamed his joblessness on me

ông ấy đổ lỗi cho tôi về việc ông ấy thất nghiệp, ông ấy cho rằng do tôi mà ông ấy thất nghiệp

- **to be to blame for something:** phải chịu trách nhiệm về điều gì, đáng bị khiển trách về điều gì = Be responsible for St

E.g. Which driver was to blame for the accident? (tài xế nào phải chịu trách nhiệm về tai nạn này?)

101. She doesn't want to be involved in the scandal caused by her husband's remarks. (**DISTANCE**) 12 – P.83)

=> ...

(She wants to *distance herself from* the scandal caused by her husband's remarks.) (BD HSG TA

- **Distance oneself/Sb from St**: làm cho ai ít dính líu, ít liên quan đến ..., tránh xa ...

E.g. - When he retired, he tried to *distance himself from* politics.

102. Were the children good while the baby-sitter was here? (**THEMSELVES**)

=> ...

(Did the children *behave themselves* while the baby-sitter was here?) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.83)

- **Behave oneself**: Cư xử, xử sự cho phải phép, tự lo liệu.

E.g. I want you to *behave yourself* while I'm away. (Mẹ muốn con cư xử cho phải phép khi mẹ đi vắng.)

103. If only you had tried harder, you might have passed the exam. (**EFFORT**)

=> ...

(If only you had *made an effort/ a greater effort/ put more effort into* your work/study, you might have passed the exam.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.97)

104. Please excuse Jane's poor typing: she's only been learning for a month. (**ALLOWANCES**)

=> ...

(Please make allowances for Jane's poor typing: she's only been learning for a month.)

(BD HSG TA 12 – P.98) - **Excuse St**: Bỏ qua, chiếu cố cho ...

E.g. Please excuse

my late arrival.

- **Excuse Sb for (doing) St**: Bỏ qua, tha thứ cho ai về ... E.g. Please *excuse me for being* late.

- **Make allowances for St**: bỏ qua, chiếu cố, ...

105. They will try Abrams for murder at the High Court next week. (**TRIAL**)

=> ...

(Abrams will *stand trial/ go on trial/ be on trial* for murder at the High Court next week.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.111)

- **Try Sb for St**: Xử phạt ai về ...

- **Stand trial for St = Be on trial for St = Go on trial for St**: Bị xử phạt về việc gì ...

106. After such a long time together they are still happily married. (**TEST**)

=> ...

(Their marriage has *stood the test of time*.) => Phrasal verb + style (BD HSG TA 12 – P.111)

- **Stand the test of time** (v.i – phr): chịu đựng thử thách của thời gian, được thử thách qua thời gian.

107. He got over his operation very quickly. (**RECOVERY**)

=> ...

(**He made a very quick recovery from his operation.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.140)

- Get over St = Recover from St = Make a recovery from St: Phục hồi, khỏi, vượt qua ...

108. He makes sure that he isn't associated with policies he disagrees with. (**DISTANCES**)

=> ...

(**He makes sure that he distances (himself) from policies he disagrees with.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.181)

- **Be associated with St:** liên quan tới, dính líu tới

- **Distance (Sb/oneself) from St:** Tránh xa, ít dính líu tới, ít liên quan tới

109. Although the children weren't listening, the teacher didn't get angry. (**attention**)

=> Although the children weren't saying, the teacher didn't get angry.

(... **paying attention to what he/she was** saying, the teacher didn't get angry. (CAE - 1)

110. Given that he has no experience, will Glyn be able to do this job? (**affect**)

=> Will Glyn's ability to do this job?

=> Will Glyn's **lack of experience/ inexperience affect his** ability to do this job? (CAE - 1)

Given that + clause: giả sử Given + N: giả sử

111. "Remember to write or phone," Marta said as she wave goodbye to her friend. (**touch**)

=> "Don't," Marta said as she waved goodbye to her friend.

(**"Don't forget to keep in/stay in touch,"** Marta said as she waved goodbye to her friend.) (CAE - 1)

112. No changes will be made to this project. (**ahead**)

=> This project will to plan.

(This project will **go/ be going ahead according** to plan.) (CAE - 1)

113. Simon really ought to make a decision about his future. (**mind**)

=> It's high time Simon about his future.

(It's high time Simon **made up his mind/ made his mind up** about his future.) (CAE - 1)

114. Pay claims must be submitted before the end of the month. (**put**)

=> You have your pay claims before the end of the month.

(You have **to put in** your pay claims before the end of the month.) (CAE - 1)

115. If you don't pay on time, your booking will be cancelled. (**result**)

=> Failure to your booking being cancelled.

(Failure to **pay on time will result in** your booking being cancelled.) (CAE - 1)

116. Darius soon recovered after the operation on his knee and was able to rejoin the team. (**made**)

=> After the operation on his knee, Darius and was able to rejoin the team.

(After the operation on his knee, Darius **made a quick/fast recovery** and was able to rejoin the team.) (CAE - 1)

117. Most of the children ignored what the teacher had told them. (**notice**)

=> Few of the children what the teacher had told them.

(Few of the children **took (any) notice of** what the teacher had told them.) (CAE - 1)

118. It's so difficult to create new ideas for the festival every year! (**come**)

=> How difficult with new ideas for the festival every year!

(How difficult **it is/ it can be to come up** with new ideas for the festival every year!) (CAE - 1)

119. Barbara's parents were certain that she would be a great tennis player. (**doubt**)

=> Barbara's parents were that she would be a great tennis player.

(Barbara's parents were **in no doubt/ not in any doubt** that she would be a great tennis player.) (CAE - 1)

120. My grandfather had completely forgotten that he phoned me last night. (**recollection**)

=> My grandfather didn't phoning me last night.

(My grandfather didn't **have any recollection of** phoning me last night.)

(Have a recollection of St = Remember St) (CAE - 1)

121. If Marc hadn't taken up politics, he might have become a famous art historian. (**name**)

=> If Marc hadn't taken up politics, he might have himself as an art historian.

(If Marc hadn't taken up politics, he might have **made a name for** himself as an art historian.) (CAE - 1)

122. Delia said that she would no longer tolerate her colleagues being rude. (**put**)

=> "I'm not willing from my colleagues any longer," said Delia.

("I'm not willing **to put up with (any) rudeness** from my colleagues any longer," said Delia.) (CAE - 1)

123. Georgia hasn't written to me recently. (**HEARD**)

=> I a while.

(I **haven't heard from Georgia for/have heard nothing from Georgia for** a while.) (CAE - 3)

124. Dr. Sharp wants you to look after his patients while he's away. (**CARE**)

=> Dr. Sharp would like you to his absence.

(Dr. Sharp would like you to **take care of his patients during/ in** his absence.) (CAE - 3)

- **In one's absence = During one's absence = In the absence of Sb:** Trong khi ai đi vắng

125. The huge traffic jam on the motorway delayed us for several hours. (**HELD**)

=> The huge traffic jam on the motorway for several hours.

(The huge traffic jam on the motorway **held us up** for several hours.) (CAE – 4)

- Hold up Sb/St: delay/block St: hoãn lại, ngăn lại, làm chậm lại ...

126. Our plane's departure time is 10.00 am. **takes** => Our plane 10.00 am.

(Our plane ... **takes off at** ... 10.00 am.)

127. She owns all this land now. **belongs** => All now.

(All ... **this land belongs to her** ... now.)

128. He failed the test because he did not study enough. **attributed**

=> His failure in the test not studying enough.

(His failure in the test ... **was attributed to his** not studying enough.)

129. I wonder if you can lend me something to wear tonight. **mind**

=> Would something to wear tonight?

(Would ... **you mind lending me..** something to wear tonight?)

130. We can't decide where to go on holidays. **decision** => We can't where to go on holidays.

(We can't ... **make a decision about** where to go on holidays.)

131. Can you take me to the station by car? **give** => Can you to the station?

(Can you ... **give me a lift** to the station?)

132. Sally has not come to school because she has been sick. **absent**

=> Sally school because she has been sick.

(Sally ... **has been absent from** school because she has been sick.)

133. There is no sugar left. **run** => We have sugar.

(We have ... **run out of** sugar.)

134. I'll never be able to persuade her to agree with the idea. **bring** => I'll never to the idea.

(I'll never ... **bring her round** ... to the idea.)

135. I found my old diary by chance. **came** => I my old diary by chance.

(I **came across** .. my old diary by chance.)

136. The football match was postponed due to the rain. **put** => The football match was due to the rain.

(The football match was **put off** due to the rain.)

137. He went to Spain to try to speak Spanish better. **brush** => => He went to Spain Spanish.

(He went to Spain ... **to brush up his** ... Spanish)

138. It's a very formal dinner party. **dress** => We are expected for the dinner party.

(We are expected **to dress up** for the dinner party.)

139. An ankle injury prevented her from taking part in the race. **drop**

=> She had to _____ the race because of an ankle injury.

(She had to **drop out of** the race because of an ankle injury.)

140. It was nearly midnight when John arrived. **turn** => John _____ until nearly midnight.

(John **did not turn up** until nearly midnight.)

142. I'm not very confident of passing my driving test. **get** => I _____ don't _____ my driving test.

(I don't **think I will / expect to get through** my driving test)

143. The meeting went on until 11.30. **break** => The meeting _____ until 11.30.

(The meeting **did not break up** until 11.30.)

144. Unless business improves soon, we'll be bankrupt by the end of the year. **pick**

=> If business _____ soon, we'll be bankrupt by the end of the year.

(If business **don't pick up** soon, we'll be bankrupt by the end of the year.)

145. The last time my rent rose was three years ago. **put**

=> They haven't _____ for three years.

(They haven't **put my rent up / put up my rent** for three years.)

146. You will support me at the meeting, won't you? **back** => You will _____ at the meeting, won't you?

(You will **back me up** at the meeting, won't you?)

147. Unless it stops raining soon, we'll have to cancel the picnic. **clear**

=> If it _____ soon we'll have to cancel the picnic.

(If it **does not clear up** soon we'll have to cancel the picnic.)

148. I don't smoke as many cigarettes as I used to. **cut**

=> I've managed to _____ cigarettes I smoke.

(I've managed to **cut down the number of** cigarettes I smoke.)

149. How much did that jacket cost? **pay** => _____ How _____ much _____ that jacket?

(How much **did you pay for** that jacket?)

150. Do you want a sandwich? **care** => _____ a sandwich?

(**Would you care for** a sandwich?)

151. Is this pen yours? **belong** => Does _____ you?

(Does **this pen belong to** you?)

152. John and I last quarrelled over a week ago. **fallen** => John and I _____ for over a week.

(John and I **have not fallen out** for over a week.)

153. After nearly an hour the coach had still not arrived. **sign**

=> After nearly an hour _____ of the coach.

(After nearly an hour **there was still no sign** of the coach.)

154. Our driving laws and theirs are not the same. **different** => Our driving laws _____ theirs.

(Our driving laws **are different from** theirs)

155. They make 2,000 cars a week at that factory. **turns** => That factory _____ 2,000 cars a week.

(That factory **turns out** 2,000 cars a week.)

156. We hired a private nurse to look after my mother when she broke her leg. **care**

We hired a private nurse _____ my mother when she broke her leg.

(We hired a private nurse **to take care of / to care for** my mother when she broke her leg.)

157. He's only now beginning to recover from his illness. **get** => It's taken him until _____ his illness.

(It's taken him until **now to get over** his illness.)

158. My parents don't like us smoking at home. **approve** => My parents _____ smoking at home.

(My parents **don't approve of (us)** smoking at home)

159. Did Angela say why she arrived late? **reason** => Did Angela _____ late?

(Did Angela **give a/any reason for arriving** late?)

160. If you pay no attention to him, he'll soon go away. **notice**

=> If you _____ him, he'll soon go away.

(If you **take no notice of** him, he'll soon go away.)

161. John Lennon was forty when he died. **age** => John Lennon _____ forty.

(John Lennon **died at the age of** forty.)

162. You can stay with my sister if you're ever in Brighton. **put**

=> My sister will _____ if you're ever in Brighton.

(My sister will **put you up** if you're ever in Brighton.)

163. I haven't smoked for six years. **gave** => Six years _____ smoking.

(Six years **ago I gave up** smoking)

164. The clients demanded to stay in a first-class hotel. **staying**

=> The clients in a first-class hotel.

(The clients **...insisted on/upon | staying** in a first-class hotel.)

165. I don't object to the council building a new road here. **objection**

=> I the council building a new road here.

(I **...have no/haven't any/make no | objection to** ... the council building a new road here.)

166. The newspaper offered Lynda £5,000 for her story, but she refused. **turned**

=> Lynda of £5,000 from the newspaper for her story.

(Lynda ...**turned down** | **the/an offer**..... of £5,000 from the newspaper for her story.)

167. They cancelled the flight because of thick fog. (**off**) => The flight _____ because of the thick fog.

(The flight **was called off** because of the thick fog.)

168. The summit meeting will be held in Istanbul. (**place**) => The summit meeting _____ in Istanbul.

(The summit meeting **will take place** in Istanbul.)

169. I'm really excited about the holiday. **LOOKING** => I the holiday.

(**am looking forward to**/'m looking forward to)

170. The bomb exploded early this morning. **OFF** => The bomb early this morning.

(**went off**)

171. Why don't you start doing a sport? **TAKE** => Have you thought about a sport?

(**taking up**)

172. His parents raised him very strictly. **UP** => His parents very strictly.

(**brought him up**)

173. They've cancelled the wedding. **OFF** => They have the wedding.

(**called off**)

174. I don't think they should abolish military service. **AWAY** => They shouldn't military service.

(**do away with**)

175. I've got to reduce the amount of sweets I eat. **DOWN** => I must the number of sweets I eat.

(**cut down on**)

176. My host family will let you stay with us. **UP** => My host family will

(**put you up**)

177. Two men robbed John of his briefcase. => John's briefcase

(John's briefcase **was stolen by two men**.)

178. Is your uncle the owner of this Rolls Royce? (**belong**) => ...

(**Does this Rolls Royce belong to your uncle?**)

179 The building designer doesn't like the idea of a complete reconstruction. (**approve**)

(**The building designer doesn't approve of the idea of a complete reconstruction.**)

180. Sarah's illness has made her unable to do anything. (**action**) => ...

(Sarah's illness has put her out of action.) (make Sb unable to do anything = put Sb out of action: xoa bỏ mọi hành động của ...) (BT TA 12 – P.240)

181. It's not safe these days to make remarks about a woman's appearance.

=> Feminists think it is "sexist" to compliment ...

(a woman on her appearance.) (BT TA 12 – P.122)

(make remark about Sb's St = compliment Sb on St: bình luận, khen ngợi, ...)

182. I didn't mean to break the vase. (purpose) => I ...

(didn't break the vase on purpose.) (BT TA 12 – P.124)

183. I don't know them to speak to, though I've seen them. (sight) => I only

(I only know them by sight.) (know Sb by sight: biết mặt, quen biết nhưng không nói chuyện) (BT TA 12 – P.124)

184. It is unusual for Carol to get angry with her staff. (hardly) => Carol temper with her staff.

(hardly ever loses her) (Việc Carol bực tức với nhân viên của cậu ấy là rất hiếm, rất không bình thường.)

(BT TA 10 – P.57)

- To be in a good temper (vui vẻ hoà nhã)

- To learn to control one's temper (tập kiềm chế tính cáu kỉnh của mình)

- To keep/lose one's temper (giữ được bình tĩnh/mất bình tĩnh)

- To be in a (bad, foul, rotten..) temper (bực tức, giận dữ)

185. "Is it or is it true that you have been misappropriating company funds?" the manager asked the accountant.

=> The manager wanted ...

(to know if she had been misappropriating company funds/ whether she had been misappropriating company funds or not.)

BÀI TẬP CHUYÊN SÂU BỒI DƯỠNG HỌC SINH GIỎI – MÔN TIẾNG ANH
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 18: BỒI DƯỠNG KIẾN THỨC NÂNG CAO VỀ THÀNH NGỮ THÔNG DỤNG

PRACTICE ON Idioms

1. We've run out of tea. => There ...
2. I'm sure he took your briefcase by mistake. => I'm sure he didn't ...
3. Pamela became popular with young people in the 1950s. => Pamel caught ...
4. I won't tolerate this behaviour for a minute longer. => I won't put ...
5. It is essential that the road is finished before next summer. => The road ...
6. Yogurt is supposed to be good for you. => Yogurt is supposed to do ...
7. Phone me tomorrow please. => Please give ...
8. Do you think women are more careful drivers than men?
=> In your opinion, do women drive ?
9. In your opinion, did Romeo really love Juliet? => Do you think ?
10. I was so furious I just couldn't contain myself. (**express**) => I was so furious ...
11. He takes great delight in proving others wrong. (**enjoys**) => He
12. Everyone was surprised to see Geoff leave the party early. (**surprise**)
=> To the party early.
13. All the witnesses said the accident was my fault. (**blame**)
=> All the witnesses said that the accident.
14. To Alan's amazement, the passport office was closed when he arrived. (**find**)
=> Alan the passport office closed when he arrived.

15. Maria said I had caused the accident. (**blamed**) => Maria the accident.
16. He was crossing the road. I caught sight of him. => I noticed ...
17. Harry couldn't get his parents' permission to buy a motorbike.
=> Harry's parents didn't let ...
18. After fighting the fire for twelve hours the firemen succeeded in extinguishing it.
=> The firemen managed to put ...
19. Let's look at the new plan alongside the old one. (**compare**)
=> ...
20. You should just ignore anything Mike says. (**notice**)
=> You should ...
21. Witnesses said the accident was the van driver's fault. (**blamed**) => ...
22. She has always a good relationship with the children. (**got**)
=> ...
23. At first the new computer made me feel a bit afraid. (**awe**)
=> ...
24. William decided that an actor's life was not for him. (**cut**)
=> ...
25. I only called the police when I had tried everything else. (**resort**)
=> ...
26. Women in this factory work under the same conditions as men. (**terms**)
=> ...
27. I assumed that you would ask for a reference. (**granted**)
=> ...
28. You'd feel better if you had a quiet holiday. (**do**) => ...
29. Mrs. Scott is proud of her cooking. (**prides**) => ...
30. Gerald never had enough to live on until he married that rich businesswoman. (**short**)
=> ...
31. What Rachel does in her spare time doesn't concern me. (**business**)
=> ...
32. What I want more than anything is peace and quiet. (**all**)
=> What I want ...
33. I didn't mean to break the vase. (**purpose**) => ...
34. The police arrived as the thieves were committing the crime. (**red-handed**)
=> ...
35. The arrived at their destination alive and kicking. => ...
36. My jewellery has been stolen! (**off**) => ...
37. This is the first time I've seen her in my life. (**set**) => ...
38. He is different from his brother in almost all respects. (**bears**)
=> ...

39. Andrew doesn't claim to have a lot of musical talent. (**pretence**)
=> ...
40. It's unlikely he'll be picked for the Olympic swimming team. (**chances**)
=> ...
41. We were lucky to find somewhere to park so quickly. (**stroke**) => ...
42. I wonder where Harry is now – I haven't seen him for years. (**become**)
=> ...
43. This is a subject that Jack and I disagree about. (**eye**)
=> ...
44. If you were in the situation I'm in, you'd feel the same. => If you put ...
45. John was shocked to hear that he had failed his driving test. (**came**)
=> ...
46. Didn't you realize that he was only pretending?
=> Didn't it ...
47. Don't panic about something so trivial. (**mountain**) => ...
48. What has this experience taught you? => What conclusions ...
49. To pass the time, I looked through some magazines. => I whiled ...
50. The business is hardly making a profit at the moment. (**even**)
=> ...
51. Nowadays goods are often acquired but not paid for immediately. (**credit**)
=> ...
52. We never purchase small quantities as we would make less profit. (**bulk**)
=> ...
53. My impression of her is that she is a very effective teacher. (**strikes**)
=> ...
54. I have frequently made stupid mistakes like that. => Many's ...
55. We were all shocked by his reaction. => His reaction came ...
56. The new regulations will begin to apply on June 1st. (**effect**)
=> ...
57. Being a film star involves making sacrifices in your personal life. (**parcel**)
=> ...
58. It doesn't seem likely that they'll make him resign. (**likelihood**)
=> ...
59. Julia soon calmed down and explained her problem.
=> ...
60. In her new job, Alison determined to impress everyone from the start. (**mark**)
=> ...
61. I felt vaguely that something was wrong, but what was it? (**back**)
=> ...
62. When they broke the news, she stayed perfectly calm and controlled. (**hair**)
=> ...

63. We agreed that each of us would do the washing-up on alternate days. (**turns**)
=> ...
64. Don't tell the boss anything about this. (**breathe**)
=> ...
65. I remained neutral during their disagreement because I liked both of them. (**sides**)
=> ...
66. The new musical has delighted theatre audiences throughout the country. (**storm**)
=> ...
67. His handwriting is illegible, as far as I am concerned. (**out**)
=> ...
68. It is rather early for us to make any definite plans. (**stage**) => ...
69. To put it bluntly, we are making no progress with this rehabilitation scheme. (**standstill**)
=> ...
70. If you wish to complain, you must write a letter. (**writing**)
=> ...
71. Do you consider Michael one of your best friends? => Do you count ...
72. We were all shocked by his reaction. => His reaction came
73. Mr. Foster asked me to write this letter to you.
=> It is at ...
74. Regarding payment, most major credit cards are acceptable.
=> As far as ...
75. I firmly believe him to be the rudest person I know. (**without**)
=> ...
76. You may not be able to find a parking space in the city centre.
=> I doubt ...
77. Don't ask him about the accident, he is upset already. (**state**)
=> ...
78. The senior students believe that they are old enough to choose which classes to attend. (**regard**)
=> ...
79. Since the company's methods were exposed in a newspaper, people have lost their good opinion of it. (**disrepute**)
=> ...
80. She was so beautiful that I couldn't stop looking at her. (**eyes**)
=> ...
81. Winning that prize has made him very conceited. (**head**)
=> ...
82. When he was a child he loved dismantling things – to see how they worked. (**pieces**)
=> ...
83. I do wish you'd stop biting your nails, Brian! It really annoys me. (**nerves**)

=> ...

84. English people in general don't like complaining in public. (**fuss**)

=> ...

85. Could you guard my handbag for me while I go to the toilet? (**eye**)

=> ...

86. She is not really upset; she's only pretending. (**act**)

=> ...

87. We're moving to Bristol next week but we promise to stay in contact with you. (**touch**)

=> ...

88. You made an embarrassing mistake when you asked him where his wife was. Didn't you realize she was dead? (**foot**)

=> ...

89. I hate the winter – it really depresses me. (**down**) => ...

90. Many husbands often don't appreciate their wives; and vice-versa. (**granted**)

=> ...

91. I happen to know the manager of the firm you've applied to for a job. I can recommend you if you like. (**word**)

=> ...

92. "All this happened a long, long time ago," said the history teacher. (**place**)

=> ...

93. Many people nowadays find it increasingly difficult to exist on the money they earn. (**ends**)

=> ...

94. Telephone me if you feel like going out for a meal one day next week. (**ring**)

=> ...

95. There's no need for us to hurry; the play doesn't start until 7.30. (**time**)

=> ...

96. The fact that the President had been a drug addict was not revealed until several years after his death. (**light**)

=> ...

97. I may not come first in the race, but I'll try as hard as I can so as not to come last. (**best**)

=> ...

98. My husband is obsessed with football; it's the only thing he ever think about. (**brain**)

=> ...

99. We're organizing a going-away party for Sue on Saturday. But don't tell her as it's supposed to be a surprise. (**quiet**)

=> ...

100. If things go wrong, James, whatever you do, don't panic. (**head**)

=> ...

101. More than 1000 runners participated in this year's Manchester marathon. (**part**)

=> ...

102. The way he took everything she did for granted really annoyed her. (**back**)

=> ...

103. The personnel officer promised him that she wouldn't tell anyone that he had been in prison. (**word**)

=> ...

104. We'd get the job finished much quicker if everyone worked as hard as everyone else. (**weight**)

=> ...

105. If you don't like the idea then just say so. I believe you should always speak frankly. (**spade**)

=> ...

106. My father's going to be really angry when he finds out that I've lost the car keys. (**wall**)

=> ...

107. Don't pay any attention to what he says; he is only trying to annoy you. (**notice**)

=> ...

108. She wasn't speaking seriously. (**TONGUE**) => ...

109. To the best of my knowledge, Mr. Green's a vegetarian.

=> As far as ...

110. I find it very easy to speak German. (**EASE**) => ...

111. I assume you're hungry. (**GRANTED**)

=> ...

112. The book was not as good as he had hoped.

=> ...

113. You would benefit from a change. (**GOOD**)

=> ...

114. I don't care whether you come or not. (**DIFFERENCE**)

=> ...

115. Some people will do anything to lose weight. (**LENGTHS**)

=> ...

116. The two theories appear to be completely different. (**COMMON**)

=> ...

117. Several members of the committee said they were worried about the chairman's proposals. (**concern**)

=> ...

118. Ours is the only company allowed to import these chemicals. (**MONOPOLY**)

=> ...

119. The coach's tactics were directly responsible for the team's defeat. (**CONSEQUENCE**)

=> ...

120. This new record is certain to sell a lot of copies. (**DOUBT**)

=> ...

121. You'd feel better if you had a quiet holiday. (**DO**)

=> ...

122. With six children to look after, she's extremely busy. (**HANDS**)

=> ...

123. The final version of the plan was quite different from the initial draft. (**RESEMBLANCE**)

=> ...

124. I certainly won't change my mind about resigning. (**QUESTION**)

=> ...

125. He didn't mention our previous conversation at all. (**REFERENCE**)

=> ...

126. Digging the garden always makes me feel hungry. (**GIVES**)

=> ...

127. Could you watch my bag while I'm away, please? (**EYE**)

=> ...

128. We agreed that each of us would do the washing-up on alternate days. (**URNS**)

=> ...

129. Don't tell the boss anything about this. (**BREATHE**)

=> ...

130. They were just as good as we had expected.

=> They certainly lived ...

131. Mr. Conrad's son is becoming quite well known as an artist. (**name**)

=> Mr. Conrad's son is making himself as an artist.

132. When it comes to punctuality, Fiona really takes after her mother. (**concerned**)

=> As, Fiona really takes after her mother.

133. You have to be very patient to work as a primary school teacher these days. (**deal**)

=> Working as a primary school teacher calls these days.

134. None of the other team members supposed Terry's idea. (**support**)

=> Terry's idea met with the other members of the team.

135. If you change any of these arrangements, please be sure to let us know. (**notify**)

=> Please ensure that change in these arrangements.

136. I'm going to eat less chocolate this year. (**down**)

=> I'm going of chocolate I eat this year.

137. When it comes to computer games, Gareth is a real expert. (**CONCERNED**)

=> As, Gareth is a real expert.

138. The reduction in the price of the magazines led to a growth in sales. (**RESULT**)

=> Sales of the magazine reduction in the price.

139. Phoebe was surprised to be offered a place on the course. (**CAME**)

=> The offer of a place on the course Phoebe.

140. The company is almost certain to get the contract. (**EVERY**)

=> The company stands the contract.

141. Julia says that her sister is the only person to know of our plans to get married. (**APART**)
=> Julia says that knows of our plans to get married.
142. Sven would have called yesterday if he had had more time. (**SHORT**)
=> Sven didn't call yesterday time.
143. In his speech, the Principal did not mention the new language courses. (**REFERENCE**)
=> In his speech, the Principal the new language courses.
144. Lucy was very pleased to be given an award. (**DELIGHT**)
=> Much to given the award.
145. Sam never thought of asking me for my advice. (**OCCURRED**)
=> It me for my advice.
146. The weather was getting worse, so Joe was forced to give up his attempt to climb to the summit. (**BUT**)
=> Due to the worsening weather, Joe had to give up his attempt to climb to the summit.
147. What are your plans for celebrating Nina's birthday? (**MIND**)
=> What for celebrating Nina's birthday?
148. Once the visitors had gone, Rachel started her homework immediately. (**DOWN**)
=> Once the visitors had gone, Rachel immediately her homework.
149. Pierre's presentation showed he was against the proposed takeover. (**OBJECTED**)
=> In his presentation, Pierre made it the proposed takeover.
150. After a sleepless night, Marta finally decided that she wouldn't accept the job she had been offered. (**MIND**) => After a sleepless night Marta finally accept the job she had been offered.
151. Although Joe kept on attempting to contact his cousin, he didn't manage to speak to her until the next day. (**TOUCH**)
=> Despite repeated his cousin, Joe didn't manage to speak to her until the next day.
152. David said that the accident was his fault. (**TOOK**)
=> David the accident.
153. I was bitterly disappointed they didn't give me a part in the school play. (**BITTER**)
=> To given a part in the school play.
154. We owe it to him that the campaign has been a success. => We owe the ...
155. The loss of his job turned out to be a good thing. => It ...
156. I owe it to him that I was promoted so rapidly. => I owe my ...
157. I'll leave it to you which brand we choose. => I'll leave the ...
158. He was very proud of his musical talent. => He prided ...
159. Both the scientists ignored the dangerous implications of the experiment.
=> Neither ...
160. He couldn't stop quickly enough to avoid the accident. **time**

=> He couldn't the accident.

161. He took two hours deciding which seeds to buy. **mind**

=> He took two hours which seeds to buy.

162. Tom was definitely first in the queue. **doubt**

=> There's first in the queue.

163. Mary knows a lot of people in France. **acquaintances**

=> Mary In France.

164. Anthony travelled to Spain. **journey**

=> Anthony to Spain.

165. I couldn't bear the noise any longer. **put**

=> I couldn't the noise any longer.

166. I told John to bring his problems to me. **come**

=> I told John his problems.

167. I slowed down at the traffic lights. **speed**

=> I at the traffic lights.

168. I couldn't understand what I was reading. **sense**

=> I couldn't what I was reading.

169. John's students always respected him. **looked**

=> John by his students.

170. It's impossible to lend you any more money, I'm afraid. **question**

=> Lending you any more money , I'm afraid.

171. Can you understand what this paper means? **sense** => Can you
..... this paper?

172. All I want you to do is to look after my dog. **care** => All I want you to do is to
..... my dog.

173. She decided to visit her friend and tell her the news. **drop**

=> She decided to her friend and tell her the news.

174. We have to reduce our expenses. **cut** => We have to
..... our expenses.

175. John cannot possibly borrow the car tonight. **question**

=> It's for John to borrow the car tonight.

176. Could I continue what I was doing? **get** => Could I
..... what I was doing?

177. I can't make up my mind about the colour. **decide** => I
..... the colour.

178. There are times when you have to do things by yourself. **own**

=> There are times when you have to do things

179. There was no one here except John. **apart** => There was no one here
..... John.

180. How likely is she to win the race? **chances** => What the
race?

181. The only question I had wrong was question seven. **except**

=> I had _____
question seven

182. I don't think I'll go to Jane's party on Saturday. **doubt**

=> I _____ to Jane's party on Saturday.

183. Everyone has heard about the canals in Amsterdam. **famous** => Amsterdam
_____ canals.

184. Robert has not had a job for two years. **out** => Robert has
_____ for two years.

185. Mehmet has a good relationship with his neighbours. **(get)**

=> Mehmet _____ his neighbours.

186. The escalator isn't working; please use the stairs instead. **(out)**

=> The escalator _____; please use the stairs instead.

187. Do u think that climate affects people's personalities? **(influence)**

=> Do u think that climate people's personalities?

188. Fack has become confident as a result of his success. **(turned)**

=> Jack's success hasperson.

189. The only person I didn't see was Jane. **except** => I
..... Jane.

190. He knows everything about flowers. **expert** => He
..... flowers.

191. If you are not old enough you cannot watch certain films. **age**

=> If you you cannot watch certain films.

192. The burglar managed to escape without punishment. **get**

=> The burglar managed to punishment.

193. I was lucky you let me stay with you for the night. **put** => I was lucky you
..... for the night.

194. It was very kind of them to help us. **grateful** => We
_____ for their help.

195. My uncle had never been abroad before. **trip** => It was
_____ abroad.

196. David lives quite near the station. **far**

=> David doesn't live (very) far from / lives not very far from the station.

197. I couldn't remember the name of my hotel when I got into the taxi. **(called)**

=> I couldn't remember
when I got into the taxi.

198. "Are u a member of the club"? The receptionist said to me. **(belonged)**

=> The receptionist asked me

199. Sarah cried her eyes out immediately she was told she'd failed her driving test. **BROKE**

=> Sarah soon as she heard she'd failed her driving test.

200. The Government recently said our problems are the fault of the worldwide economic

slowdown.

PLACED

=> The Government have the worldwide economic slowdown for our problems.

201. You led me to believe the job was mine if I wanted it. IMPRESSION

=> I that the job was mine if I wanted it.

202. Feel free to telephone if you have any further problems. CALL

=> Do not if you have any further problems.

203. When you do decide what you want to do please let us know. MIND

=> When what you want to do please let us know.

204. How can I make him understand that I don't want to see him any more? ACROSS

=> How can I that I don't want to see him any more?

205. Parents predict chaos in schools unless the strike is called off. RESULT

=> Parents claim it the teacher's strike goes ahead.

206. Police are warning people to check for forged notes which are currently in circulation.

LOOKOUT

=> Police are warning people to be forged notes which are currently in circulation.

207. It's possible that they got the wrong idea and thought the party was next week.

REACHED

=> They might conclusion and thought the party was next week.

208. It was a mistake not to write the telephone number down. POINT

=> I should writing down the telephone number.

209. You could have been seriously injured not wearing a seat belt. THINK

=> You should seriously injured not wearing a seat belt.

210. Would you give us your answer as soon as possible. CONVENIENCE

=> Please respond

211. It's not likely to happen but if you're not satisfied with the product we'll refund your money. EVENT

=> that you are not satisfied with the product your money will be refunded.

212. It's one thing to think there's a demand for your product and another to actually make a sale. WORLD

=> There's between thinking there's a demand for your product and actually making a sale.

213. I'm sure we went the wrong way at the last junction. TAKEN

=> We must at the last junction.

214. I'm so sorry, I didn't realise it was so late. TRACK => Sorry, I time.

215. I don't care what you do. **concerned** => As
you can do what you like.

216. He was ordered to leave the field for arguing with the referee. **sent**
The referee for arguing.

217. Do you and your brother have the same looks? **like** => Does
..... you?

218. His boss won't tolerate lateness. **put** => His boss won't
..... lateness.

219. The disappearance of the reports was not my fault. => I was

220. Sarah cried her eyes out immediately she was told she'd failed her driving test. **BROKE**
=> Sarah soon as she heard she'd failed her driving test.

221. The Government recently said our problems are the fault of the worldwide economic
slowdown. **PLACED**

=> The Government have the worldwide economic
slowdown for our problems.

222. When you do decide what you want to do please let us know. **MIND**

=> When what you want to do please let
us know.

223. We must take as much advantage as possible of any opportunity to speak English. **MOST**

=> We have any opportunity to speak
English.

224. What's the answer to sixteen minus eight? **AWAY**

=> If you sixteen, what's the
answer?

225. Three hundred students entered the swimming competition last year. **PART**

=> Three hundred students the swimming competition
last year.

226. There will be no more oil available in this area in 2030. **RUN**

=> Oil supplies in this area by the year 2031.

227. My sister doesn't like computer games very much. **KEEN**

=> My sister computer games.

228. Bob hadn't seen his uncle for several years. **GONE**

=> After several years, Bob saw his uncle again.

230. I'm not going to tolerate this untidiness any longer. **UP**

=> I have no intention this untidiness any longer.

231. It's ages since my sister and I had an argument. **OUT** => My sister and I
..... ages.

233. The problem we were faced with was a serious one. **CAME**

=> The problem we was a serious one.

234. The tourist trade is much better now than it was last month. **PICKED**

=> The tourist trade noticeably since last month.

235. Physical exercise won't hurt you if you are careful. **DO**

=> Physical exercise won't if you are careful.

236. It was not a good idea for you to refuse the offer of that job. **DOWN**

=> You should the offer of that job.

237. Will your neighbours look after your dog when you go away? **TAKE**

=> Do you know if your neighbours your dog when you go away?

238. While we were going home, we had an accident. **WAY**

=> We home when we had an accident.

240. Susan has had no success with her plans to work abroad, unfortunately. **THROUGH**

=> Susan's plans to work abroad , unfortunately.

241. Whatever you do, don't lift that heavy suitcase. **UP**

=> I'd advise you not that heavy suitcase.

242. You should not think that the accident was your fault. **BLAME**

=> It would be wrong for the accident.

244. The runners had a difficult time competing in the race. **PART**

The runners who ----- the race had a difficult time.

245. Do you know when the competition is being held next year? **PLACE**

=> When next year?

246. The owner established the company in 2001. **UP**

=> The company the owner in 2001.

247. It is difficult for Paul to decide what to do. **MIND**

=> Paul finds it difficult what to do.

248. Bad weather delayed the building project for several weeks. **SET**

=> The building project for several weeks by the bad weather.

249. Sara cleaned every bit of her room before her cousin came to stay. **TOP**

=> Sara cleaned her room before her cousin came to stay.

250. Leaving school made me realise that my childhood was over. **BROUGHT**

=> Leaving school me that my childhood was over.

251. I never find time to tidy my desk. **ROUND**

=> I never my desk.

252. The boats began to move slowly out of the harbour. **WAY**

=> The boats slowly out of the harbour.

253. It is not my fault that the glass broke. **BLAME** => You cannot
..... the glass.
254. Bad weather makes me feel really unhappy in the winter. **DOWN**
=> Bad weather in the winter.
255. Fog delayed my flight to Moscow this morning. **UP**
=> My flight to Moscow this morning.
256. Help was urgently needed in the flooded area of the country. **NEED**
=> They were in the flooded area of the
country.
257. While we were going home yesterday we got caught in a thunderstorm. **WAY**
=> We got caught in a thunderstorm while we were
..... yesterday.
258. Has Mary altered her decision about moving to the countryside? **MIND**
=> Do you know if Mary ----- about moving to the countryside?
259. The date for the Barcelona Conference is the 23rd of March. **PLACE**
=> The Barcelona Conference the 23rd of March.
261. Nobody wants to buy this type of music any more. **LONGER**
=> There for this type of music.
262. Our spending will have to be reduced next year. **BACK**
=> We will have our spending next year.
263. The children were absolutely certain that the film would be fantastic. **DOUBT**
=> There minds of the children that the film would be
fantastic.
264. They are moving our oral examination to an earlier date. **FORWARD**
=> Our oral examination to an earlier date.
265. You must never take your helmet off while you are riding a motorcycle. **all**
=> Helmets must be worn when riding a motorcycle.
266. I thought parking was allowed here. **under the impression**
=> I that parking was allowed here.
267. His daughter continued to cry until he could not be seen any longer. **sight**
=> She continued to cry until he
268. I'm afraid that car is just too expensive. **means** => That car is
.....
269. One other thing before I forget - Donata is coming to visit next weekend. **by**
=>, Donata is coming to visit next weekend.
270. Luckily, Peter wasn't charged with an offence when the police caught him stealing the
first time. **off**
=> Peter was very lucky because he
271. You should feel horrible! Why did you say that to Jacek? **shame**
=>! Why did you say that to Jacek?
272. The authorities said she wasn't responsible for the accident. **fault**

- => The accident
273. He didn't want to join in the celebrations. **take** => He didn't want
..... the celebrations.
274. If you don't know how to spell the word, why don't you check in the dictionary? **up**
(Why don't you in the dictionary?)
275. The concert was horrible. **time** => The concert was a complete
.....
276. As the class representative I would like to welcome you. **behalf**
=> I'd like to welcome you the class.
277. He escaped using a disguise. **means** => He escaped
..... a disguise.
277. She has probably found a new job. **likely** => It a new job.
278. I don't agree with prohibiting smoking in bars. **favour**
=> I'm not prohibiting smoking in bars.
279. She didn't accept his marriage proposal. **down** => She
.....
280. Can you look after the kids this afternoon? **of**
=> Can you the kids this afternoon?
281. He acts like a poor man even if he has a lot of money. **fact**
=> Even though he acts like a poor man, he has a lot of money.
282. I didn't mean to break that vase. **on** => I didn't break that vase
.....
283. William says Harold is responsible. **according** => It's Harold's
..... William.
284. I think we need to get a new car. **in** => We need to get a new car
.....
285. Many people were delayed because of the traffic jam. **number**
=> were delayed by the traffic jam.
286. Can you describe him to me? **like** => What
.....?
287. He looks like another person who works here. **else**
=> He reminds who works here.
288. He took his old car to the car showroom and bought a new one instead. **changed**
=> He a new one at the car showroom.
289. My new car is too big for this garage. **Get** => I can't this
garage.
290. Everyone behaves respectfully towards Jane, although she's very young. **treats**
=> Everyone, although she's very young.
291. She was one of my friends when I was at junior school. **friend**
=> She used mine when I was at junior school.

292. I'll phone you when I've finished. **Soon** => I'll give _____
as I've finished.
293. I'll contact you as soon as I get back from holiday. **touch**
=> As soon as I get back from holiday, I'll _____
you.
294. There are seven different films for us to choose from at the cinema. **choice**
=> We have _____ seven different films at the cinema.
295. Golf would be a way for you to get some exercise. **take**
=> You should _____ order to get some exercise.
296. There's no food left in the house. **run** =>
We _____ food.
297. It's ages since anyone has thought of a good story. **up**
=> No one _____ a good story for a long time.
298. Don't blame me for your accident. **fault** => It wasn't
_____ an accident.
299. Kathy was the only person who was happy with the result. **apart**
=> Nobody _____ happy with the result.
300. June was sure there were no mistakes in her homework. **(nothing)**
=> June was surewith her homework.
301. The staff in that office all have great respect for their boss. **(look)**
=> The staff in that office alltheir boss.
302. We need to think about how old the house is when making our decision. **(account)**
=> ...
303. The boys laughed at the man in spite of his old age. **(fun of)**
=> ...
304. You are all welcome to take any food you like. => Help
305. Did the children enjoy themselves during the performance? **(good time)**
=> ...
306. We haven't had any message from him since March. **(heard)**
=> ...
307. Our representatives have been criticizing the new concept. **(critical)**
=> ...
308. I'll go upstairs to find out if they have already vacated the rooms. **(sure that)**
=> ...
309. We haven't contacted each other for several months. **(touch)**
=> ...
310. Mr. Thompson's opinion of these innovations is rather low. **(much of)**
=> ...
311. Each of us has tried to comfort the depressed patient. **(attempt)**

=> ...

312. Father doesn't want you to keep these disgusting insects. (**rid**)

=> ...

313. One of the relatives has made a statement for the mourning parents on television. (**behalf**)

=> ...

314. At least some of you may be obliged to sign the agreement. (**under**)

=> ...

315. Suddenly, the baby started to cry and nobody knew what to do about it. (**burst**)

316. Certainly, drinking too much alcohol can be harmful to your health. (**do**)

=> ...

317. Only a few Members of Parliament voted for the reforms. (**favour of**)

=> ...

318. He said he was sorry for what he had said to the customer. (**apologies**)

=> ...

319. However unfavourable our position is, we mustn't surrender. (**bold face**)

=> ...

320. I can't lend you any money as I don't have much myself. (**short**)

=> ...

321. How much did you have to pay for their service? (**owe**) =>

322. We were surprised to learn that Brian had become a monk.

=> It came ...

323. This loud music makes me nervous. (... **my nerves.**) => ...

324. I can't understand a bit of what he says. (**any sense**) => ...

325. Hats like this aren't fashionable any longer. (**date**) => ...

326. Stanley is rather fearful of the new algebra teacher. (**awe of**) => ...

327. I'm sorry, I didn't intend to take your book home. (... **accident.**)

=> ...

328. Our father will probably stay longer in Rome than he expected. (**probability**)

=> ...

329. The patient's quick recovery after so serious an accident was amazing. (**made**)

=> ...

330. What was the reason for the engine's breakdown?

=> Why wrong?

331. Haven't you ever had the idea that you could emigrate? (**occurred**)

332. I doubt whether it will stop raining till afternoon. => It is ...

333. Sorry, we haven't got any more free tickets. (... **left.**) => ...

334. Celine has always been fond of classical music. (**taste**)

=> ...

335. Peter and his roommate differ from each other a lot. (... **common.**)

=> ...

336. Nobody helps this old man with chopping the wood. (... **himself.**)

=> ...

337. The jury said Mr Cutter was guilty of misappropriating a huge sum of money. (**found**)

=> ...

338. The secretary said my explanation was unbelievable. (**beyond**)

=> ...

339. They cannot watch this film because they aren't adult yet. (**under**)

=> ...

340. Is Eddie **familiar** with the consequences of his irrational behaviour? (**aware**)

=> ...

341. She always speaks about her children's achievements with great pride. (**boasts**)

=> ...

342. The police were only able to break the riots using force. (**means**)

=> ...

343. The existence of the polar bear is endangered. (... **stake.**) => ...

344. The only person responsible for the breakdown was Eric. (**to blame**)

=> Eric ...

345. Has anybody been hurt in the road collision? => Has anybody come ...

346. I met Stanley by chance in the department store. (**across**) => ...

347. Julia isn't to blame for the negligence by any means.

=> By no means ...

348. From time to time, we spend our weekends at the lake.

=> We again.

349. Susan admits she didn't have a good time at the banquet at all.

=> enjoy least.

350. I knew nothing about the rebellion that they were planning. (**dark**)

=> ...

351. Several runners have withdrawn from the race because of health problems. (**backed**)

=> ...

352. Who is going to dismantle this engine? (... **pieces?**)

=> ...

353. Despite numerous mistakes in the procedures, the trial is still being continued. (... **progress**)

=> ...

354. The other day, I was fined for exceeding the speed limit. (**beyond**)

=> ...

355. I am not responsible for your misfortunes. =>

Your

..... fault.

356. He would do almost anything to win the girls hand. (**lengths**)
=> ...
357. Who's going to supervise our section? (**in charge**) => ...
358. My son attaches great importance to eating healthy food. (**makes much**)
=> ...
359. Alice couldn't remember the caller's identity. (... **recall**.)
=> ...
360. Does your mother want a soft drink? (**care**) => ...
361. It was a long time ago when horsecars were replaced by motor vehicles. (**place**)
=> ...
362. When the official part of the meeting ended, everyone rushed to the buffet. (**close**)
=> ...
363. Patrick is not feeling healthy today. (**colour**) => ...
364. You'll be in serious trouble unless you apologize to Mrs Dempsey.
=> You'll get ...
365. David really confides in Mr Palmer's greater experience. (**confident**)
=> ...
366. We aren't willing to support the strike; we don't approve of it.
=> Far from
367. Sue has benefited from the sunny weather by getting nicely suntanned. (**advantage**)
=> ...
368. Susan did everything she could to make us both reconcile. (**utmost**)
=> ...
369. These dangerous lizards live only in the tropical regions. (**peculiar**)
=> ...
370. The patient's condition is gradually improving. (... **degrees**)
=> ...
371. The organizers disregarded the former president's presence at the ceremony. (**notice**)
372. These two stamps aren't alike. (**difference**) => ...
373. Betty didn't know Sony was Hanna's boyfriend. (**unaware**)
=> ...
374. We'll have to do with one tent and a few biscuits instead of a luxury hotel and lavish meals. (**in place**)
=> ...
375. The results aren't satisfactory considering her long and rigorous training. (**account**)
=> ...
376. Shannon doesn't think much of the book. (**low**) => ...
377. What does the abbreviation YMCA mean? (... **for?**) => ...
378. Isn't there anyone to support my point of view? (**take**) => Isn't there ...

379. There are a lot of mushrooms in this thick pine forest. (**abounds**)
=> ...
380. Do you think they will let me have a look at the research findings? (**cast**)
=> ...
381. They haven't spoken to each other since they quarrelled in April. (**speaking terms**)
=> ...
382. Apart from a few minor mistakes, you did a good job on the whole. => By and ...
383. It is possible that he will pull through very soon. (**chance**)
=> There ...
384. Why shouldn't she be given the benefit of the doubt?
=> It's only natural ...
385. I hope they won't get offended with my remarks. (... **good part.**)
=> ...
386. I advise you to stop smoking cigarettes. (**your shoes**)
=> ...
387. Nobody took any notice of George's foolish jokes. (**attention**)
=> ...
388. Take into account all the possible hardships. (**provision**)
=> ...
389. One of my earrings is missing from the box. => An earring ...
390. Maurice says he will never memorize the poem. (... **heart**)
=> ...
391. Has anyone had any good ideas? (**come up**) => ...
392. Mr. Green is always punctual. (**dead**) => ...
393. Remember that you are being constantly supervised. => Bear ...
394. The new deal has introduced many changes in the cooperation.
=> Many a ...
395. I'm sorry sir, but the 5.30 train is late. (... **schedule.**) => ...
396. Have you decided whether to join our chess club or not? (**mind**)
=> ...
397. I'm not certain, but there may be about twenty applications for the job.
=> At a ...
398. Your essays should be submitted by the 30th of June.
=> The deadline
399. Certainly, Frank isn't the only person capable of translating the book into Polish
=>any means.
400. **Hurry up or else we** will miss the train. (**move**) => Get ...
401. If you hope to be a good driver, you mustn't break the traffic regulations. (**abide**)
=> ...
402. I don't agree with the conclusions you have put forward. (**along with**)

=> ...

403. Did she use her spare time in a good way? (**make**) => ...

404. Where is the annual meeting being organized? (... **place**?)

=> ...

405. It is more than probable that they have had problems with their car.

=> In all ...

405. Nobody died in the accident. (**fatalities**) => ...

406. John has taken it upon himself to look after the baby tomorrow. (**committed**)

407. The possibility of any further storms can't be excluded. (... **out**.)

=> ...

408. One of the patients couldn't breathe properly. (**short**) => ...

409. I reported him to the police because I assumed he was guilty of theft. (**assumption**)

=> ...

410. You are forbidden from leaving the house at night.

=> Your question.

411. No such idea has ever occurred to me before. (**crossed**)

=> ...

412. I **cannot do** anything more to make you feel comfortable.

=> There ...

413. Many wild animals are in danger of extinction. (... **peril**.)

=> The life

414. If I were you, I would throw the files away. (**dispose**)

=> ...

415. The Wrights don't have much money to live in comfort. (... **ends meet**.)

=> ...

416. I couldn't understand a word of what he said. (**tail**)

=> ...

417. Our supplies of firewood will soon be finished. (**low**)

=> We ...

418. Carol is obliged to do the washing up at home. (**an obligation**)

=> ...

419. Susan is very proud of her sports achievements. => Susan prides ...

421. You should never disobey the safety regulations. (**conform**) => ...

422. This case is similar to the one we investigated last year. (**bears**)

=> ...

423. I'll have to find some time to tidy up the garden shed next week. (**get round to**)

=> ...

424. You cannot deny the old town square is imposing.

=> There's no ...

425. To tell you the truth, I bought these shoes on the cheap. (... **song**.)

=> ...

426. We were all shocked by the rude response that the boy gave to his loving mother. (**aback**)

=> ...

427. The flight attendant asked me to put down the cigarette. (**refrain**)

=> The flight attendant ...

428. William and Simon don't like each other. (**get**) => William and Simon ...

429. Since their father's death, they have had serious financial problems. (... **straits.**)

=> ...

430. Nigel doesn't pay much attention to my problems. (... **granted.**)

=> ...

431. I didn't understand much of what the man said to me. (**scarcely**)

=> ...

432. All the inhabitants of the island know this place very well. (**familiar**)

=> This place ...

433. The minister claims that another rise in food prices is possible. (... **cards.**)

=> ...

434. Her role in the plot was of secondary importance. (**second fiddle**)

=> ...

435. It's not our concern what they do after lessons.

=> It is of ...

436. I suddenly realized I had strayed from the main route. (**dawned**)

=> It ...

437. They say about half of the staff will be made redundant. (... **sack.**)

=> ...

438. I don't know how much of that syrup she ought to be given. (**faintest idea**)

=> ...

439. After his uncle's death, Lou inherited the house and the garden. (**into**)

=> ...

440. Mark had to pay for repairing the CHUYÊN ĐỀ player. => The CHUYÊN ĐỀ player expense.

441. It depends on her whether the costs are to be reimbursed or not. (**up**)

=> ...

442. Everybody is aware that the newspaper is published by the right-wing party.

=> It is common ...

443. What right have you got to give me orders? (... **about?**) => ...

444. The direct aim of the statement is to make the public aware of the present situation.

=> The statement boils ...

445. Sally distrusts modern technology strongly. => Sally has ...

446. He will have to spend seven years in prison. (**sentenced**)

447. We were all convinced Tom would succeed in passing his final exams. (**confidence**)

=> ...

448. My precious life was saved by the lifeguard. => I owe ...

449. We have a debt of gratitude to pay to all those who gave us their support. (**indebted**)

=> ...

450. When did the patient regain consciousness? (... **round**?)

=> ...

Reference: It's a serious operation for a man as old as my father. He is very frail. I hope he

_____.

A. gets away B. comes round C. pulls through D. stands up

451. Even big quantities of vegetables aren't harmful to your health. (**do**)

=> ...

452. The passengers were not allowed to smoke cigarettes during the flight. (**refrain**)

=> ...

453. The handling of the matter has been heavily criticized by the press. (**scorn**)

=> The press ...

454. Brian must do exercise to strengthen his back after the surgery. (**compulsory**)

=> It ...

455. When will the resolutions that we have taken be implemented? (**put**)

=> practice?

456. Mrs. Arnold will take care of our cat while we are away. (**look**)

=> ...

457. I didn't really know whether to accept their engagement or not. (**mixed feelings**)

=> ...

458. Since she met that boy, she's been thinking only about him. (**wrapped**)

=> ...

(Reference: Anna was so _____ in her work that she didn't notice when I came in.

A. absent-minded B. wrapped up C. busy D. concentrating

459. We regret to inform you that there is no more demand for your products.

=> Much to ...

460. Hardly anyone could understand the lecture. (**comprehensible**)

=> ...

461. Finally, the new prime minister has been appointed. (**last**)

462. There were many noisy students in the hall. => The hall was crowded

.....

463. Please send the letter as soon as possible. (**delay**)

=> ...

464. You have to pay two month's rent before you move in. (**advance**)

=> ...

465. We get on very well with our next-door neighbours. (**terms**)
=> ...
466. Everybody wants Pauline as an after-dinner speaker. (**demand**)
=> ...
467. I accidentally picked up the wrong suitcase at the airport. (**mistake**)
=> ...
468. The whole team was in a happy mood. (**spirits**)
=> ...
469. I realized I had said something wrong. (**conscious**)
=> ...
470. You are not lucky today, I'm afraid. (**out**)
=> ...
471. You can't get to the village in winter because of the snow. (**access**)
=> ...
472. I think this word comes from ancient Greek. (**derived**)
=> ...
473. I like to spend a lot of time in the open air. (**doors**)
=> ...
474. I don't think you mean what you say about helping me. (**earnest**)
=> ...
475. It's uncertain whether the band's tour will take place. (**balance**)
=> ...
476. I wish I knew what to do about this problem. (**solution**)
=> ...
478. You can walk to the station easily from the hotel. (**within**)
=> ...
479. Karen received a medal for her services. (**recognition**)
=> ...
480. You have to pay you son's debts as he is under age. (**liable**)
=> ...
481. After trying twice, Ivan broke the record when he tried the third time.
=> Ivan broke the record ...
482. The meeting will probably be cancelled. (**probability**) => ...
483. Considering your position, we won't press charges. (**under**)
=> ...
484. The students are living temporarily in a caravan. => For the ...
485. I intend to discover the truth somehow or the other. => In one ...
486. The soldiers entered the castle while it was dark. => Under ...
487. Speaking for my colleagues, I would like to thank you.
=> On ...

488. I thought you had accepted. => I was under ...

489. Everyone was exhausted apart from Sally. => With ...

490. Whatever happens, we must avoid adverse publicity. (**costs**)
=> ...

491. Nobody expected her to lose, but she did. => Against ...

492. Our science correspondent sees this new information as the answer to many of our problems.
=> According to ...

493. You are not lucky today, I'm afraid. (**out**) => ...

500. I don't want us to have a quarrel. (**you**)
=> ...

cãi nhau với ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.43)

504. Paul went to see the bank manager about getting a loan. (**view**)
=> ...

513. Although the dog appeared harmless, it was, in fact, quite dangerous. (**CONTRARY**)
=> ...

514. Ba only understood very little of what the teacher said. => Ba could hardly ...

515. The drama critic of the "Daily News" regards the new play as a major breakthrough.
=> According to ...

516. The station clock showed half past ten. => According ...

517. His second attempt on the world record was successful. => He broke ...

519. Mrs. Edwards is the owner of that car. => The car ...

520. I thought she bore a strong resemblance to her grandmother. => She reminded ...

521. I take your point. (**accept**) => I ...

522. He's just saying that to prove a point. (**right**) =>

523. He seemed to have already struck up a friendship with Jo. (**begun**)
=> He seemed to have ...

524. The education system bears no comparison with that in many Eastern European countries.
(**as**)
=> The education system is ...

525. Please do not enter the room all together. => Please enter the room one ...

526. I realized immediately that something was wrong. (**once**)
=> ...

527. Good colour sense is instinctive for some people. (**comes**)
=> ...

528. It is my opinion that there is no advantage in further discussion. (**SEE**)
=> ...

529. "Excuse me madam, but is this your bag?" the policeman asked. (**belong**)
=> "Excuse me madam, but?" the policeman asked.

530. She's under the illusion that she'll get the job. => She believes ...

ANSWER KEY

1. We've run out of tea. => There ...

(There's no more tea left.) (DH Hue – Khoi D – chuyen ban 97-98, P.180)

2. I'm sure he took your briefcase by mistake. => I'm sure he didn't ...

(take your briefcase on purpose/ intentionally/ deliberately.) (Hoc Vien QHQT – Khoi D 97-98, P.303)

3. Pamela became popular with young people in the 1950s. => Pamel caught ...

(Pamela caught on with young people in the 1950s. => catch on = become famous/ become popular) (DHNN – 2001-2002, P.62)

4. I won't tolerate this behaviour for a minute longer. => I won't put ...

(I won't put up with this behaviour for a minute longer.) (DH Ngoai Thuong – 2001-2002, P.71)

5. It is essential that the road is finished before next summer. => The road ...

(The road is due to be finished before next summer.=> To be due to do St: phải làm ngay => To be due to be done: phải được làm ngay) (DH Ngoại Thương – 2001-2002, P.71)

6. Yogurt is supposed to be good for you. => Yogurt is supposed to do ...

(Yogurt is supposed to do you good.) (HV Ngân Hàng Phan Văn TP. HCM – 2001-2002, P. 109)

7. Phone me tomorrow please. => Please give ...

(Please give me a call tomorrow.) (DHDL Hung Vương – 2001-2002, P. 164)

8. Do you think women are more careful drivers than men?

=> In your opinion, do women drive ?

(In your opinion, do women drive more carefully than men?) (DHDL Hung Vương – 2001-2002, P. 165)

9. In your opinion, did Romeo really love Juliet? => Do you think ?

(Do you think Romeo really loved Juliet?) (DHDL Hung Vương – 2001-2002, P. 172)

10. I was so furious I just couldn't contain myself. (**express**) => I was so furious ...

(**that I had to express my feelings**)

(**contain oneself**: nén cảm xúc, kiềm chế - **contain one's anger**: nén sự tức giận, kìm nén bức tức - **express one's feelings**: biểu lộ cảm xúc, bày tỏ cảm xúc) => dùng **idioms** + **antonym** (BTHTA 10 – P.104)

11. He takes great delight in proving others wrong. (**enjoys**) => He

(**enjoys proving others wrong**.) (take delight in = enjoy) (BTHTA 10 – P.104)

12. Everyone was surprised to see Geoff leave the party early. (**surprise**)

=> To the party early.

(**everyone's surprise, Geoff left**)

(**To ones's + N**: surprise, knowledge, excitement, amazement, belief...) (BTHTA 10 – P.95)

13. All the witnesses said the accident was my fault. (**blame**)

=> All the witnesses said that the accident.

(**I was to blame for**) (BTHTA 10 – P.95)

- **to blame somebody for something**: đổ lỗi cho ai về việc gì

- **to blame something on somebody**: đổ lỗi về việc gì là do ...)

E.g. He blamed me for his joblessness = He blamed his joblessness on me

ông ấy đổ lỗi cho tôi về việc ông ấy thất nghiệp, ông ấy cho rằng do tôi mà ông ấy thất nghiệp

- **to be to blame for something**: phải chịu trách nhiệm về điều gì, đáng bị khiển trách về điều gì

E.g. Which driver was to blame for the accident? (tài xế nào phải chịu trách nhiệm về tai nạn này?)

14. To Alan's amazement, the passport office was closed when he arrived. (**find**)

=> Alan the passport office closed when he arrived.

(**was amazed to find**) (BTHTA 10 – P.56)

15. Maria said I had caused the accident. (**blamed**) => Maria the accident.

(BTHTA 10 – P.46) => Maria **blamed me for (causing/ having caused) the accident**.

16. He was crossing the road. I caught sight of him. => I noticed ...

(him crossing the road.) (BT TA 11 – P.8)

17. Harry couldn't get his parents' permission to buy a motorbike.

=> Harry's parents didn't let ...

(him buy a motorbike.) (get one's permission to do St) (BT TA 11 – P.8)

18. After fighting the fire for twelve hours the firemen succeeded in extinguishing it.

=> The firemen managed to put ...

(out the fire after fighting it for twelve hours.) (BT TA 12 – P.221)

19. Let's look at the new plan alongside the old one. **(compare)**

=> ...

(Let's compare the new plan with the old one.) (BT TA 12 – P.240)

20. You should just ignore anything Mike says. **(notice)**

=> You should ...

(You should **take no notice of anything Mike says.** / You should not take any notice of anything Mike says.) (BT TA 12 – P.240)

21. Witnesses said the accident was the van driver's fault. **(blamed)** => ...

(Witnesses blamed the van driver for the accident./ blamed the accident on the van driver.) (BT TA 12 – P.240)

22. She has always a good relationship with the children. **(got)**

=> ...

(She has always got on well with the children/ She always get on well with the children.)

(BDHSG TA 11 – P.7) **(get on well with = get along with = have good relationship with: hòa đồng với, có mối quan hệ tốt với ...)**

23. At first the new computer made me feel a bit afraid. **(awe)**

=> ...

(At first I felt/ was made to feel in awe of the new computer.) (in awe of St/Sb: afraid of St/Sb) (BDHSG TA 11 – P.7)

24. William decided that an actor's life was not for him. **(cut)**

=> ...

(William decided that he was not cut out for being an actor/ to be an actor.) (BDHSG TA 11 – P.7)

(cut out for (doing) Sb/St – cut out to be Sb/St (adj): hợp với, có khả năng phù hợp để trở thành ...)

25. I only called the police when I had tried everything else. **(resort)**

=> ...

(I only called the police as a last resort.)

(as a last resort (idm/conj): khi không còn cách nào khác) (BDHSG TA 11 – P.7)

26. Women in this factory work under the same conditions as men. **(terms)**

=> ...

(Women in this factory work on the same terms as men.) (BDHSG TA 11 – P.7)

(on the same terms (as Sb/St): ngang hàng, bình đẳng, như nhau)

27. I assumed that you would ask for a reference. (**granted**)

=> ...

(**I took it for granted that you would ask for a reference.**) (**take it for granted that:** cho rằng, đinh ninh rằng) (BDHSG TA 11 – P.7)

28. You'd feel better if you had a quiet holiday. (**do**) => ...

(**A quiet holiday would do you good.**) (**do Sb good/bad:** tốt cho ai, không tốt cho ai) (BDHSG TA 11 – P.7)

29. Mrs. Scott is proud of her cooking. (**prides**) => ...

(**Mrs. Scott prides herself on cooking.**)

(**be proud of (doing) St = pride oneself on (doing) St:** tự hào) (BDHSG TA 11 – P.7)

30. Gerald never had enough to live on until he married that rich businesswoman. (**short**)

=> ...

(**Gerald was always short of money until he married that rich businesswoman.**) (**Be short of St:** thiếu, không đủ ...) (BDHSG TA 11 – P.7)

31. What Rachel does in her spare time doesn't concern me. (**business**)

=> ...

(**What Rachel does in her spare time is no my business/ none of my business/ no business of mine.**)

(Be no one's business = Be none of one's business = Be no business of one's: không phải việc của ai đó

E.g. - It's no business of yours how much I earn a month.

- Who I go with at the moment is none of your business.) (BDHSG TA 11 – P.7)

32. What I want more than anything is peace and quiet. (**all**)

=> What I want ...

(**above all is peace and quiet. – more than anything = above all (else)**) (BTTA 12 – P.124)

33. I didn't mean to break the vase. (**purpose**) => ...

(**I didn't break the vase on purpose.**) (BTTA 12 – P.124)

34. The police arrived as the thieves were committing the crime. (**red-handed**)

=> ...

(**The police caught the thieves red-handed.**) (**commit the crime:** phạm tội – **catch Sb red-handed:** bắt quả tang) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.56)

35. They arrived at their destination alive and kicking. => ...

(**They arrived at their destination safe and sound.**)

(**alive and kicking = safe and sound:** về đích an toàn, khỏe mạnh) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.56)

36. My jewellery has been stolen! (**off**) => ...

(**Someone has run off with my jewellery.**) (**steal St = run off with St:** lấy hết, ăn cắp hết...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.56)

37. This is the first time I've seen her in my life. (**set**) => ...

(**This is the first time I've set eyes on her in my life.** (**set eyes on Sb** = see Sb: gặp ai ... - keep an eye on Sb = look after Sb = take care of Sb: chăm sóc, trông nom, ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.56, 78)

38. He is different from his brother in almost all respects. (**bears**)

=> ...

(**He bears little resemblance/ hardly any resemblance to his brother.**) (resemble Sb = bear resemblance to Sb = take after Sb: giống ai đó) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.56)

39. Andrew doesn't claim to have a lot of musical talent. (**pretence**)

=> ...

(**Andrew makes no pretence to having a lot of musical talent.**) (claim to do St: quả quyết làm gì – **make (no) pretence to doing St**: kỳ vọng, ra vẻ) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.56)

40. It's unlikely he'll be picked for the Olympic swimming team. (**chances**)

=> ...

(**His chances of being picked for the Olympic swimming team are poor/slim.**) (chance(s) of doing St)

(có lẽ anh ta sẽ không được chọn vào đội bơi Olympic. – Cơ hội để anh ta được chọn vào đội bơi Olympic là rất mong manh.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.57)

41. We were lucky to find somewhere to park so quickly. (**stroke**) => ...

(**It was a stroke of luck that we found somewhere to park so quickly./ Finding somewhere to park so quickly was a stroke of luck.**) (It + be + a stroke of luck + that clause: luckily + clause) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.57)

42. I wonder where Harry is now – I haven't seen him for years. (**become**)

=> ...

(**I wonder what has become of Harry** – I haven't seen him for years. (to become of St/Sb: happen to St/Sb) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.57)

43. This is a subject that Jack and I disagree about. (**eye**)

=> ...

(**This is a subject that Jack and I don't see eye to eye on./ Jack and I don't see eye to eye on this subject.**)

(see eye to eye on St = agree on St => Idiom + antonym) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.57)

44. If you were in the situation I'm in, you'd feel the same. => If you put ...

(**yourself in my place/position/situation, you'd feel the same.** – put oneself in one's position: đặt ai vào vị trí của ai => Condition II) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.57)

45. John was shocked to hear that he had failed his driving test. (**came**)

=> ...

(**It came as a shock/surprise (to John) to hear that he had failed his driving test.**) (John bị sốc khi nghe tin ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.68)

46. Didn't you realize that he was only pretending?

=> Didn't it ...

(**occur to you that he was only pretending?** – It + occur + to Sb + that + clause: nghĩ là, lóe lên, nảy ra ý nghĩ là ... => Bạn không nghĩ là anh ta chỉ đang đùa sao?) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.79)

47. Don't panic about something so trivial. (**mountain**) => ...

(**Don't make a mountain out of a molehill.**)

(**make a mountain out of a molehill, make mountains of molehills**: chuyện bé xé ra to) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.79)

48. What has this experience taught you? => What conclusions ...

(**have you drawn from/as a result of this experience?**) (draw conclusions from: rút ra kết luận, rút ra bài học từ ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.79)

49. To pass the time, I looked through some magazines. => I whiled ...

(**away the time by looking some magazines => To infinitive/ by + Ving => purposes**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.79)

50. The business is hardly making a profit at the moment. (**even**)

=> ...

(**The business is hardly breaking even at the moment.**) (break even: hòa vốn, không lỗ không lãi) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.103)

51. Nowadays goods are often acquired but not paid for immediately. (**credit**)

=> ...

(**Nowadays goods are often bought on credit.**) (buy on credit: mua chịu) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.103)

52. We never purchase small quantities as we would make less profit. (**bulk**)

=> ...

(**We always buy in bulk in order to make more profit.**) (**buy/sell in bulk**: mua/bán sỉ - cả mớ, **make profit (on)**: kiếm lời, kiếm lãi => Chúng tôi chẳng bao giờ mua hàng với số lượng nhỏ vì chúng tôi sẽ kiếm được ít lời. ⇔ Chúng tôi luôn mua hàng với số lượng lớn để kiếm được nhiều lời hơn.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.103)

53. My impression of her is that she is a very effective teacher. (**strikes**)

=> ...

(**She strikes me as (being) a very effective teacher.**) (be impressed by, impression of, strike sb as: cho rằng) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.104)

54. I have frequently made stupid mistakes like that. => Many's ...

(**the time that I have made stupid mistakes like that.**) (**many's the time that**: đã nhiều lần, **many's the + N + who/that ...**: nhiều người/ thứ mà ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.104)

55. We were all shocked by his reaction. => His reaction came ...

(**as a shock to all of us/ to us all.**) (**come as a surprise to Sb**: làm ai ngạc nhiên, **come as a shock to Sb**: làm ai bị sốc) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.57) Xem câu 72 - (BD HSG TA 11 – P.142)

56. The new regulations will begin to apply on June 1st. (**effect**)

=> ...

(**The new regulation (will) take effect / come into effect on June 1st.**) (take effect: có tác dụng, có hiệu lực => luật, văn bản – come into effect: có hiệu lực thì hành => nghị định, ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.118)

57. Being a film star involves making sacrifices in your personal life. (**parcel**)

=> ...

(**Making sacrifices in your personal life is part and parcel of being a film star.**)

(**part and parcel of (doing) St**: là một phần của ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.118)

58. It doesn't seem likely that they'll make him resign. (**likelihood**)

=> ...

There seems (to be) little likelihood that they'll make him resign/ of their making him resign/of his having to resign. (BD HSG TA 11 – P.118)

(be likely that + S + will + V ... ⇔ There's likelihood that ...

seem/appear ... + likely that + S + Will + V ... ⇔ There seem/appear (tense) likelihood that ...: có thể, có khả năng)

59. Julia soon calmed down and explained her problem.

=> ...

(Julia soon pulled herself together and explained her problem.) (pull oneself together = calm down: bình tĩnh lại, lấy lại can đảm, trấn tĩnh lại, tỉnh trí lại) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.118)

60. In her new job, Alison determined to impress everyone from the start. (**mark**)

=> ...

(In her new job, Alison determined to make her mark from the start.) (make one's mark: gây ấn tượng, nổi tiếng, đạt được tham vọng, ... ⇔ impress Sb = make Sb impressed) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.130)

61. I felt vaguely that something was wrong, but what was it? (**back**)

=> ...

(I felt at the back of my mind that something was wrong, but what was it?) (at the back of one's mind: trong thâm tâm, trong tâm trí ⇔ vaguely: ngờ ngợ, nghi ngờ nhưng không chỉ rõ ra được) (Tôi cứ cảm thấy ngờ ngợ là có điều gì đó không ổn, nhưng đó là gì mới được chứ?) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.130)

62. When they broke the news, she stayed perfectly calm and controlled. (**hair**)

=> ...

(When they broke the news, she didn't turn a hair.) (break (the) news: báo tin – stay + adj: giữ ...=> stay calm: giữ bình tĩnh, stay controlled: kiểm chế, kiểm soát được bản thân – turn a hair: nao núng, mất bình tĩnh, sợ hãi) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.130)

63. We agreed that each of us would do the washing-up on alternate days. (**turns**)

=> ...

(We agreed that each of us would take (it in) turns to do the washing-up.)

(take it in turns to do St: thay phiên nhau) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.142)

64. Don't tell the boss anything about this. (**breathe**)

=> ...

(Don't breathe a word of this to the boss. – don't breathe a word of ... to Sb: đừng để lộ điều gì với ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.142)

65. I remained neutral during their disagreement because I liked both of them. (**sides**)

=> ...

(I didn't take sides during their disagreement because I liked both of them.) (take side(s) with Sb: đứng về phía ai, ủng hộ ai, take sides in St: thiên vị trong việc gì, take sides: thiên vị, ủng hộ) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.142)

66. The new musical has delighted theatre audiences throughout the country. (**storm**)

=> ...

(The new musical has taken theatre audiences throughout the country by storm.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.142)

(take Sb/St by storm: đột chiếm; lôi cuốn, cuốn hút, thu hút)

67. His handwriting is illegible, as far as I am concerned. **(out)**

=> ...

(I cannot make out his handwriting at all.) (Tôi không thể đọc được chữ viết của anh ta tý nào cả.)

- **make out St:** nhìn thấy, đọc được, giải thích được, hiểu được - **illegible:** khó đọc (BD HSG TA 11 – P.142)

68. It is rather early for us to make any definite plans. **(stage)** => ...

(We can't make any definite plans at this state.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.142)

- At this stage: vào thời điểm này.

- Be/Go on the stage: làm diễn viên, trở thành diễn viên

69. To put it bluntly, we are making no progress with this rehabilitation scheme. **(standstill)**

=> ...

(This rehabilitation scheme is at a standstill/ comes to a standstill.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.142)

- **be at a standstill = come to a standstill:** bế tắc, chùng lại)

- **rehabilitation:** phục hồi, khôi phục

70. If you wish to complain, you must write a letter. **(writing)**

=> ...

(If you wish to complain, you must do so in writing.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.142)

- **in writing:** bằng văn bản

71. Do you consider Michael one of your best friends? => Do you count ...

(Michael as (being) one of your best friends?) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.142)

- **Consider Sb/St (as) Sb/St** - **Count Sb as Sb ...:** Coi ai như là, xem ai như là

72. We were all shocked by his reaction. => His reaction came

(as a shock to us all.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.142) Xem câu 55

- **St come as a shock/surprise to Sb:** điều gì làm cho ai đó bị sốc, ngạc nhiên

73. Mr. Foster asked me to write this letter to you.

=> It is at ...

(at Mr. Foster's request that I am writing this letter to you) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.142)

- **on request:** khi có yêu cầu - Catalogues are available on request (Các danh mục liệt kê luôn có sẵn khi khách hàng yêu cầu)

- **Do St at someone's request = do St at the request of Sb:** làm gì theo yêu cầu của ai

- It + be + at someone's request that + clause: Theo yêu cầu của

74. Regarding payment, most major credit cards are acceptable.

=> As far as ...

(payment is concerned, most major credit cards are acceptable.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.142)

- Regarding St = about St: về ... thì ...

- As far as St/Sb is concerned: Theo ai, theo cái gì thì ...

- (As) for me: về phần tôi

75. I firmly believe him to be the rudest person I know. (**without**)

=> ...

(**He is without doubt the rudest person I know.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.155)

- **no doubt, without doubt, beyond doubt: firmly/certainly/surely** chắc chắn, không còn nghi ngờ gì nữa

- doubt (v): nghi ngờ, e rằng, tự hỏi

E.g. - I doubt his word. (Tôi nghi ngờ lời nói của anh ta)

- I doubt whether/if it can be done (Tôi (tự hỏi) không biết/ không chắc mình có thể làm được điều đó hay không)

- I doubt we are late. (Tôi e là chúng ta trễ)

- **There's no doubt that + clause ...?????**

76. You may not be able to find a parking space in the city centre.

=> I doubt ...

(**if you will be able to find a parking space in the city centre.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.156)

(Tôi phân vân không biết bạn có tìm được bãi đỗ xe trong trung tâm TP không.)

77. Don't ask him about the accident, he is upset already. (**state**)

=> ...

(**Don't ask him about the accident, he is in the state already.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.156)

(be in the state = be upset = be worried: lo lắng, đau khổ)

78. The senior students believe that they are old enough to choose which classes to attend.

(**regard**)

=> ...

(**The senior students regard themselves as (being) old enough to choose which classes to attend.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.167)

79. Since the company's methods were exposed in a newspaper, people have lost their good opinion of it. (**disrepute**)

=> ...

(**Since the company's methods were exposed in a newspaper, it has fallen into disrepute.**)

(**fall into disrepute**: mang tai tiếng, bị tiếng xấu) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.167)

80. She was so beautiful that I couldn't stop looking at her. (**eyes**)

=> ...

(**She was so beautiful that I couldn't take my eyes off her.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.17)

- take (one's) eyes off Sb: stop looking at Sb: thôi không nhìn ai nữa, thôi không ngắm ai nữa, rời mắt khỏi ai đó

E.g. She is an attractive woman that no one can *take eyes off her* when seeing her.

(Cô ấy quyến rũ đến mức không ai có thể rời mắt khỏi cô ấy một khi đã nhìn thấy cô ta)

81. Winning that prize has made him very conceited. (**head**)

=> ...

(**Winning that prize has gone to his head.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.17)

- go to one's head: make Sb conceited: làm cho ai đó kiêu căng, tự cao tự đại

E.g. He used to be very modest but the recent success in business has *gone to his head*.

(Anh ta trước đây thường rất khiêm tốn nhưng thành công gần đây trong kinh doanh đã khiến anh ấy trở nên kiêu)

82. When he was a child he loved dismantling things – to see how they worked. (**pieces**)

=> ...

(**When he was a child he loved taking things to pieces – to see how they worked.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.18)

- take things to pieces: dismantle things: tháo tung ra từng mảnh

E.g. I liked *taking things such as watches or radios to pieces* to see what there were inside but rarely could I reassemble them. (Tôi thích tháo tung những thứ như đồng hồ hay đài ra từng mảnh để xem có gì bên trong nhưng hiếm khi tôi lắp chúng lại được.)

83. I do wish you'd stop biting your nails, Brian! It really annoys me. (**nerves**)

=> ...

(**I do wish you'd stop biting your nails, Brian! It really *get on my nerves*.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.18)

- Get on one's nerves: annoy Sb: làm ai đó bực mình

E.g. There is a factory near the college where we study and the noise from it gets on our nerves.

(Có một nhà máy ở gần trường đại học và tiếng ồn ở đó làm chúng tôi rất bực mình.)

84. English people in general don't like complaining in public. (**fuss**)

=> ...

(**English people in general don't like *making a fuss* in public.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.18)

85. Could you guard my handbag for me while I go to the toilet? (**eye**)

=> ...

(**Could you *keep an eye on my handbag* for me while I go to the toilet?**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.18)

- Keep an eye on St/Sb = guard St/Sb = Notice St/Sb = take notice of St/Sb: chú ý, để ý

86. She is not really upset; she's only pretending. (**act**)

=> ...

(**She's not really upset; she only *put on an act*.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.18)

- Put on an act: pretend: giả vờ

E.g. I don't think she was so disappointed. She just *put on an act*.

87. We're moving to Bristol next week but we promise to stay in contact with you. (**touch**)

=> ...

(**We're moving to Bristol next week but we promise to *keep in touch*.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.18)

- Stay in contact with Sb: keep in touch with Sb: giữ liên lạc với

- Contact Sb: liên lạc với ...

- Lose contact with Sb: mất liên lạc với = Be out of contact with

- Make contact with: kết nối với ...

- Keep in touch with

- Lose touch with = Be out of touch with: mất liên lạc với, không còn liên lạc được với ...

88. You made an embarrassing mistake when you asked him where his wife was. Didn't you realize she was dead? (**foot**)

=> ...

(**You put your foot in it when you asked him where his wife was. Didn't you realize she was dead?**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.18)

- put one's foot in it: make an embarrassing mistake: nhầm lẫn gây bối rối, sai lầm gây bối rối

E.g. I *put my foot in it* when I told Tuan that Mai was beautiful and that I really liked her. I didn't know that he was her boyfriend.

89. I hate the winter – it really depresses me. (**down**) => ...

(**I hate the winter – it really gets me down.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.18)

90. Many husbands often don't appreciate their wives; and vice-versa. (**granted**)

=> ...

(**Many husbands often take their wives for granted, ad vice-versa.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.18)

- take Sb/St for granted: not appreciate Sb/St: không coi trọng ai, đánh giá không đúng mức về ai

E.g. I used to *take the colleagues at my office for granted* but now I know that it was my biggest mistake.

I used to *take my classmates for granted* but now ...

91. I happen to know the manager of the firm you've applied to for a job. I can recommend you if you like. (**word**)

=> ...

(**I happen to know the manager of the firm you've applied to for a job. I can put in a good word for you if you like.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.18)

- **put in a good word for Sb: recommend Sb:** nói thêm cho, tiến cử, giới thiệu thêm về ...

E.g. If you want to work for T.S.A company, I can *put in a good word for you* because the director is my best friend. (Nếu bạn muốn làm việc cho công ty T.S.A, tôi có thể nói thêm cho bạn một tiếng vì ông giám đốc ở đó là bạn thân của tôi.)

92. "All this happened a long, long time ago," said the history teacher. (**place**)

=> ...

(**"All this took place a long, long time ago," said the history teacher.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.18)

- **take place: happen:** diễn ra E.g. The match will happen at My Dinh Stadium at 3.00 next Sunday.

93. Many people nowadays find it increasingly difficult to exist on the money they earn. (**ends**)

=> ...

(**Many people nowadays find it increasingly difficult to make (both) ends meet.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.18)

- make (both) ends meet: trang trải chi tiêu, lo liệu cho cuộc sống.

94. Telephone me if you feel like going out for a meal one day next week. (**ring**)

=> ...

(**Give me a ring if you feel like going out for a meal one day next week.**) (Give Sb a ring = (tele)phone Sb)

(BD HSG TA 12 – P.18)

95. There's no need for us to hurry; the play doesn't start until 7.30. (**time**)

=> ...

(**We can take our time, the play doesn't start until 7.30.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.18)

- **take one's time**: rủng rỉnh thời gian, ung dung, không cần vội vàng

96. The fact that the President had been a drug addict was not revealed until several years after his death. (**light**)

=> ...

(**The fact that the President had been a drug addict didn't come to light until several years after his death.**)

- **come to light**: ra trước ánh sáng công luận, được làm sáng tỏ, bị phơi bày

- **reveal**: biểu hiện, bày tỏ, tiết lộ

E.g. The embezzlement in this company has *come to light*..

(Vụ tham nhũng tại công ty này đã bị phơi bày ra trước công luận.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.18)

97. I may not come first in the race, but I'll try as hard as I can so as not to come last. (**best**)

=> ...

(**I may not come first in the race, but I'll do my best so as not to come last.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.18)

98. My husband is obsessed with football; it's the only thing he ever think about. (**brain**)

=> ...

(**My husband has football on the brain; it's the only thing he ever think about.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.18)

- **be obsessed by/with St = have St on the brain**: bị ám ảnh về điều gì

E.g. Peter is a librarian but this job is not suitable for him because he *has chances of traveling on the brain*. He should be a tour guide. (... anh ta luôn bị ám ảnh về việc đi du lịch. Anh ta nên trở thành hướng dẫn viên)

99. We're organizing a going-away party for Sue on Saturday. But don't tell her as it's supposed to be a surprise. (**quiet**)

=> ...

(**We are organizing a going-away party for Sue on Saturday. But keep it quiet as it's supposed to be a surprise.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.19)

- Keep St quiet: keep St as a secret: giữ bí mật điều gì

100. If things go wrong, James, whatever you do, don't panic. (**head**)

=> ...

(**If things go wrong, James, whatever you do, don't lose your head.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.19)

- **Panic:** sợ hãi, hoang mang

- **Keep one's head:** điềm tĩnh, bình tĩnh = calm down = put oneself together

- **Lose one's head:** bối rối, hoảng loạn, mất bình tĩnh

101. More than 1000 runners participated in this year's Manchester marathon. (**part**)

=> ...

(**More than 1000 runners took part in this year's Manchester marathon.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.19)

102. The way he took everything she did for granted really annoyed her. (**back**)

=> ...

(**The way he took everything she did for granted really put her back up.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.19)

- **put Sb back up: get on one's nerves: annoy Sb:** làm ai bực mình, làm ai khó chịu.

E.g. I don't mean to *put your back up* but I do think that your composition is the worst.

103. The personnel officer promised him that she wouldn't tell anyone that he had been in prison. (**word**)

=> ...

(**The personnel officer give (him) her word that she wouldn't tell anyone that he had been in prison.**)

- Give (Sb) one's word: promise Sb (BD HSG TA 12 – P.19)

E.g. She told me her story and asked me to *give (her) my word* that I would keep it as a secret.

104. We'd get the job finished much quicker if everyone worked as hard as everyone else. (**weight**)

=> ...

(**We'd get the job finished much quicker if everyone pulled his/her weight.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.19)

(chú ý việc chia động từ, tính từ sở hữu, ... và việc lấy câu hỏi đuôi với các đại từ bất định)

- **pull one's weight:** nỗ lực hết sức, làm tròn trách nhiệm

E.g. We will not finish the construction of this bridge on time if each of us do not *pull our weight*.

105. If you don't like the idea then just say so. I believe you should always speak frankly. (**spade**)

=> ...

(**If you don't like the idea then just say so. I believe you should always call a spade a spade.**)

- **call a spade a spade:** speak frankly: nói thẳng, thẳng tính (BD HSG TA 12 – P.19)

E.g. I really like him and think he is a good friend because whenever I do st wrong he always *calls a spade a spade* which helps me improve myself a lot.

106. My father's going to be really angry when he finds out that I've lost the car keys. (**wall**)

=> ...

(My father's going to *go up the wall* when he finds out that I've lost the car keys.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.20)

- go up the wall: be very angry: nổi giận

E.g. My boss received over ten letters of complaint from the customers this mornings and he really *went up the wall*.

107. Don't pay any attention to what he says; he is only trying to annoy you. (**notice**)

=> ...

(Don't *take any notice of what he says; he is only trying to annoy you.*) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.20)

- take notice of St/Sb = pay attention to St

- take no notice of St/Sb

108. She wasn't speaking seriously. (**TONGUE**) => ...

(She was speaking *with her tongue in her cheek.*) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.71)

- **With one's tongue in one's cheek: not seriously:** không nghiêm túc, mỉa mai, hài hước

109. To the best of my knowledge, Mr. Green's a vegetarian.

=> As far as ...

(I know, Mr. Green's a vegetarian.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.140) Xem câu 144, 153

- The following expressions all mean the same and interchangeable;

1.as far as I know

2.to my knowledge/ understanding

3.to the best of my knowledge/understanding

4. To my belief = It is my belief (that) = I believe (that) + clause

E.g. - It is my belief that technology makes life better

- As far as I know, the meeting was canceled.

110. I find it very easy to speak German. (**EASE**) => ...

(I speak German with ease) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.140)

- **With ease = Easily**

111. I assume you're hungry. (**GRANTED**)

=> ...

(I take it for granted (that) you're hungry.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.152)

- **Take it for granted** = assume: Chắc chắn

112. The book was not as good as he had hoped.

=> ...

(The book failed/ didn't come up to his expectations) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.153)

- **Come up to St:** đạt được mong ước, thỏa lòng kỳ vọng

E.g. The play didn't come up to my expectations.

113. You would benefit from a change. (**GOOD**)

=> ...

(A change would do you good.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.153)

- **Benefit from:** có lợi từ (S benefit from St)

- **Do Sb good:** Làm ai có lợi, làm ai tốt hơn (St do Sb good)

114. I don't care whether you come or not. (DIFFERENCE)

=> ...

(**It makes no difference to me whether you come or not.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.153)

- **Make a/no/any/some ... difference (to Sb/St):** ảnh hưởng, không ảnh hưởng tới ...

E.g. - The rain didn't *make any difference to* the game.

- Your age shouldn't *make any difference to* whether you get the job or not.

- **Make all the difference:** Tạo nên sự khác biệt, làm ai đó cảm thấy tốt hơn, có hiệu quả hơn

E.g. - A few kind words at the right time *make all the difference*. (Một số lời nói đúng th.điểm sẽ có h.quả hơn)

115. Some people will do anything to lose weight. (LENGTHS)

=> ...

(**Some people will go to any lengths to lose weight.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.165)

- **Go to any length(s):** Do anything: Làm bất kỳ điều gì có thể, không gì có thể cản trở được

116. The two theories appear to be completely different. (COMMON)

=> ...

(**The two theories appear to have nothing in common./ have no common ground.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.165)

117. Several members of the committee said they were worried about the chairman's proposals. (concern)

=> ...

(**Several members of the committee expressed concern about the chairman's proposals.**)

- **Express concern about/over (doing) St:** quan tâm, lo lắng về điều gì (BD HSG TA 12 – P.165)

118. Ours is the only company allowed to import these chemicals. (MONOPOLY)

=> ...

(**Our company has/gains (a/the) monopoly of importing these chemicals./ of the import of these chemicals.**)

- **Gain/Have a monopoly of (doing) St:** độc quyền nắm giữ, giành được độc quyền về ... (BD HSG TA 12 – P.165)

119. The coach's tactics were directly responsible for the team's defeat. (CONSEQUENCE)

=> ...

(**The team's defeat was the/a direct consequence of the coach's tactics.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.165)

=> **The team lost as a direct consequence of the coach's tactics.**

120. This new record is certain to sell a lot of copies. (DOUBT)

=> ...

(**Without doubt/There is no doubt that this new record will sell a lot of copies.**)

- **Without doubt = There is no doubt that = Certainly** (BD HSG TA 12 – P.165)

121. You'd feel better if you had a quiet holiday. (DO)

=> ...

(**A quiet holiday would do you good.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.179)

122. With six children to look after, she's extremely busy. (**HANDS**)

=> ...

(**With six children on her hands, she's extremely busy.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.179)

- **On one's hands**: trong tay, chịu trách nhiệm phải cáng đáng

123. The final version of the plan was quite different from the initial draft. (**RESEMBLANCE**)

=> ...

(**The final version of the plan bore no/little resemblance to the initial draft.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.179)

=> **The final version of the plan had no/little/not much resemblance to the initial draft.**

=> **There was no/little resemblance between the final version of the plan and the initial draft.**

- **Bear a resemblance to Sb/St**: giống với)

124. I certainly won't change my mind about resigning. (**QUESTION**)

=> ...

(**There's no question of (my/me) changing my mind about resigning.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.179)

=> **My changing my mind about resigning is out of question.**)

125. He didn't mention our previous conversation at all. (**REFERENCE**)

=> ...

(**He didn't make (any) reference to our previous conversation.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.179)

=> **He made no reference to our previous conversation.**

- **Make reference to St**: Mention St: nhắc đến, đề cập đến

126. Digging the garden always makes me feel hungry. (**GIVES**)

=> ...

(**Digging the garden always gives me an appetite./ give me a good appetite.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.179)

- **Give Sb an appetite**: Làm ai cảm thấy đói, làm ai cảm thấy ngon miệng, làm ai cảm thấy thèm ăn

127. Could you watch my bag while I'm away, please? (**EYE**)

=> ...

(**Could you keep an eye on my bag while I'm away, please?**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.194)

128. We agreed that each of us would do the washing-up on alternate days. (**TURNS**)

=> ...

(**We agreed that each of us would take it in turns to do the washing-up/ would take turns at doing the washing-up.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.194)

- **Take it in turns to do St = Take turns at doing St**: luân phiên/thay phiên nhau làm gì đó

129. Don't tell the boss anything about this. (**BREATHE**)

=> ...

(**Don't breathe a word of this to the boss./ Don't breathe a word to the boss about this.**)

(Đừng nói bất kỳ điều gì với ông chủ. => Đừng tiết lộ bất kỳ điều gì với ông chủ.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.195)

130. They were just as good as we had expected.

=> They certainly lived ...

(**up to our expectations.**) => Chắc chắn họ đã thỏa sự mong đợi/ lòng kỳ vọng ... (BD HSG TA 12 – P.195)

131. Mr. Conrad's son is becoming quite well known as an artist. (**name**)

=> Mr. Conrad's son is making himself as an artist.

(Mr. Conrad's son is making **a name for** himself as an artist.)

(**make a name for oneself = become famous**) (CAE - 1)

132. When it comes to punctuality, Fiona really takes after her mother. (**concerned**)

=> As, Fiona really takes after her mother.

(**As far as punctuality is concerned**, Fiona really takes after her mother.) (CAE - 1)

133. You have to be very patient to work as a primary school teacher these days. (**deal**)

=> Working as a primary school teacher calls these days.

(Working as a primary school teacher calls **for a great/good deal of patience** these days.)

- **call for st:** cần, đòi hỏi (CAE - 1)

134. None of the other team members supposed Terry's idea. (**support**)

=> Terry's idea met with the other members of the team.

(Terry's idea met with **no support from** the other members of the team.) (CAE - 1)

135. If you change any of these arrangements, please be sure to let us know. (**notify**)

=> Please ensure that change in these arrangements.

(Please ensure that **you notify us of any** change in these arrangements.)

- **notify sb of st: t. báo cho ai biết về việc gì** (CAE - 1)

136. I'm going to eat less chocolate this year. (**down**)

=> I'm going of chocolate I eat this year.

(I'm going **to cut down (on) the amount/ quantity** of chocolate I eat this year.)

- **cut down on st: giảm ...** (CAE - 1)

137. When it comes to computer games, Gareth is a real expert. (**CONCERNED**)

=> As, Gareth is a real expert.

(**As far as computer games are concerned**, Gareth is a real expert.) (CAE - 3)

138. The reduction in the price of the magazines led to a growth in sales. (**RESULT**)

=> Sales of the magazine reduction in the price.

(Sales of the magazine **grew/ increased as a result of** the reduction in the price.) (CAE - 3)

139. Phoebe was surprised to be offered a place on the course. (**CAME**)

=> The offer of a place on the course Phoebe.

(The offer of a place on the course **came as a surprise to** Phoebe.) (CAE - 3)

140. The company is almost certain to get the contract. (**EVERY**)

=> The company stands the contract.

(The company stands **every chance of getting/winning** the contract.) (CAE - 3)

- **Have a (good) chance of doing St**: có cơ hội # **Have no chance of doing St**: không có cơ hội, khả năng ...

- **Stand a chance of doing St**: có khả năng, có cơ may => **Stand every chance of doing St**: chắc chắn có thể

141. Julia says that her sister is the only person to know of our plans to get married. (**APART**)

=> Julia says that knows of our plans to get married.

(Julia says that **no one/ nobody apart from her sister** knows of our plans to get married.)

(CAE - 3)

(Julia says that **apart from her sister, nobody/no one** knows of our plans to get married.)

- **Apart from Sb = Except for Sb**: ngoại trừ

142. Sven would have called yesterday if he had had more time. (**SHORT**)

=> Sven didn't call yesterday time.

(Sven didn't call yesterday **because/ since/ as/ he was short of** time.) (CAE - 3)

- **Be short of St**: thiếu, có ít ... = **have a shortage of St...**: có ít, thiếu ...

143. In his speech, the Principal did not mention the new language courses. (**REFERENCE**)

=> In his speech, the Principal the new language courses.

(In his speech, the Principal **didn't make any reference to/ made no reference to** the new language courses.)

- **Make reference to St** = Mention St: nhắc tới, đề cập tới (CAE - 3)

144. Lucy was very pleased to be given an award. (**DELIGHT**)

=> Much to given the award.

(Much to **Lucy's delight, she was** given the award./ **her delight, Lucy was**)

- **To be delighted = (much) to one's delight**: Rất vui, rất phấn khởi (CAE - 3) Xem câu 109, 153

145. Sam never thought of asking me for my advice. (**OCCURRED**)

=> It me for my advice.

(It **never occurred to Sam to ask** me for my advice.) (CAE - 3)

- **It + occur + to Sb + that clause/ to Inf**: Ai đó chợt nảy ra ý nghĩ rằng, nghĩ rằng, nghĩ về việc ...

146. The weather was getting worse, so Joe was forced to give up his attempt to climb to the summit. (**BUT**)

=> Due to the worsening weather, Joe had to give up his attempt to climb to the summit.

(Due to the worsening weather, Joe had **little/no (other) choice/alternative/option but** to give up his attempt to climb to the summit (đỉnh cao nhất). (CAE - 4))

- **Have little choice but (to) do St = Have no choice but (to) do St**: không còn cách nào khác ngoài việc phải ...

=> **choice = alternative = option** (- Compare: Have nothing to do but/except watch T.V)

E.g.

- Caught in the act, he had no alternative but to confess.
(bị bắt quả tang, nó không còn cách lựa chọn nào khác là phải thú nhận)
- I have little option but to go.
(tôi không có sự lựa chọn nào khác là phải ra đi)
- he had no choice but to resign.
(ông ấy không còn sự lựa chọn nào ngoài việc từ chức (ông ấy không còn cách nào khác hơn là phải từ chức))

147. What are your plans for celebrating Nina's birthday? (**MIND**)

=> What for celebrating Nina's birthday?

(What (**plans**) **do you have in mind** for celebrating Nina's birthday? (CAE - 4))

- **Keep/Bear/Have St in mind**: ghi nhớ

- **Have St in mind for doing St**: có kế hoạch làm gì, dự định làm gì, dự tính làm gì => **Plan to do St**

148. Once the visitors had gone, Rachel started her homework immediately. (**DOWN**)

=> Once the visitors had gone, Rachel immediately her homework.

(Once the visitors had gone, Rachel immediately **got down to/ sat down to/ settled down to (do)** her homework. (CAE - 4))

149. Pierre's presentation showed he was against the proposed takeover. (**OBJECTED**)

=> In his presentation, Pierre made it the proposed takeover.

(In his presentation, Pierre made it **clear/obvious that he objected to** the proposed takeover. (CAE - 4))

- **Make it clear/obvious + that clause**: làm rõ ràng, chỉ rõ ràng, nói rõ ràng

150. After a sleepless night, Marta finally decided that she wouldn't accept the job she had been offered. (**MIND**) => After a sleepless night Marta finally accept the job she had been offered.

(After a sleepless night Marta finally **made up her mind not to / made her mind up not to** accept the job she had been offered. (CAE - 4))

151. Although Joe kept on attempting to contact his cousin, he didn't manage to speak to her until the next day. (**TOUCH**)

=> Despite repeated his cousin, Joe didn't manage to speak to her until the next day.

(Despite repeated **attempts/efforts to get in touch with** his cousin, Joe didn't manage to speak to her until the next day.) (CAE - 4) => Idiom + style

- **Get in touch with Sb**: liên lạc với E.g. I'm trying to *get in touch with* Jane. Do you have her number?

- **Be/Stay/Keep in touch with Sb**: còn giữ liên lạc với, ...

152. David said that the accident was his fault. (**TOOK**)

=> David the accident.

(David **took responsibility/blame for** the accident. (CAE - 4))

- **Be to blame for (doing) St** ⇔ **Be responsible for (doing) St**
⇔ **Take the responsibility/ the blame for (doing) St:** Chịu trách nhiệm

153. I was bitterly disappointed they didn't give me a part in the school play. (**BITTER**)

=> To given a part in the school play.

(To **my bitter disappointment, I was not** given a part in the school play. (Xem câu 144, 109))

154. We owe it to him that the campaign has been a success. => We owe the ...

(**We owe the success of the campaign to him.**)

155. The loss of his job turned out to be a good thing. => It ...

(**It turned out to be a good thing that he lost his job.**)

156. I owe it to him that I was promoted so rapidly. => I owe my ...

(**I owe my rapid promotion to him.**)

157. I'll leave it to you which brand we choose. => I'll leave the ...

(**I'll leave the choice of brand to you.**)

158. He was very proud of his musical talent. => He prided ...

(**He prided himself on his musical talent.**)

159. Both the scientists ignored the dangerous implications of the experiment.

=> Neither ...

(**Neither of the scientists took any notice of the dangerous implications of the experiment.**)

160. He couldn't stop quickly enough to avoid the accident. **time**

=> He couldn't the accident.

(**..... stop in time to avoid**)

161. He took two hours deciding which seeds to buy. **mind**

=> He took two hours which seeds to buy.

(**..... to make / making up his mind**)

162. Tom was definitely first in the queue. **doubt**

=> There's first in the queue.

(**..... no doubt (that) Tom was**)

163. Mary knows a lot of people in France. **acquaintances**

=> Mary In France.

(**..... has a lot of acquaintances**)

164. Anthony travelled to Spain. **journey**

=> Anthony to Spain.

(**..... made a journey / went on a journey**)

165. I couldn't bear the noise any longer. **put**

=> I couldn't the noise any longer.

(**..... put up with**)

166. I told John to bring his problems to me. **come**

=> I told John his problems.

(**..... to come to me**)

167. I slowed down at the traffic lights. **speed**

=> I at the traffic lights.

(..... **reduced my speed**)

168. I couldn't understand what I was reading. **sense**

=> I couldn't what I was reading.

(..... **make sense of** ...)

169. John's students always respected him. **looked**

=> John by his students. (John **was always looked up to** by his students.)

170. It's impossible to lend you any more money, I'm afraid. **question**

=> Lending you any more money , I'm afraid.

(Lending you any more money **is out of the question**, I'm afraid.)

171. Can you understand what this paper means? **sense** => Can you this paper?

(Can you **make sense of** this paper?)

172. All I want you to do is to look after my dog. **care** => All I want you to do is to my dog.

(All I want you to do is to **take care of** my dog.)

173. She decided to visit her friend and tell her the news. **drop**

=> She decided to her friend and tell her the news.

(She decided to ...**drop in on**... her friend and tell her the news.)

174. We have to reduce our expenses. **cut** => We have to our expenses.

(We have to**cut down on**..... our expenses.)

175. John cannot possibly borrow the car tonight. **question**

=> It's for John to borrow the car tonight.

(It's ...**out of the question**... for John to borrow the car tonight.)

176. Could I continue what I was doing? **get** => Could I what I was doing?

(Could I ...**get on with**... what I was doing?)

177. I can't make up my mind about the colour. **decide** => I the colour.

(I ...**cannot decide on**..... the colour.)

178. There are times when you have to do things by yourself. **own**

=> There are times when you have to do things

(There are times when you have to do things ...**on your own**....)

179. There was no one here except John. **apart** => There was no one here John.

(There was no one here **apart from** John.)

180. How likely is she to win the race? **chances** => What the race?

(What are her chances of winning the race?)

181. The only question I had wrong was question seven. **except**

=> I had _____
question seven

(I had every question/all the questions/ everything right except question seven)

182. I don't think I'll go to Jane's party on Saturday. **doubt**

=> I _____ to Jane's party on Saturday.

(I doubt if/whether I'll go to Jane's party on Saturday.)

183. Everyone has heard about the canals in Amsterdam. **famous** => Amsterdam
_____ canals.

(Amsterdam is famous for (its) canals.)

184. Robert has not had a job for two years. **out** => Robert has
..... for two years.

(Robert has been | out of work/a job for two years.)

185. Mehmet has a good relationship with his neighbours. **(get)**

=> Mehmet _____ his neighbours.

(Mehmet **gets on well with** his neighbours.)

186. The escalator isn't working; please use the stairs instead. **(out)**

=> The escalator _____; please use the stairs instead.

(The escalator is out of order;.....)

187. Do u think that climate affects people's personalities? **(influence)**

=> Do u think that climate people's personalities?

(Do u think that climate.... **has influence on** people's personalities?)

188. Jack has become confident as a result of his success. **(turned)**

=> Jack's success has person.

(Jack's success has.. **turned him into a confident** person.)

189. The only person I didn't see was Jane. **except** => I
..... Jane.

(I saw everyone except Jane.)

190. He knows everything about flowers. **expert** => He
..... flowers.

(He ... is an expert on ... flowers.)

191. If you are not old enough you cannot watch certain films. **age**

=> If you you cannot watch certain films.

(If you ... are under age you cannot watch certain films.)

192. The burglar managed to escape without punishment. **get**

=> The burglar managed to punishment.

(The burglar managed to ... get away without punishment.)

193. I was lucky you let me stay with you for the night. **put** => I was lucky you
..... for the night.

(I was lucky you put me up for the night.)

194. It was very kind of them to help us. **grateful** => We
_____ for their help.

(We **were grateful to them** for their help.)

195. My uncle had never been abroad before. **trip** => It was
_____ abroad.

(It was **my uncle's first trip** abroad.)

196. David lives quite near the station. **far**

=> David **doesn't live (very) far from / lives not very far from** the station.

(David **doesn't live (very) far from / lives not very far from** the station.)

197. I couldn't remember the name of my hotel when I got into the taxi. (**called**)

=> I couldn't remember _____

when I got into the taxi.

(I couldn't remember **what the name of my hotel was called**when I got into the taxi.)

198. "Are you a member of the club"? The receptionist said to me. (**belonged**)

=> The receptionist asked me _____

(The receptionist asked me ... **if I belonged to the club**)

199. Sarah cried her eyes out immediately she was told she'd failed her driving test. **BROKE**

=> Sarah _____ soon as she heard she'd failed her driving test.

(**broke down in tears as**)

200. The Government recently said our problems are the fault of the worldwide economic slowdown. **PLACED**

=> The Government have _____ the worldwide economic slowdown for our problems.

(**placed the blame on**)

201. You led me to believe the job was mine if I wanted it. **IMPRESSION**

=> I _____ that the job was mine if I wanted it.

(**was left with the impression/was given the impression/had the impression**)

202. Feel free to telephone if you have any further problems. **CALL**

=> Do not _____ if you have any further problems.

(**hesitate to call us/ hesitate to give us a call/ hesitate to call**)

203. When you do decide what you want to do please let us know. **MIND**

=> When _____ what you want to do please let us know.

(**you have made up your mind/ you've made up your mind**)

204. How can I make him understand that I don't want to see him any more? **ACROSS**

=> How can I _____ that I don't want to see him any more?

(**get the message across/get the message across to him/get it across**)

205. Parents predict chaos in schools unless the strike is called off. **RESULT**

=> Parents claim it _____ the teacher's strike goes ahead.

(**will result in chaos if**)

206. Police are warning people to check for forged notes which are currently in circulation.
LOOKOUT

=> Police are warning people to be forged notes which are currently in circulation.

(on the lookout for)

207. It's possible that they got the wrong idea and thought the party was next week.
REACHED

=> They might conclusion and thought the party was next week.

(have reached the wrong/ 've reached the wrong)

208. It was a mistake not to write the telephone number down. POINT
=> I should writing down the telephone number.

(have made a point of/ 've made a point of)

209. You could have been seriously injured not wearing a seat belt. THINK
=> You should seriously injured not wearing a seat belt.

(think yourself lucky you were not/ think yourself lucky you weren't)

210. Would you give us your answer as soon as possible. CONVENIENCE
=> Please respond

(at your earliest convenience)

211. It's not likely to happen but if you're not satisfied with the product we'll refund your money. EVENT

=> that you are not satisfied with the product your money will be refunded.

(in the unlikely event)

212. It's one thing to think there's a demand for your product and another to actually make a sale. WORLD

=> There's between thinking there's a demand for your product and actually making a sale.

(a world of difference)

213. I'm sure we went the wrong way at the last junction. TAKEN
=> We must at the last junction.

(have taken the wrong turning/ 've taken the wrong turning/ have taken the wrong turn/ 've taken the wrong turn)

214. I'm so sorry, I didn't realise it was so late. TRACK => Sorry, I time.

(lost track of the/completely lost track of the)

215. I don't care what you do. concerned => As
you can do what you like.

(far as I am concerned/far as I'm concerned)

216. He was ordered to leave the field for arguing with the referee. sent
The referee for arguing.

(sent him off/sent him off the field)

217. Do you and your brother have the same looks? **like** => Does
..... you?

(your brother look like)

218. His boss won't tolerate lateness. **put** => His boss won't
 lateness.

(put up with)

219. The disappearance of the reports was not my fault. => I was

(I was **not to blame** / **not responsible** for the disappearance of the reports.)

220. Sarah cried her eyes out immediately she was told she'd failed her driving test. **BROKE**

=> Sarah soon as she heard she'd failed her driving test.

(BROKE DOWN IN TEARS AS) => Xem câu 199

221. The Government recently said our problems are the fault of the worldwide economic slowdown. **PLACED**

=> The Government have the worldwide economic slowdown for our problems.

(PLACED THE BLAME ON)

222. When you do decide what you want to do please let us know. **MIND**

=> When what you want to do please let us know.

(YOU HAVE MADE UP YOUR MIND)

223. We must take as much advantage as possible of any opportunity to speak English. **MOST**

=> We have any opportunity to speak English.

(to make the most of)

224. What's the answer to sixteen minus eight? **AWAY**

=> If you sixteen, what's the answer?

(take eight away/away eight from)

225. Three hundred students entered the swimming competition last year. **PART**

=> Three hundred students the swimming competition
last year.

(took part in)

226. There will be no more oil available in this area in 2030. **RUN**

=> Oil supplies in this area by the year 2031.

(will (have) run out)

227. My sister doesn't like computer games very much. **KEEN**

=> My sister computer games.

(isn't/is not very keen on)

228. Bob hadn't seen his uncle for several years. **GONE**

=> After several years, Bob saw his uncle again.

(had gone by)

230. I'm not going to tolerate this untidiness any longer. **UP**

=> I have no intention this untidiness any longer.

(**of putting up with**)

231. It's ages since my sister and I had an argument. **OUT** => My sister and I ages.

(**haven't/have not fallen out for**)

233. The problem we were faced with was a serious one. **CAME**

=> The problem we was a serious one.

(**came up against**)

234. The tourist trade is much better now than it was last month. **PICKED**

=> The tourist trade noticeably since last month.

(**has picked up: phục hồi, lấy lại được ...**)

235. Physical exercise won't hurt you if you are careful. **DO**

=> Physical exercise won't if you are careful.

(**do you any harm**)

236. It was not a good idea for you to refuse the offer of that job. **DOWN**

=> You should the offer of that job.

(**not have turned down**)

237. Will your neighbours look after your dog when you go away? **TAKE**

=> Do you know if your neighbours your dog when you go away?

(**will take care of**)

238. While we were going home, we had an accident. **WAY**

=> We home when we had an accident.

(**were on our way**)

240. Susan has had no success with her plans to work abroad, unfortunately. **THROUGH**

=> Susan's plans to work abroad , unfortunately.

(**have fallen through**)

241. Whatever you do, don't lift that heavy suitcase. **UP**

=> I'd advise you not that heavy suitcase.

(**to pick up**)

242. You should not think that the accident was your fault. **BLAME**

=> It would be wrong for the accident.

(**to blame yourself/yourselfs**)

244. The runners had a difficult time competing in the race. **PART**

The runners who ----- the race had a difficult time.

(**took part in**)

245. Do you know when the competition is being held next year? **PLACE**

=> When next year?

(is the competition taking place)

246. The owner established the company in 2001. **UP**

=> The company the owner in 2001.

(was set up by)

247. It is difficult for Paul to decide what to do. **MIND**

=> Paul finds it difficult what to do.

(/to make up his mind/to make his mind up)

248. Bad weather delayed the building project for several weeks. **SET**

=> The building project for several weeks by the bad weather.

(was set back)

249. Sara cleaned every bit of her room before her cousin came to stay. **TOP**

=> Sara cleaned her room before her cousin came to stay.

(from top to bottom)

250. Leaving school made me realise that my childhood was over. **BROUGHT**

=> Leaving school me that my childhood was over.

(brought it home to)

251. I never find time to tidy my desk. **ROUND**

=> I never my desk.

(get round to tidying)

252. The boats began to move slowly out of the harbour. **WAY**

=> The boats slowly out of the harbour.

(made their way)

253. It is not my fault that the glass broke. **BLAME** => You cannot
..... the glass.

(blame me for breaking)

254. Bad weather makes me feel really unhappy in the winter. **DOWN**

=> Bad weather in the winter.

((really) gets me down)

255. Fog delayed my flight to Moscow this morning. **UP**

=> My flight to Moscow this morning.

(was held up by fog)

256. Help was urgently needed in the flooded area of the country. **NEED**

=> They were in the flooded area of the country.

(in urgent need of help) => Sự giúp đỡ được cần đến/đòi hỏi khẩn cấp ở các khu vực lũ lụt trong cả nước.

257. While we were going home yesterday we got caught in a thunderstorm. **WAY**

(on our way home)

=> Do you know if Mary ----- about moving to the countryside?

259. The date for the Barcelona Conference is the 23rd of March. **PLACE**

(takes place/will take place/is taking place on)

=> There for this type of music.

262. Our spending will have to be reduced next year. **BACK**

(to cut back on = cut down on St)

=> There minds of the children that the film would be fantastic.

264. They are moving our oral examination to an earlier date. **FORWARD**

(is being brought/moved forward)

=> Helmets must be worn when riding a motorcycle.

266. I thought parking was allowed here. **under the impression**

(I was under the impression that parking was allowed here.)

=> She continued to cry until he

268. I'm afraid that car is just too expensive. **means** => That car is

(That car is **beyond my means.**)

=>, Donata is coming to visit next weekend.

(By the way, Donata is coming to visit next weekend.)

270. Luckily, Peter wasn't charged with an offence when the police caught him stealing the first time. **off**

=> Peter was very lucky because he **was let off**.

(Peter was very lucky because he **was let off**.)

271. You should feel horrible! Why did you say that to Jacek? **shame**

=>! Why did you say that to Jacek?

(**Shame on you/What a shame!** Why did you say that to Jacek?)

272. The authorities said she wasn't responsible for the accident. **fault**

=> The accident

(The accident **wasn't her fault**.)

273. He didn't want to join in the celebrations. **take** => He didn't want
..... the celebrations.

(He didn't want **to take part in** the celebrations.)

274. If you don't know how to spell the word, why don't you check in the dictionary? **up**

=> Why don't you **look the word up** in the dictionary?

(Why don't you in the dictionary?)

275. The concert was horrible. **time** => The concert was a complete
.....

(The concert was a complete **waste of time**.)

276. As the class representative I would like to welcome you. **behalf**

=> I'd like to welcome you the class.

(I'd like to welcome you **on behalf of** the class.)

277. He escaped using a disguise. **means** => He escaped
..... a disguise.

(He escaped **by means of** a disguise.)

277. She has probably found a new job. **likely** => It a new job.

(It **is likely she has found** a new job.)

278. I don't agree with prohibiting smoking in bars. **favour**

=> I'm not prohibiting smoking in bars.

(I'm not **in favour of** prohibiting smoking in bars.)

279. She didn't accept his marriage proposal. **down** => She
.....

(She **turned his marriage proposal down**.)

280. Can you look after the kids this afternoon? **of**

=> Can you the kids this afternoon?

(Can you **take care of** the kids this afternoon?) – look after = take care of = keep an eye on)

281. He acts like a poor man even if he has a lot of money. **fact**

=> Even though he acts like a poor man, he has a lot of money.

(Even though he acts like a poor man, he **in fact** has a lot of money.)

282. I didn't mean to break that vase. **on** => I didn't break that vase
.....

(I didn't break that vase **on purpose**.)

283. William says Harold is responsible. **according** => It's Harold'sWilliam.

(It's Harold's **responsibility according to** William.)

284. I think we need to get a new car. **in** => We need to get a new car

(We need to get a new car **in my opinion**.)

285. Many people were delayed because of the traffic jam. **number**

=> were delayed by the traffic jam.

(A **number of people** were delayed by the traffic jam.)

286. Can you describe him to me? **like** => What

(What **is he like/does he look like?**)

287. He looks like another person who works here. **else**

=> He reminds who works here.

(He reminds **me of someone else** who works here.)

288. He took his old car to the car showroom and bought a new one instead. **changed**

=> He a new one at the car showroom.

(He **changed his old car for** a new one at the car showroom.)

289. My new car is too big for this garage. **Get** => I can't this garage.

(I can't **get my new car into** this garage.)

290. Everyone behaves respectfully towards Jane, although she's very young. **treats**

=> Everyone, although she's very young.

(Everyone **treats Jane with respect**, although she's very young.)

291. She was one of my friends when I was at junior school. **friend**

=> She used mine when I was at junior school.

(She used **to be a friend of** mine when I was at junior school.)

292. I'll phone you when I've finished. **Soon** => I'll give as I've finished.

(I'll give **you a ring / call as soon** as I've finished.)

293. I'll contact you as soon as I get back from holiday. **touch**

=> As soon as I get back from holiday, I'll you.

(As soon as I get back from holiday, I'll **get in touch with** you.)

294. There are seven different films for us to choose from at the cinema. **choice**

=> We have seven different films at the cinema.

(We have **a choice of** seven different films at the cinema.)

295. Golf would be a way for you to get some exercise. **take**

=> You should order to get some exercise.

(You should **take up golf in** order to get some exercise.)

296. There's no food left in the house. **run** =>

We _____ food.

(We _____ **have run out of** _____ food.)

297. It's ages since anyone has thought of a good story. **up**

=> No one _____ a good story for a long time.

(No one _____ **has come up with** _____ a good story for a long time.)

298. Don't blame me for your accident. **fault** => It wasn't

_____ an accident.

(It wasn't _____ **my fault (that) you had** _____ an accident.)

299. Kathy was the only person who was happy with the result. **apart**

=> Nobody _____ happy with the result.

(Nobody _____ **apart from Kathy was** _____ happy with the result.)

300. June was sure there were no mistakes in her homework. (**nothing**)

=> June was surewith her homework.

(June was sure **that there's nothing wrong** with her homework.)

301. The staff in that office all have great respect for their boss. (**look**)

=> The staff in that office alltheir boss.

(The staff in that office all **look up to** their boss. => **look up to sb**: to admire and respect someone:

He'd always looked up to his uncle.)

302. We need to think about how old the house is when making our decision. (**account**)

=> ...

(**We need to take into account how old the house is when making our decision.**)

take into account (ALSO **take account of**)

to consider or remember when judging a situation:

E.g.

- I hope my teacher will *take into account* the fact that I was ill just before the exams when she marks my paper.

- A good architect *takes into account* the building's surroundings.

- Britain's tax system *takes no account of* children.

- I think you have to *take into account that* he's a good deal younger than the rest of us.

303. The boys laughed at the man in spite of his old age. (**fun of**)

=> ...

(**The boys made fun of the man in spite of his old age.**)

304. You are all welcome to take any food you like. => Help

(**Help yourselves to any food you like.**)

305. Did the children enjoy themselves during the performance? (**good time**)

=> ...

(**Did the children have a good time during the performance?**)

306. We haven't had any message from him since March. (**heard**)

=> ...

(We haven't heard from him since March.)

307. Our representatives have been criticizing the new concept. **(critical)**

=> ...

(Our representatives have been critical of the new concept.)

308. I'll go upstairs to find out if they have already vacated the rooms. **(sure that)**

=> ...

(I'll go upstairs to make sure that they have already vacated the rooms.)

309. We haven't contacted each other for several months. **(touch)**

=> ...

(We haven't been in touch with each other for several months.)

310. Mr. Thompson's opinion of these innovations is rather low. **(much of)**

=> ...

(Mr. Thompson does not think much of these innovations.)

311. Each of us has tried to comfort the depressed patient. **(attempt)**

=> ...

(Each of us has made an attempt at comforting the depressed patient/ to comfort the depressed patient.)

312. Father doesn't want you to keep these disgusting insects. **(rid)**

=> ...

(Father wants you to get rid of these disgusting insects.)

313. One of the relatives has made a statement for the mourning parents on television. **(behalf)**

=> ...

(One of the relatives has made a statement on behalf of the mourning parents on television.)

314. At least some of you may be obliged to sign the agreement. **(under)**

=> ...

(At least some of you may be under an obligation to sign the agreement.)

315. Suddenly, the baby started to cry and nobody knew what to do about it. **(burst)**

(Suddenly, the baby burst out crying and nobody knew.../ into tears and nobody knew what to do about it.)

316. Certainly, drinking too much alcohol can be harmful to your health. **(do)**

=> ...

(Certainly, drinking too much alcohol can do harm to your health.)

317. Only a few Members of Parliament voted for the reforms. **(favour of)**

=> ...

(Only a few Members of Parliament voted in favour of the reforms.)

318. He said he was sorry for what he had said to the customer. **(apologies)**

=> ...

(He offered/ expressed his apologies for what he had said to the customer.)

319. However unfavourable our position is, we mustn't surrender. **(bold face)**

=> ...

(However unfavourable our position is, we must put a bold face on it.)

320. I can't lend you any money as I don't have much myself. **(short)**

=> ...

(I can't lend you any money as I am short of it myself.)

321. How much did you have to pay for their service? **(owe)** => ...

(How much did you owe them for their service?)

322. We were surprised to learn that Brian had become a monk.

=> It came ...

(It came as a surprise to us that Brian had become a monk.)

323. This loud music makes me nervous. (... **my nerves.**) => ...

(This loud music gets on my nerves.)

324. I can't understand a bit of what he says. **(any sense)** => ...

(I can't make any sense of what he says.)

325. Hats like this aren't fashionable any longer. **(date)** => ...

(Hats like this are out of date.)

326. Stanley is rather fearful of the new algebra teacher. **(awe of)** => ...

(Stanley is rather in awe of the new algebra teacher.)

327. I'm sorry, I didn't intend to take your book home. (... **accident.**)

=> ...

(I'm sorry, I took your book home by accident.)

328. Our father will probably stay longer in Rome than he expected. **(probability)**

=> ...

(There is a probability that our father will stay longer in ... than .../ In all probability, our father will ...)

329. The patient's quick recovery after so serious an accident was amazing. **(made)**

=> ...

(The patient made an amazingly quick recovery after so serious an accident.)

330. What was the reason for the engine's breakdown?

=> Why wrong?

(Why has the engine gone wrong?)

331. Haven't you ever had the idea that you could emigrate? **(occurred)**

(Hasn't it ever occurred to you that you could emigrate?)

332. I doubt whether it will stop raining till afternoon. => It is ...

(It is doubtful whether it will stop raining till afternoon.)

333. Sorry, we haven't got any more free tickets. (... **left.**) => ...

(Sorry, we haven't got any free tickets left.)

334. Celine has always been fond of classical music. **(taste)**

=> ...

(Celine has always had a taste for classical music.)

335. Peter and his roommate differ from each other a lot. (... **common**.)

=> ...

(Peter and his roommate have nothing in common.)

336. Nobody helps this old man with chopping the wood. (... **himself**.)

=> ...

(This old man chops the wood (by) himself.)

337. The jury said Mr Cutter was guilty of misappropriating a huge sum of money. (**found**)

=> ...

(The jury found Mr. Cutter guilty of misappropriating a huge sum of money.)

338. The secretary said my explanation was unbelievable. (**beyond**)

=> ...

(The secretary said my explanation was beyond belief.)

339. They cannot watch this film because they aren't adult yet. (**under**)

=> ...

(They cannot watch this film because they are still under age.)

340. Is Eddie **familiar** with the consequences of his irrational behaviour? (**aware**)

=> ...

(Is Eddie aware of the consequences of his irrational behaviour?)

341. She always speaks about her children's achievements with great pride. (**boasts**)

=> ...

(She always boasts about her children's achievements.)

342. The police were only able to break the riots using force. (**means**)

=> ...

(The police were only able to break the riots by means of force.)

343. The existence of the polar bear is endangered. (... **stake**.) => ...

(The existence of the polar bear is at stake.)

344. The only person responsible for the breakdown was Eric. (**to blame**)

=> Eric ...

(Eric was the only person to blame for the breakdown.)

345. Has anybody been hurt in the road collision? => Has anybody come ...

(Has anybody come to any harm in the road collision?)

346. I met Stanley by chance in the department store. (**across**) => ...

(I came/ ran across Stanley in the department store.)

347. Julia isn't to blame for the negligence by any means.

=> By no means ...

(By no means is Julia to blame for the negligence.)

348. From time to time, we spend our weekends at the lake.

=> We again.

(We spend our weekends at the lake time/ now and again.)

349. Susan admits she didn't have a good time at the banquet at all.

=> enjoy least.

(Susan admits she didn't enjoy (herself at) the banquet in the least.)

350. I knew nothing about the rebellion that they were planning. **(dark)**

=> ...

(I was (kept) in the dark about the rebellion that they were planning.)

351. Several runners have withdrawn from the race because of health problems. **(backed)**

=> ...

(Several runners have backed out of the race because of health problems.)

352. Who is going to dismantle this engine? (... **pieces?**)

=> ...

(Who is going to take this engine to pieces?)

353. Despite numerous mistakes in the procedures, the trial is still being continued. (... **progress**)

=> ...

(Despite numerous mistakes in the trial procedures, it is still in progress.)

354. The other day, I was fined for exceeding the speed limit. **(beyond)**

=> ...

(The other day I was fined for driving beyond the speed limit. => Beyond St: Vượt quá ...)

355. I am not responsible for your misfortunes. => Your
..... fault.

(Your misfortunes are not my fault.)

356. He would do almost anything to win the girl's hand. **(lengths)**

=> ...

(He would go to any length to win the girl's hand.)

357. Who's going to supervise our section? **(in charge)** => ...

(Who's going to be in charge of our section?)

358. My son attaches great importance to eating healthy food. **(makes much)**

=> ...

(My son makes much of eating healthy food.)

359. Alice couldn't remember the caller's identity. (... **recall.**)

=> ...

(The caller's identify was beyond Alice's recall.)

360. Does your mother want a soft drink? **(care)** => ...

(Does your mother care for soft drink?)

361. It was a long time ago when horsecars were replaced by motor vehicles. **(place)**

=> ...

(It was a long time ago when motor vehicles took the place of horsecars.)

362. When the official part of the meeting ended, everyone rushed to the buffet. **(close)**

=> ...

(When the official part of the meeting came to a close, every one rushed to the buffet.)

363. Patrick is not feeling healthy today. (**colour**) => ...

(Patrick is feeling off colour today.)

364. You'll be in serious trouble unless you apologize to Mrs Dempsey.

=> You'll get ...

(You'll get into serious trouble unless you apologize to Mrs. Dempsey.)

365. David really confides in Mr Palmer's greater experience. (**confident**)

=> ...

(David is really confident of Mr. Palmer's greater experience.)

366. We aren't willing to support the strike; we don't approve of it.

=> Far from

(Far from being willing to support the strike, we don't approve of it.)

367. Sue has benefited from the sunny weather by getting nicely suntanned. (**advantage**)

=> ...

(Sue has taken advantage of the sunny weather by getting nicely suntanned.) tận hưởng, hưởng lợi, tận dụng

368. Susan did everything she could to make us both reconcile. (**utmost**)

=> ...

(Susan did her utmost to make us both reconcile.)

369. These dangerous lizards live only in the tropical regions. (**peculiar**)

=> ...

(These dangerous lizards are peculiar to the tropical regions.)

370. The patient's condition is gradually improving. (... **degrees**)

=> ...

(The patient's condition is improving by degrees.)

371. The organizers disregarded the former president's presence at the ceremony. (**notice**)

(The organizers did not take (any) notice of the former president's presence at the ceremony.)

372. These two stamps aren't alike. (**difference**) => ...

(There is a difference between these two post stamps.)

373. Betty didn't know Sony was Hanna's boyfriend. (**unaware**)

=> ...

(Betty was unaware (of the fact) that Sony was Hanna's boyfriend.)

374. We'll have to do with one tent and a few biscuits instead of a luxury hotel and lavish meals. (**in place**)

=> ...

(We'll have to do with one tent and a few biscuits in place of a luxury hotel and lavish meals.)

375. The results aren't satisfactory considering her long and rigorous training. (**account**)

=> ...

(The results aren't satisfactory taking into account/ when you take into account her long and rigorous training.)

(Kết quả không thỏa mãn xét về việc đào tạo lâu dài và ... của cô ấy.)

376. Shannon doesn't think much of the book. (**low**) => ...

(**Shannon has a low opinion of the book.**)

377. What does the abbreviation YMCA mean? (... **for**?) => ...

(**What does the abbreviation YMCA stand for?**)

378. Isn't there anyone to support my point of view? (**take**) => Isn't there ...

(**Isn't there anyone to take my stand/ point?**)

379. There are a lot of mushrooms in this thick pine forest. (**abounds**)

=> ...

(**This thick pine forest abounds in/ with mushrooms.**)

380. Do you think they will let me have a look at the research findings? (**cast**)

=> ...

(**Do you think they will let me cast an eye on the research findings?**)

381. They haven't spoken to each other since they quarrelled in April. (**speaking terms**)

=> ...

(**They haven't been on speaking terms since they quarreled in April.**)

382. Apart from a few minor mistakes, you did a good job on the whole. => By and ...

(By and large, you did a good job.) => by and large = on the whole

383. It is possible that he will pull through very soon. (**chance**)

=> There ...

(**There is a chance that he will pull through very soon.**)

384. Why shouldn't she be given the benefit of the doubt?

=> It's only natural ...

(**It's only natural that she (should) be given the benefit of the doubt.** => đáng lẽ ra ...)

385. I hope they won't get offended with my remarks. (... **good part.**)

=> ...

(**I hope they will take my remarks in good part.**)

386. I advise you to stop smoking cigarettes. (**your shoes**)

=> ...

(**If I were/ Were I in your shoes, I would stop smoking cigarettes.**)

In one's shoes/place/position => idiom + condition

387. Nobody took any notice of George's foolish jokes. (**attention**)

=> ...

(Nobody paid any attention to George's foolish jokes.)

388. Take into account all the possible hardships. (**provision**)

=> ...

(Make provisions for all the possible hardships (gian khổ, thử thách).) => make provision: dự phòng

389. One of my earrings is missing from the box. => An earring ...

(An earring of mine is missing from the box.)

390. Maurice says he will never memorize the poem. (... **heart**)

=> ...

(Maurice says he will never learn this poem by heart.)

391. Has anyone had any good ideas? (**come up**) => ...

(Has anyone come up with any good ideas?)

392. Mr. Green is always punctual. (**dead**) => ...

(Mr. Green is always dead on time.)

393. Remember that you are being constantly supervised. => Bear ...

(Bear in mind that you are being constantly supervised.)

394. The new deal has introduced many changes in the cooperation.

=> Many a ...

(Many a change has been introduced in the cooperation by the new deal.) => Passive + number changes

395. I'm sorry sir, but the 5.30 train is late. (... **schedule**.) => ...

(I'm sorry sir, but the 5.30 train is behind/ is not on schedule.)

396. Have you decided whether to join our chess club or not? (**mind**)

=> ...

(Have you made up your mind whether to join our chess club or not?)

397. I'm not certain, but there may be about twenty applications for the job.

=> At a ...

(At a guess, there are about twenty applications for the job.)

398. Your essays should be submitted by the 30th of June.

=> The deadline

(The deadline for submitting your essays is the 30th of June.)

399. Certainly, Frank isn't the only person capable of translating the book into Polish

=>

.....any means.

(Frank isn't the only person capable of translating this book into Polish by any means.)

400. **Hurry up or else we** will miss the train. (**move**) => Get ...

(Get a move on or else we will miss the train.)

401. If you hope to be a good driver, you mustn't break the traffic regulations. (**abide**)

=> ...

(If you hope to be a good driver, you must abide by the traffic regulations.)

402. I don't agree with the conclusions you have put forward. (**along with**)

=> ...

(I do not go along with the conclusions you have put forward.)

403. Did she use her spare time in a good way? (**make**) => ...

(**Did she make good use of her spare time?**)

404. Where is the annual meeting being organized? (... **place**?)

=> ...

(**Where is the annual meeting taking place?**)

405. It is more than probable that they have had problems with their car.

=> In all ...

(**In all probability, they have had problems with their car.**)

405. Nobody died in the accident. (**fatalities**) => ...

(**There were no/ not any fatalities in the accident.**)

406. John has taken it upon himself to look after the baby tomorrow. (**committed**)

(**John has committed himself to looking after the baby tomorrow.**)

407. The possibility of any further storms can't be excluded. (... **out**.)

=> ...

(**The possibility of any further storms can't be ruled out.**)

408. One of the patients couldn't breathe properly. (**short**) => ...

(**One of the patients was short of breath.**)

409. I reported him to the police because I assumed he was guilty of theft. (**assumption**)

=> ...

(I reported him to the police on the assumption that he was guilty of theft.)

410. You are forbidden from leaving the house at night.

=> Your question.

(**Your leaving the house at night is out of the question.**)

411. No such idea has ever occurred to me before. (**crossed**)

=> ...

(**No such idea has ever crossed my mind before.**)

412. I cannot do anything more to make you feel comfortable.

=> There ...

(There is nothing/ not anything more I can do to make you feel comfortable.)

413. Many wild animals are in danger of extinction. (... **peril**.)

=> The life

(**The life of many wild animals is in peril.**)

414. If I were you, I would throw the files away. (**dispose**)

=> ...

(**If I were you, I would dispose of the files.**)

415. The Wrights don't have much money to live in comfort. (... **ends meet**.)

=> ...

(**The Wrights don't have much money to make ends meet/ can hardly make ends meet.**)

416. I couldn't understand a word of what he said. (**tail**)

=> ...

(I couldn't make head or tail of what he said.)

417. Our supplies of firewood will soon be finished. (**low**)

=> We ...

(We are running/ getting low on our supplies of firewood.)

418. Carol is obliged to do the washing up at home. (**an obligation**)

=> ...

(Carol has an obligation to do the washing up at home/ is under an obligation to do the washing up at home.)

419. Susan is very proud of her sports achievements. => Susan prides ...

(Susan prides herself on her sports achievements.)

421. You should never disobey the safety regulations. (**conform**) => ...

(You should (always) conform to the safety regulations.)

- comply with: tuân theo - abide by: tuân theo, hành động theo - adhere to: bám vào, tôn trọng, đồng ý

422. This case is similar to the one we investigated last year. (**bears**)

=> ...

(This case bears resemblance to the one we investigated last year.)

423. I'll have to find some time to tidy up the garden shed next week. (**get round to**)

=> ...

(I'll have to get round to tidying up the garden shed next week.)

424. You cannot deny the old town square is imposing.

=> There's no ...

(There's no denying (that) the old town square is imposing.)

425. To tell you the truth, I bought these shoes on the cheap. (... **song**.)

=> ...

(To tell you the truth, I bought these shoes for a song.)

426. We were all shocked by the rude response that the boy gave to his loving mother. (**aback**)

=> ...

(We were all taken aback by the rude response that the boy gave to his loving mother.)

427. The flight attendant asked me to put down the cigarette. (**refrain**)

=> The flight attendant ...

(The flight attendant asked me to refrain from smoking.)

428. William and Simon don't like each other. (**get**) => William and Simon ...

(William and Simon don't get on with each other.)

429. Since their father's death, they have had serious financial problems. (... **straits**.)

=> ...

(Since their father's death, they have been in dire straits.)

430. Nigel doesn't pay much attention to my problems. (... **granted**.)

=> ...

(Nigel takes my problems for granted.)

431. I didn't understand much of what the man said to me. (**scarcely**)

=> ...

(I scarcely understood/ understood scarcely anything of what the man said to me.)

432. All the inhabitants of the island know this place very well. (**familiar**)

=> This place ...

(This place is familiar to all the inhabitants of the island.)

433. The minister claims that another rise in food prices is possible. (... **cards**.)

=> ...

(The minister claims that another rise in food prices is on the cards.)

434. Her role in the plot was of secondary importance. (**second fiddle**)

=> ...

(She played/ was second fiddle in the plot.)

435. It's not our concern what they do after lessons.

=> It is of ...

(It is of no/ little concern to us what they do after lessons.)

436. I suddenly realized I had strayed from the main route. (**dawned**)

=> It ...

(It suddenly dawned on me (that) I had strayed from the main route.)

437. They say about half of the staff will be made redundant. (... **sack**.)

=> ...

(They say about half of the staff will be given the sack.)

438. I don't know how much of that syrup she ought to be given. (**faintest idea**)

=> ...

(I haven't the faintest idea how much of that syrup she ought to be given.)

439. After his uncle's death, Lou inherited the house and the garden. (**into**)

=> ...

(After his uncle's death, Lou came into/ came in for the house and the garden.)

440. Mark had to pay for repairing the CHUYÊN ĐỀ player. => The CHUYÊN ĐỀ player
..... expense.

(The CHUYÊN ĐỀ player was repaired at Mark's expense.)

441. It depends on her whether the costs are to be reimbursed or not. (**up**)

=> ...

(It is up to her whether the costs are to be reimbursed or not.)

442. Everybody is aware that the newspaper is published by the right-wing party.

=> It is common ...

(It is common knowledge that the newspaper is published by the right-wing party.)

443. What right have you got to give me orders? (... **about?**) => ...

(What right have you got to order me about?)

444. The direct aim of the statement is to make the public aware of the present situation.

=> The statement boils ...

(The statement boils down to making the public aware of the present situation.)

445. Sally distrusts modern technology strongly. => Sally has ...

(Sally has a strong distrust of modern technology.)

446. He will have to spend seven years in prison. **(sentenced)**

(He has been sentenced to seven years in prison.)

447. We were all convinced Tom would succeed in passing his final exams. **(confidence)**

=> ...

(We all had confidence that Tom would succeed in passing his final exam.)

448. My precious life was saved by the lifeguard. => I owe ...

(I owe my precious life to the life guard.)

449. We have a debt of gratitude to pay to all those who gave us their support. **(indebted)**

=> ...

(We are indebted to all those who gave us their support.)

450. When did the patient regain consciousness? (... **round?**)

=> ...

(When did the patient come round?)

Reference: It's a serious operation for a man as old as my father. He is very frail. I hope he _____.

A. gets away B. comes round C. pulls through D. stands up

- **Come round:** hồi tỉnh lại (sau khi bị ngất, sau khi gây mê) => become conscious again = regain consciousness

- **Pull through:** qua khỏi, thoát khỏi, phục hồi sau trận ốm, ca mổ. (Often: **Pull Sb/St through**)

451. Even big quantities of vegetables aren't harmful to your health. **(do)**

=> ...

(Even big quantities of vegetables do not do any harm to your health.)

452. The passengers were not allowed to smoke cigarettes during the flight. **(refrain)**

=> ...

(The passengers had to refrain from smoking during the flight.)

453. The handling of the matter has been heavily criticized by the press. **(scorn)**

=> The press ...

(The press has poured scorn on the handling of the matter.)

454. Brian must do exercise to strengthen his back after the surgery. **(compulsory)**

=> It ...

(It is compulsory for Brian to do exercise to strengthen his back after the surgery.)

455. When will the resolutions that we have taken be implemented? **(put)**

=> practice?

(When will the resolutions that we have taken be put into practice?)

456. Mrs. Arnold will take care of our cat while we are away. **(look)**

=> ...

(Mrs. Arnold will look after our cat while we are away.)

457. I didn't really know whether to accept their engagement or not. (**mixed feelings**)

=> ...

(I had mixed feelings about their engagement.)

458. Since she met that boy, she's been thinking only about him. (**wrapped**)

=> ...

(Since she met that boy she's been wrapped up in him.)

(Reference: Anna was so _____ in her work that she didn't notice when I came in.

A. absent-minded B. wrapped up C. busy D. concentrating

- absent-minded: lơ đãng - wrapped up in: quá tập trung vào ai, việc gì => không chú ý đến người khác

- concentrate on (v): tập trung = focus on - Be busy with (doing) St

459. We regret to inform you that there is no more demand for your products.

=> Much to ...

(Much to our regret, we inform you that there is no more demand for your products.)

460. Hardly anyone could understand the lecture. (**comprehensible**)

=> ...

(The lecture was comprehensible to hardly anyone.)

461. Finally, the new prime minister has been appointed. (**last**)

(The new prime minister has been appointed at last.)

462. There were many noisy students in the hall. => The hall was crowded
.....

(The hall was crowded with noisy students.) (DHDL Hung Vuong – 2001-2002, P. 165)

463. Please send the letter as soon as possible. (**delay**)

=> ...

(Please send the letter without delay.) (expr: as soon as possible = without delay: ngay lập tức, không chậm trễ, càng sớm càng tốt) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.43)

464. You have to pay two month's rent before you move in. (**advance**)

=> ...

(You have to pay two month's rent in advance before you move in. (in advance: trước)
(BD HSG TA 11 – P.43))

465. We get on very well with our next-door neighbours. (**terms**)

=> ...

(We are on good terms with our next-door neighbours.) (get on well with Sb = be on good terms with Sb = have a good relationship with Sb: hòa thuận, có mối quan hệ tốt với ai đó, hòa đồng với ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.43)

466. Everybody wants Pauline as an after-dinner speaker. (**demand**)

=> ...

(Pauline is in great demand as an after-dinner speaker.) (be in great demand: được nhiều người yêu cầu, chuộng) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.43)

467. I accidentally picked up the wrong suitcase at the airport. (**mistake**)

=> ...

(**I picked up the wrong suitcase at the airport by mistake.**) (**by mistake = accidentally**: tình cờ, không cố ý # **on purpose/ intentionally/deliberately**: cố ý, chủ tâm) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.43)

468. The whole team was in a happy mood. (**spirits**)

=> ...

(**The whole team was in good/high spirits.**) (**in high/good spirits**: trong trạng thái/tinh thần tốt, phấn chấn # **in low/poor spirits**: buồn rầu, chán nản) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.43)

469. I realized I had said something wrong. (**conscious**)

=> ...

(**I was conscious of having said something wrong.**) (**be conscious of (doing St)**: nhận thức, ý thức ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.43)

470. You are not lucky today, I'm afraid. (**out**)

=> ...

(**You are out of luck today, I'm afraid.**) (**out of luck, out of sight, out of date, out of work, out of control, out of breath...**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.43)

471. You can't get to the village in winter because of the snow. (**access**)

=> ...

(**You can't access to the village in winter because of the snow.**) (**access to ... (n), be accessible to (a) ...**: tới, đến, truy cập được, ...=> **There's no access to ...**: không thể tới được ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.43)

472. I think this word comes from ancient Greek. (**derived**)

=> ...

(**I think this word is derived from ancient Greek.**) (**be derived from ...**: bắt nguồn từ, xuất phát từ, **derive St from St**: thu được ... từ ... , tìm thấy ... từ ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.43)

473. I like to spend a lot of time in the open air. (**doors**)

=> ...

(**I like to spend a lot of time out of doors.**) (**in the open air = out of doors**: bên ngoài, ngoài trời) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.43)

474. I don't think you mean what you say about helping me. (**earnest**)

=> ...

(**I don't think you are in earnest about helping me.**) (**in earnest**: nghiêm túc, đứng đắn) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.43)

475. It's uncertain whether the band's tour will take place. (**balance**)

=> ...

(**The band's tour is in the balance.**) (**be in the balance**: do dự, lưỡng lự, trong tình trạng không chắc chắn)

(BD HSG TA 11 – P.43)

476. I wish I knew what to do about this problem. (**solution**)

=> ...

(**I wish I knew/had the solution to this problem.**) (**solution to St:** giải pháp cho, giải pháp của ...)

(BD HSG TA 11 – P.43)

478. You can walk to the station easily from the hotel. (**within**)

=> ...

(**The station is within easy reach of the hotel.**) (nhà ga này ở trong khoảng cách gần với khách sạn)

(**within (one's) reach** (trong tầm tay) # **out of/ beyond (one's) reach:** ngoài tầm tay – be within (easy) reach of: trong khoảng cách có thể tới được, ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.43)

479. Karen received a medal for her services. (**recognition**)

=> ...

(**Karen received a medal in recognition of her services.**) (**in recognition of St:** để công nhận) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.43)

480. You have to pay you son's debts as he is under age. (**liable**)

=> ...

(**You are liable for your son's debts as he is under age.**) (**be liable to do St:** có khả năng phải/bị ..., **be liable for a debt:** có bổn phận trả nợ ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.43)

481. After trying twice, Ivan broke the record when he tried the third time.

=> Ivan broke the record ...

(**at the third attempt.**) (**at the first/second/third attempt:** khi cố gắng lần thứ ...)

(BD HSG TA 11 – P.44)

482. The meeting will probably be cancelled. (**probability**) => ...

(**In all probability, the meeting will be cancelled.**) (**in all probability:** rất có thể) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.44)

483. Considering your position, we won't press charges. (**under**)

=> ...

(**Under the circumstances, we won't press charges.**)

(**Under/In the circumstances:** Xét trong hoàn cảnh như vậy)

Under/in no circumstances: dù trong hoàn cảnh nào cũng không ... => đảo ngữ) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.44)

484. The students are living temporarily in a caravan. => For the ...

(**time being/ present, the students are living in a caravan.**) (For the time being = at the present)

(BD HSG TA 11 – P.44)

485. I intend to discover the truth somehow or the other. => In one ...

(**way or another I intend to discover the truth.**)

486. The soldiers entered the castle while it was dark. => Under ...

(**the cover of the darkness, the soldiers entered the castle.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.44)

487. Speaking for my colleagues, I would like to thank you.

=> On ...

(behalf of my colleagues, I would like to thank you. – Speaking for Sb = on behalf of Sb: thay mặt, thay lời ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.44)

488. I thought you had accepted. => I was under ...

(the impression that you had accepted. – Be under the impression that = think that ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.44)

489. Everyone was exhausted apart from Sally. => With ...

(the exception of Sally, everyone was exhausted. – with the exception of Sb = apart from Sb = except (for) Sb: ngoại trừ ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.44)

490. Whatever happens, we must avoid adverse publicity. **(costs)**

=> ...

(We must avoid adverse publicity at all costs.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.78)

491. Nobody expected her to lose, but she did. => Against ...

(everyone's expectations, she lost.) (against St: chống lại, ngược lại với ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.104)

492. Our science correspondent sees this new information as the answer to many of our problems.

=> According to ...

(our science correspondent, this new information is the answer to many of our problems.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.118)

493. You are not lucky today, I'm afraid. **(out)** => ...

(You are out of luck today, I'm afraid.) (out of luck, out of sight, out of date, out of work, out of control, out of breath, out of order, ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.43)

500. I don't want us to have a quarrel. **(you)**

=> ...

(I don't want to quarrel with you/ to have a quarrel with you.) (to quarrel with Sb = to have a quarrel with Sb: cãi nhau với ...) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.43)

504. Paul went to see the bank manager about getting a loan. **(view)**

=> ...

(Paul went to see the bank manager with a view to getting a loan.) (with a view to + Ving: với mục đích) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.43)

513. Although the dog appeared harmless, it was, in fact, quite dangerous. **(CONTRARY)**

=> ...

(Contrary to the appearance/ its harmless appearance, the dog was, in fact, quite dangerous.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.98)

514. Ba only understood very little of what the teacher said. => Ba could hardly ...

(understand what the teacher said.) (DH QG TP.HCM – Khoi D – chuyên ban 97-98, P.238)

515. The drama critic of the "Daily News" regards the new play as a major breakthrough.

=> According to ...

(According to the drama critic of the “Daily News”, the new play is a major breakthrough.)
(Hoc Vien KHQS – Khoi D 97-98, P.275)

516. The station clock showed half past ten. => According ...

(According to the station clock, it was half past ten.) (DH An Giang – 97-98, P.11)

517. His second attempt on the world record was successful. => He broke ...

(He broke the world record at/on his second attempt.) (Hoc Vien QHQT – Khoi D 97-98, P.294)

519. Mrs. Edwards is the owner of that car. => The car ...

(The car belongs to Mrs. Edwards.) (DH An Giang – 97-98, P.11)

520. I thought she bore a strong resemblance to her grandmother. => She reminded ...

(She reminded me of her grandmother. => to bear a (*strong*) resemblance to Sb (*rất giống ai đó*): take after Sb: giống ai) (DHNN – 2001-2002, P.62)

521. I take your point. (**accept**) => I ...

(**understand and accept your idea.**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.138) = support your point of view

522. He’s just saying that to prove a point. (**right**) =>

(**He’s just showing that his idea is right.**) (prove a point/case, prove the point/case, prove one’s point/case: chứng tỏ quan điểm, chứng minh quan điểm) (BTTH TA 10 – P.138)

523. He seemed to have already struck up a friendship with Jo. (**begun**)

=> He seemed to have ...

(**begun a friendship with Jo.**) (**strike up st** = start st: bắt đầu tình bạn, sự quen biết, ...) (BTTH TA 10 – P.138)

(BTTH TA 10 – P.138)

524. The education system bears no comparison with that in many Eastern European countries. (**as**)

=> The education system is ...

(**not so/as good as that in many Eastern European countries.**)

(**bear (no) comparison with:** có thể/ không thể so với ...) (BTTH TA 10 – P.138)

525. Please do not enter the room all together. => Please enter the room one ...

(**at a time**) => one at a time: lần lượt từng người một (BTTH TA 10 – P.121)

526. I realized immediately that something was wrong. (**once**)

=> ...

(**I realized at once that something was wrong.**) (BTTH TA 12 – P.124)

527. Good colour sense is instinctive for some people. (**comes**)

=> ...

(**Good colour sense comes naturally to some people.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.167)

(Be instinctive for Sb: có tự nhiên, đến tự nhiên đối với ..., là bản năng đối với = come naturally to Sb)

528. It is my opinion that there is no advantage in further discussion. (**SEE**)

=> ...

- **As far as I can see, there is no advantage/point/sense in further discussion.**

- **I don not/ cannot any advantage/point/sense in the further discussion**

- I (can) see no advantage/point/sense in the further discussion. (BD HSG TA 12 – P.98)

529. “Excuse me madam, but is this your bag?” the policeman asked. (**belong**)

=> “Excuse me madam, but?” the policeman asked.

(“Excuse me madam, but **does this bag belong to you** ?” the policeman asked.) (CAE - 1)

This + be + Possessive Adj + N => This N + belong to + Object Pronoun (be and belong at any tenses)

Question: Be + this + Possessive Adj + N? => Does + This N + belong to + Object Pronoun?

530. She’s under the illusion that she’ll get the job. => She believes ...

(**wrongly that she will get the job.**) (Be under an/the illusion that + clause: có ảo tưởng/ nhầm tin rằng ...)

(BTTH TA 10 – P.145)

531. I never miss out on a cup of coffee when I visit her flat. => She ...

(**always gives/offers me a cup of coffee when I visit her flat.**) (Miss out (on St): mất cơ hội được lợi từ => Tôi chưa bao giờ mất cơ hội được uống cà phê mỗi khi tôi đến thăm cô ấy. = Tôi luôn luôn được uống cà phê mỗi khi đến thăm cô ấy.) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.57)

532. I wish he would get to the point. (**quickly**) => I wish he would ...

(**say it quickly**). (**get to the point**: nói thẳng vào vấn đề) (BTTH TA 10 – P.138)

533. Do you know who this coat belongs to? (**coat**) => Do you know is?

(BTTH TA 10 – P.56) (**whose coat this/ this coat**)

BÀI TẬP CHUYÊN SÂU BỒI DƯỠNG HỌC SINH GIỎI – MÔN TIẾNG ANH
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 19: BỒI DƯỠNG KIẾN THỨC NÂNG CAO VỀ CẤU GIẢN TIẾP

Reported Speech

I. Turn into direct speech

1. Mark invited Sam to the cinema. =>
2. Pierre suggested that they should all go to the beach. => ...
3. Zoraya advised her to tell the truth. => ...
4. Susanne encouraged Tom to mend it. => ...
5. Jeff apologized for being late. => ...

II. Turn into indirect speech

1. “Do fast cars interest you?” the dealer asked Sarah. (**was**) => The dealer asked Sarah fast cars.
2. “Oh, just a minute, was it Leonardo or Michelangelo who painted the Mona Lisa?”
=> He couldn’t ...
3. “Go on Jack, apply for the job.” said Sally => Sally encouraged ...
4. “Shall I carry that bag for you, John?” said Pauline. => Pauline offered ...
5. “Please don’t leave me on my own,” Martin begged us. => Martin begged ...
6. “Please don’t take my money, it’s all I’ve got” said the old woman to the intruder.
=> ...
7. He warned them against using the mountain road.
=> “I wouldn’t ...
8. “I admit that I forgot to turn on the alarm system,” said Robert.
=> Robert confessed to ...
9. ‘As you’re being so difficult I won’t help you,’ Alan told Peter.
=> Alan refused ...
10. He warned them against using the mountain road.
=> ‘I wouldn’t ...
11. “What went wrong, Frankie?” said Paul. **asked**
=> Paul wrong.
12. “Can I stay here for a couple of days, Jude?” said Phil. **there**
=> Phil asked Jude for a couple of days.
13. “Yes, I went there on my own,” Haskins said. **gone**
=> Haskins admitted that he own.
14. “Don’t mention this ever again, Chris,” said Brenda. **to**
=> Brenda told Chris again.
15. “I think, Joe, that you should tell the council about it,” said Mr Green. **advised**
=> Mr Green the council about it.
16. “What time does this pub close at weekends, Jack?” said Alexis. **time**

=> Alexis asked Jack at weekends.

17. "You will ask for a receipt, won't you?" Anna said to Steve. **reminded**

=> Anna a receipt.

18. "We are going tomorrow," said Melanie. **going**

=> Melanie said that day.

19. "Don't touch this cable," the electrician said to us. **touch**

=> The electrician warned cable.

20. "Show me what's in your hand, Smith," said the policeman. **show**

=> The policeman ordered Smith in his hand.

21. "Where did you buy your dress?" Janice asked her sister. **where**

=> Janice asked her sister dress.

22. "It's your fault the cat died, George," said Lucy. **blamed**

=> Lucy of the cat.

23. "I didn't start the fire!" he said. **denied**

=> He the fire.

24. "Shall I turn on the light?" Sue asked Jill. **wanted**

=> Sue asked Jill the light turned on.

25. 'What do you think of the college?' **ASKED** => She
..... of the college.

26. 'I'll call you later tonight,' Keith promised. **WOULD**
=> Keith promised that night.

27. 'I didn't break the window,' said the boy. **DENIED**
=> The boy the window

28. 'Why don't you come this evening?' **SUGGESTED** => She
..... that evening.

29. 'You look really tired,' he told her. **SAID** => He
..... really tired.

30. 'You must do your homework tonight.' the teacher said. **TOLD**
=> The teacher my homework.

31. 'What's your name?' he asked. **KNOW**
=> He what my name was.

32. 'I might be late for.' he told me. **INFORMED**
=> He might be late.

33. 'I don't share your views on capital punishment' he said. **AGREE**
=> He told me my views on capital punishment.

34. 'Did you eat the chocolates?' Maria said to Peter. **ASKED** => Maria
..... eaten the chocolates.

35. 'Don't forget to phone tomorrow,' said my mother. **TOLD** => My mother
to phone the next day.

36. 'Did anyone notice anything unusual?' asked the police officer. **IF**

=> The police officer wanted to anything unusual.

37. 'Are you waiting to be served?' said the waitress to me. **ASKED**

=> The waitress waiting to be served.

38. 'Are you pleased it's nearly half-term?' the teacher asked us. **KNOW**

=> The teacher wanted pleased it was nearly half-term.

39. "Is this your wallet?" The policeman asked me. **belonged** => The policeman asked me _____ to me.

40. "If I were you, I would accept his invitation ", Kim said to Lynn

=> Kim advised Lynn ...

41. "Do you want to go out for dinner with me, Kate?", Felix said.

=> Felix invite Kate ...

42. "Get out of my way", he told the boy. => He ordered the boy ...

43. "Lie down or I'll shoot", the robber shouted to everybody.

=> The robber threatened _____ unless everybody lay down.

44. "Don't go near the water, children", said the mother

=> The mother warned ...

45. "Why don't you book a package holiday, Peter?". Bill said

=> Bill advised Peter ...

46. "It was nice of you to visit me. Thank you. Mss White said to Jack

=> Mss White thanked ...

47. 'I hate to be criticised by non-professionals,' the film star said.

=> The film star objected

48. "Why don't we stay in Madrid overnight?" said Silvia. (**PROPOSED**)

=> Silvia in Madrid overnight.

Reported Speech

I. Turn into direct speech

1. Mark invited Sam to the cinema. => (BTTH TA 10 – P.71)
2. Pierre suggested that they should all go to the beach. => ... (BTTH TA 10 – P.71)
3. Zoraya advised her to tell the truth. => ... (BTTH TA 10 – P.71)
4. Susanne encouraged Tom to mend it. (BTTH TA 10 – P.71)
5. Jeff apologized for being late. (BTTH TA 10 – P.71)

II. Turn into indirect speech

1. “Do fast cars interst you?” the dealer asked Sarah. (**was**) => The dealer asked Sarah fast cars.
(The dealer asked Sarah **if she was interested in fast cars.** (BTTH TA 10 – P.46)
2. “Oh, just a minute, was it Leonardo or Michelangelo who painted the Mona Lisa?”
=> He couldn’t ...
(**remember if it was Leonardo or Michelangelo who painted / had painted the Mona Lisa.**) (BTTH TA 12 – P.57)
3. “Go on Jack, apply for the job.” said Sally => Sally encouraged ...
(**Jack to apply for the job.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.24)
4. “Shall I carry that bag for you, John?” said Pauline. => Pauline offered ...
(**to carry that/the bag for John.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.24)
5. “Please don’t leave me on my own,” Martin begged us. => Martin begged ...
(**us not to leave him on his own.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.27)
6. “Please don’t take my money, it’s all I’ve got” said the old woman to the intruder.
=> ...
(**The old woman pleaded with the intruder not to take her money as it was all that she had.**)
(**plead with Sb (not) to do St = beg Sb (not) to do St, beg Sb for St = plead with Sb for St:**
câu xin) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.104)
7. He warned them against using the mountain road.
=> “I wouldn’t ...
(**use the mountain road if I were you”, he warned /said to them**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.118)
8. “I admit that I forgot to turn on the alarm system,” said Robert.
=> Robert confessed to ...
(**forgetting/having forgotten to turn on the alarm system.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.131)
9. ‘As you’re being so difficult I won’t help you,’ Alan told Peter.
=> Alan refused ...
(**Alan refused to help Peter as/because he was being so difficult.**)
10. He warned them against using the mountain road.

=> 'I wouldn't ...

(**'I wouldn't use the mountain road if I were you,'** he warned/said.)

11. "What went wrong, Frankie?" said Paul. **asked**

=> Paul wrong.

(Paul **asked Frankie what had gone** wrong.)

12. "Can I stay here for a couple of days, Jude?" said Phil. **there**

=> Phil asked Jude for a couple of days.

(Phil asked Jude **if he could stay there** for a couple of days.)

13. "Yes, I went there on my own," Haskins said. **gone**

=> Haskins admitted that he own.

(Haskins admitted that he **had gone there on his** own.)

14. "Don't mention this ever again, Chris," said Brenda. **to**

=> Brenda told Chris again.

(Brenda told Chris **never to mention that** again.)

15. "I think, Joe, that you should tell the council about it," said Mr Green. **advised**

=> Mr Green the council about it.

(Mr Green **advised Joe to tell** the council about it.)

16. "What time does this pub close at weekends, Jack?" said Alexis. **time**

=> Alexis asked Jack at weekends.

(Alexis asked Jack **what time that pub closed** at weekends.)

17. "You will ask for a receipt, won't you?" Anna said to Steve. **reminded**

=> Anna a receipt.

(Anna **reminded Steve to ask for** a receipt.)

18. "We are going tomorrow," said Melanie. **going**

=> Melanie said that day.

(Melanie said that **they were going the next** day.)

19. "Don't touch this cable," the electrician said to us. **touch**

=> The electrician warned cable.

(The electrician warned **us not to touch that** cable.)

20. "Show me what's in your hand, Smith," said the policeman. **show**

=> The policeman ordered Smith in his hand.

(The policeman ordered Smith **to show him what was** in his hand.)

21. "Where did you buy your dress?" Janice asked her sister. **where**

=> Janice asked her sister dress.

(Janice asked her sister **where she had bought her** dress.)

22. "It's your fault the cat died, George," said Lucy. **blamed**

=> Lucy of the cat.

(Lucy **blamed George for the death** of the cat.)

23. "I didn't start the fire!" he said. **denied**

=> He the fire.

(He ... **denied that he had started/ starting/ having started** ... the fire.)

24 'Shall I turn on the light?' Sue asked Jill. **wanted**

=> Sue asked Jill _____ the light turned on.

(Sue asked Jill if/whether she wanted the light turned on.)

25. 'What do you think of the college?' **ASKED** => She

..... of the college.

(**asked me what I thought/asked what I thought**)

26. 'I'll call you later tonight,' Keith promised. **WOULD**

=> Keith promised that night.

(**he would call later that/he would phone later that/he would telephone later that/he would ring later that**)

27. 'I didn't break the window,' said the boy. **DENIED**

=> The boy the window

(**denied breaking**)

28. 'Why don't you come this evening?' **SUGGESTED** => She

..... that evening.

(**suggested coming/suggested that I come/suggested that we come**)

29. 'You look really tired,' he told her. **SAID** => He

..... really tired.

(**said she looked/said that she looked**)

30. 'You must do your homework tonight.' the teacher said. **TOLD**

=> The teacher my homework.

(**told me to do**)

31. 'What's your name?' he asked. **KNOW**

=> He what my name was.

(**wanted to know**)

32. 'I might be late for.' he told me. **INFORMED**

=> He might be late.

(**informed me that he/ informed me he**)

33. 'I don't share your views on capital punishment' he said. **AGREE**

=> He told me my views on capital punishment.

(**he did not agree with/ he didn't agree with** (Reported speech + verb change)

34. 'Did you eat the chocolates?' Maria said to Peter. **ASKED** => Maria

..... eaten the chocolates.

(**asked Peter if he had/he'd**)

35. 'Don't forget to phone tomorrow,' said my mother. **TOLD** => My mother

to phone the next day.

(**told me not to forget/to remember**)

36. 'Did anyone notice anything unusual?' asked the police officer. **IF**

=> The police officer wanted to anything unusual.

(**know if anyone had noticed**)

37. 'Are you waiting to be served?' said the waitress to me. **ASKED**

=> The waitress waiting to be served.

(asked me if I was)

38. 'Are you pleased it's nearly half-term?' the teacher asked us. **KNOW**

=> The teacher wanted pleased it was nearly half-term.

(to know if we were)

39. "Is this your wallet?" The policeman asked me. **belonged** => The policeman asked me _____ to me.

(The policeman asked me **if the wallet belonged** to me.)

40. "If I were you, I would accept his invitation", Kim said to Lynn

=> Kim advised Lynn ...

(Kim advised Lynn **to accept his invitation**)

41. "Do you want to go out for dinner with me, Kate?", Felix said.

=> Felix invite Kate ...

(Felix invite Kate **to go out for dinner with him**)

42. "Get out of my way", he told the boy. => He ordered the boy ...

(He ordered the boy **to get out of his way**)

43. "Lie down or I'll shoot", the robber shouted to everybody.

=> The robber threatened _____ unless everybody lay down.

(The robber threatened **to shoot** unless everybody lay down)

44. "Don't go near the water, children", said the mother

=> The mother warned ...

(The mother warned **her children not to go near the water/ against nearing the water.**)

45. "Why don't you book a package holiday, Peter?". Bill said

=> Bill advised Peter ...

(Bill advised Peter **to book a package holiday**)

46. "It was nice of you to visit me. Thank you. Mss White said to Jack

=> Mss White thanked ...

(Mss white thanked **Jack for visiting her.**)

47. 'I hate to be criticised by non-professionals,' the film star said.

=> The film star objected

(to being criticized by non-professionals.) (De TSDH 2002)

48. "Why don't we stay in Madrid overnight?" said Silvia. **(PROPOSED)**

=> Silvia in Madrid overnight.

(proposed staying/ that we stay in Madrid overnight.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.125)

- Propose (doing) St - Propose + that clause of subjunctive

BỒI DƯỠNG HỌC SINH GIỎI – MÔN TIẾNG ANH
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 20: BỒI DƯỠNG KIẾN THỨC NÂNG CAO VỀ CÁC CHỦ ĐỀ KHÁC

I. Exclamative

1. That was a silly thing to say! => What!
2. The students were so clever to see the solution to the problem very quickly.
=> How ...
3. She was so good to me that I'll always remember it. => I'll always remember ...

II. Insist on and Nothing but

1. He insisted on a full apology. => Nothing ...
2. Nothing but the whole story would satisfy Tim. => Tim insisted ...

III. Almost No – Hardly Any

1. He does almost no work => He hardly ...

IV. Everybody/All the people – Who ... not?

1. Everybody longs to live in prosperity. => Who ...
2. There is no one who does not know it. => Everybody ...
3. All of those present were in agreement with the proposal. => Everyone ...
4. Mr. Misery was the only student who didn't smile. (**EXCEPT**)
=> ...
5. All the students were awarded diplomas. => Every ...

VI. OTHERS

1. Our present financial problems will soon be a thing of the past. => We ...
2. He remembered, and so did she. => He didn't ...
3. Was he truthful? She did not know. **(if)** => ...
4. Turn down the oven. We don't want the meat to burn while we are out. **(in case)**
=> ...
5. I met one of your old boy friends at a party. **(an)** => ...

*. Order of Adj:

1. Their car is Italian. It's big and red. => They've got a ...

*. Number as Adjective:

1. It's a cross-country vehicle with five doors. => It's a five ...
2. It's a three-month course. => The course ...

***. Gap-Filling: Rewrite by using ONE word to fill in each space**

1. She has been writing novels for five years. => She has been a ... for five years.
2. We were stuck in a queue of traffic for two hours. => We were stuck in a traffic ... for two hours.
3. I'm going to work in Germany so I must learn the language. => I must learn ... because I am going to work in Germany.
4. I start writing this report on Monday. => I've been writing this report ... Monday.
5. Maria is a Spaniard. => Maria is ...

***. Difficult**

1. Her career as an actress began ten years ago. => She ...
2. Try and smile. You don't want to give people the wrong impression.
=> Try and smile. You don't want to make ...
3. The new regulations are largely symbolic. => The new regulations will ...
4. The total cost to you is \$3000. => The amount you ...
5. The written record of the conversation doesn't correspond to what was actually said.
=> The written record of the conversation is ...
6. I have no illusions about her feelings for me. => I know the truth ...
7. Do you know your measurements? => Do you know the size ...
8. In the normal course of events she would have gone with him. **(expected)**
=> If things ...
9. Please be brief. **(quickly)** => Please say ...
10. His language is disgusting. **(obscene)** => He ...
11. The Titanic sank on its maiden voyage. **(journey)** => The Titanic ...
12. Don't sign for the parcel until you have checked that everything is there. **(you)**

- => Make sure that nothing is sign for the par.
13. There is one problem, the wage. => The wage ...
14. There are no interesting films on this week. => There is nothing ...
15. This bottle contains two litters. (**hold**) => This bottle ...
16. We could go into town but it's a real hike from here. (**way**)
=> We could go into town ...
17. I can't survive on \$40 a week. (**needs**) => \$40 is not enough ...
18. There are only a few survivors from the original team. (**replaced**)
=> Only a few members remain ...
19. She'll cope. She's one of life's great survivors. (**situations**)
=> She deals very well ...
20. There are fifteen jars in the cupboard. => The cupboard ...
21. Liz doesn't very often go dancing. => Liz occasionally
22. Can you explain this word to me, please? => What does ...
23. How long does the train journey from Oxford to London take? => When does?
24. There haven't been many changes in this town since I last visited it. (**much**)
=> Since my last has changed in this town.
25. She didn't have anyone make clothes for her. => She ...
26. I recognized him at once. => At once I knew
27. Do you know London at all? => Have you ever?
28. Just thinking about his face at that moment makes me laugh.
=> The very ...
29. From my position, I could see quite clearly what was happening. (**stand**)
=> ...
30. Chalk and cheese aren't at all like. (**COMPARISON**)
=> ...
31. That rumour about the politician and the construction contract is absolutely false.
=> There is ...
32. We have no idea where he is. (**WHEREABOUTS**)
=> ...
33. We run the business together. (**JOINT**) => ...
34. That dress has only the slightest mark on it. => I can barely ...
35. He remembered, and so did she. => He didn't ...
36. I'll be happy to show you round the sights of my city when you come to visit me. (**take**)
=> It will be a sightseeing tour of my city when you come to visit me.

37. By the time we got to the sale, every book had been sold. **(single)**

=> By the time we got to the sale, there book left.

38. I don't expect the company to make a profit this year, given the economic climate. **(surprised)**

=> Given the economic climate, the company make a profit this year.

39. I gave her my address. **where** => I lived.

40. Your brakes are faulty. **wrong** => There's brakes.

41. The population of Spain is increasing. **people** => The is increasing.

42. You should join the football club. **member** => You should the football team.

43. I didn't expect to win. **think** => I win.

44. You should telephone her. **speak** => You should on the telephone.

45. My house is near to John's. **close** => John each other.

ANSWER KEY

I. Exclamative

1. That was a silly thing to say! => What!

(What a silly thing to say!) (DH Hue – Khoi D – chuyên ban 97-98, P.172) (= 9 BTTA 11 – P.184)

2. The students were so clever to see the solution to the problem very quickly.

=> How ...

(How clever the students were to see the solution to the problem so quickly!/ How clever it was of the students to see the solution to the problem so quickly.) (HV Ngan Hang – 2001-2002, P. 103)

3. She was so good to me that I'll always remember it. => I'll always remember ...

(how good she was to me. (BTTA 11 – P.117))

II. Insist on and Nothing but

1. He insisted on a full apology. => Nothing ...
(Nothing but a full apology would satisfy him. - BTTN Viet Cau TA – P.27)
=> S + insist on + N ⇔ Nothing but + N + would satisfy + Sb)
2. Nothing but the whole story would satisfy Tim. => Tim insisted ...
(**on being told the complete story.**) (BTTN Viet Cau TA – P.27)

III. Almost No – Hardly Any

1. He does almost no work => He hardly ...
(He hardly does any work. - BTTN Viet Cau TA – P.27)

IV. Everybody/All the people – Who ... not?

1. Everybody longs to live in prosperity. => Who ...
(Who does not long to live in prosperity? - BTTN Viet Cau TA – P.34)
2. There is no one who does not know it. => Everybody ...
(Everybody knows it. - BTTN Viet Cau TA – P.36)
3. All of those present were in agreement with the proposal. => Everyone ...
(**who were present were in agreement with the proposal.**) (BTTA 11 – P.117)
4. Mr. Misery was the only student who didn't smile. (**EXCEPT**)
=> ...
(**All the students/ Every student smiled except Mr. Misery.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.152)
5. All the students were awarded diplomas. => Every ...
(**Every student was awarded a diploma.**)

VI. OTHERS

1. Our present financial problems will soon be a thing of the past. => We ...
(We **will soon forget our present financial problems.**) (DH Thai Nguyen – 2001-2002, P.85)
2. He remembered, and so did she. => He didn't ...
(He didn't **forget and neither did she.**) (DHDL Van Hien – 2001-2002, P. 187)
3. Was he truthful? She did not know. (**if**) => ...
(**She did not know if he was truthful.**) (Vien DH Mo – 2001-2002, P. 199)
4. Turn down the oven. We don't want the meat to burn while we are out. (**in case**)
=> ...
(**You should turn down the oven in case the meat burns while we are out.**) (CHUYÊN ĐỀ SPHN – 2001-2002, P.250)
5. I met one of your old boy friends at a party. (**an**) => ...

(I met an old boy friend of yours.) (CHUYÊN ĐỀ SPHN – 2001-2002, P.250)

*. Order of Adj:

1. Their car is Italian. It's big and red. => They've got a ...
(They've got **a big red Italian car.**) (DHNN – 2001-2002, P.62)

*. Number as Adjective:

1. It's a cross-country vehicle with five doors. => It's a five ...
(It's a five-door cross-country vehicle.) (DHNN – 2001-2002, P.62)
2. It's a three-month course. => The course ...
(The course lasts 3 months) (CHUYÊN ĐỀ SPHN – 2001-2002, P.250)

*. **Gap-Filling: Rewrite by using ONE word to fill in each space** (DHDL Duy Tan – 2001-2002, P. 147.)

1. She has been writing novels for five years. => She has been a ... for five years. (novelist)
2. We were stuck in a queue of traffic for two hours. => We were stuck in a traffic ... for two hours. (jam)
3. I'm going to work in Germany so I must learn the language. => I must learn ... because I am going to work in Germany. (German)
4. I start writing this report on Monday. => I've been writing this report ... Monday. (since)
5. Maria is a Spaniard. => Maria is ... (Spanish)

*. **Complete the second sentence so that it stays the same meaning as the given one. Do not change the given word in brackets.** (DHDL Dong Do – 2001-2002, P. 159)

*. **Difficult**

1. Her career as an actress began ten years ago. => She ...
(She **worked as an actress ten years ago.**) (BT TA 10 – P155)
2. Try and smile. You don't want to give people the wrong impression.
=> Try and smile. You don't want to make ...
(**people think that you are not friendly.**) (BT TA 10 – P.145)
3. The new regulations are largely symbolic. => The new regulations will ...
(**not have any real effect.**) (BT TA 10 – P.145)
4. The total cost to you is \$3000. => The amount you ...
(**have to pay is \$3000.**) (BT TA 10 – P.145)
5. The written record of the conversation doesn't correspond to what was actually said.
=> The written record of the conversation is ...
(**different from what was actually said.**) (BT TA 10 – P.145)
6. I have no illusions about her feelings for me. => I know the truth ...

(**is that she doesn't love me.**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.145)

7. Do you know your measurements? => Do you know the size ...

(**of the parts of your body?**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.145)

8. In the normal course of events she would have gone with him. (**expected**)

=> If things ...

(**happened as (she had) expected, she would have gone with him.**)

(the course of events: quá trình diễn biến các sự kiện => Nghĩa của câu: Nếu mọi việc diễn ra thông thường, có lẽ cô ấy đã đi với anh ấy rồi.) (BTTH TA 10 – P.138)

9. Please be brief. (**quickly**) => Please say ...

(**what you want to say quickly.**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.138)

10. His language is disgusting. (**obscene**) => He ...

(**uses a lot of obscene (tục tĩu) words.**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.138)

11. The Titanic sank on its maiden voyage. (**journey**) => The Titanic ...

(**sank on its first journey.**) (**maiden voyage:** chuyến vượt biển đầu tiên của một con tàu = **first journey**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.138)

12. Don't sign for the parcel until you have checked that everything is there. (**you**)

=> Make sure that nothing is sign for the par.

(**missing (còn thiếu) before**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.130)

13. There is one problem, the wage. => The wage ...

(**is the only problem.**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.121)

14. There are no interesting films on this week. => There is nothing ...

(**interesting at the cinema on this week.**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.121)

15. This bottle contains two litters. (**hold**) => This bottle ...

(**can hold two litters.**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.104)

16. We could go into town but it's a real hike from here. (**way**)

=> We could go into town ...

(**but it's a (really) long way from here.**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.104)

17. I can't survive on \$40 a week. (**needs**) => \$40 is not enough ...

(**for my basic needs.**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.104)

18. There are only a few survivors from the original team. (**replaced**)

=> Only a few members remain ...

(**in the team while others have been replaced.**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.104)

19. She'll cope. She's one of life's great survivors. (**situations**)

=> She deals very well ...

(**with difficult situations.**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.104)

20. There are fifteen jars in the cupboard. => The cupboard ...

(**contains fifteen jars/ has fifteen jars in it.**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.56)

21. Liz doesn't very often go dancing. => Liz occasionally

(**goes dancing.**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.56) (not very often = sometimes = occasionally)

22. Can you explain this word to me, please? => What does ...

(**this word mean, please?**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.56)

23. How long does the train journey from Oxford to London take? => When does?

(BTTH TA 10 – P.56) (**the Oxford train/ the train from Oxford arrive in London?**)

24. There haven't been many changes in this town since I last visited it. (**much**)

=> Since my last has changed in this town.

(... **visit not much/ nothing much** ...) (BTTH TA 10 – P.47)

25. She didn't have anyone make clothes for her. => She ...

(**made clothes for herself**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.37)

26. I recognized him at once. => At once I knew

(**I had seen him before.**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.37)

27. Do you know London at all? => Have you ever?

(**been to London/ heard about London?**) (BTTH TA 10 – P.37)

28. Just thinking about his face at that moment makes me laugh.

=> The very ...

(**thought of his face at that moment makes me laugh.**) (Chính việc nghĩ về khuôn mặt anh ta lúc đó làm tôi bật cười. => Chính suy nghĩ về khuôn mặt anh ta ... - very (a) + N: chính, riêng, thuần túy) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.79)

29. From my position, I could see quite clearly what was happening. (**stand**)

=> ...

(**From where I were standing, I could see quite clearly what was happening.**) (BD HSG TA 11 – P.130)

- where (n): nơi chốn, địa điểm

30. Chalk and cheese aren't at all like. (**COMPARISON**)

=> ...

(**There is no comparison between chalk and cheese.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.71)

31. That rumour about the politician and the construction contract is absolutely false.

=> There is ...

(**absolutely no truth in the rumour about the politician and the construction contract.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.126)

32. We have no idea where he is. (**WHEREABOUTS**)

=> ...

(**We don't know his whereabouts.**) (**We have no idea of his whereabouts.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.165)

- **Whereabouts** (n): nơi ở

33. We run the business together. (**JOINT**) => ...

(**We run a joint business.**) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.179)

34. That dress has only the slightest mark on it. => I can barely ...

(see any marks on that dress.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.195)

(Cái áo đó chỉ có một vết rất mờ. => Tôi khó có thể nhìn thấy bất kỳ vết gì trên chiếc áo đó.)

35. He remembered, and so did she. => He didn't ...

(forget, and neither did she.) (BD HSG TA 12 – P.195)

36. I'll be happy to show you round the sights of my city when you come to visit me. (take)

=> It will be a sightseeing tour of my city when you come to visit me.

(It will be a **pleasure to take you on/ for a** sightseeing tour of my city when you come to visit me. (CAE - 1)

37. By the time we got to the sale, every book had been sold. (single)

=> By the time we got to the sale, there book left.

=> By the time we got to the sale, there **was not a single** book left. (CAE - 1)

38. I don't expect the company to make a profit this year, given the economic climate. (surprised)

=> Given the economic climate, the company make a profit this year.

(Given the economic climate, **I would be surprised if** the company make a profit this year. (CAE - 2)

39. I gave her my address. **where** => I lived.

(..... **told her where I**.....)

40. Your brakes are faulty. **wrong** => There's brakes.

(..... **something wrong with your**)

41. The population of Spain is increasing. **people** => The is increasing.

(... **number of people in Spain**)

42. You should join the football club. **member** => You should the football team.

(..... **become a member of**)

43. I didn't expect to win. **think** => I win.

(..... **didn't think I'd / I would**)

44. You should telephone her. **speak** => You should on the telephone.

(..... **speak to her**)

45. My house is near to John's. **close** => John each other.

(..... **and I live close to**)

Good Luck!